

**LIBRARY OF CONGRESS**



00003270944









A

# GRAMMAR-SCHOOL HISTORY

OF THE

## UNITED STATES.

BY  
L. A. FIELD.



JAS. P. HARRISON & Co., PUBLISHERS.  
ATLANTA, GEORGIA.  
1885.

---

Entered according to act of Congress, in the year 1885,

By L. A. FIELD,

In the Office of the Librarian of Congress, at Washington.

---

E178

.1  
F444

760/99x

## PREFACE.

---

The author has studied with special reference to the wants of children and teachers in our academies and common schools. A long experience in public school work has given every opportunity for the appreciation of such wants. We need a book free from sectional prejudice, brief and accurate in its statements, but attractive and interesting throughout, and yet so simple in style as to be brought readily within the comprehension of the children who are expected to use it. To such an end has the labor in its preparation been directed.

The division and arrangement of paragraph, chapter, and section have been carefully made. The headings of paragraphs are given in heavy type, that teachers may be assisted in topical recitations.

The dates are placed in the margin, and only those of prominent events are introduced into the text, in order that the student's mind may not be unnecessarily burdened.

The pronunciation of a difficult proper name is given the first time such a word occurs; and a brief explanation follows each new term when it is introduced.

After an account of the different discoveries made on the continent, the history of each colony is given, concisely, to the beginning of the Revolution.

The principal events of each presidential administration are stated in order at the beginning of the chapter which is devoted to the history of the term. The civil war is treated in a brief, impartial manner; extreme views and disputed questions have been avoided.

Only leading facts have been selected, but they are presented with an effort to give clearness of perception in the mind of the pupil, and at the same time to keep the thread of the story continuous and to avoid unnecessary details.

Progress in education, and in social and domestic life, is traced from one period to another. This serves to break the monotony that is often found in the history of war and politics, by bringing back to us scenes in the home-life of long ago. The school-days of that time are brought into striking contrast with the improved educational systems of to-day.

Short sketches of important characters, anecdotes, etc., have been added in notes, in smaller type than the text, and may be made subjects of study, when time allows. They are intended to cultivate a taste for the study of biography and for historical research. Reference is also made to the works of the best authors to be consulted in connection with the subjects treated.

Questions for review, tables of battles, and chronological summaries of events, follow the close of each section.

Maps showing the territorial growth of the country, and others tracing the marches of armies, have been prepared with great care, and with special reference to use in the school-room.

The statements of numbers engaged in battles during the late war have been taken from the "Official Records of the Rebellion," as far as they have been issued; also from the reports of the adjutant-general of the "Army of Northern Virginia," Gen. Walter H. Taylor, published in his book, "Four Years with Lee." The information which could not be obtained from these sources was found in Stephens' "History of the United States."

The original drawings for illustrations have been prepared by Mr. Horace Bradley, of Atlanta. The wood engravings were made by Miss Georgia Greene, in New York. She was formerly a teacher in the Atlanta public schools.

ATLANTA, JULY, 1885.



# CONTENTS.

---

## SECTION I—DISCOVERIES.

<i>Chapter.</i>	<i>Page.</i>
1. Discoveries of Columbus.....	1
2. The American Indians.....	8
3. English and Spanish Explorers.....	11
4. The French.....	15
5. The English.....	17
6. The Dutch.....	20

## SECTION II—SETTLEMENTS.

1. Settlement of Virginia.....	23
2. Settlement of Virginia continued.....	29
3. New England Colonies.....	32
4. Settlement of Rhode Island.....	38
5. Connecticut.....	40
6. Confederation of New England.....	43
7. King Philip's War.....	47
8. Settlement of New York.....	51
9. New Jersey.....	56
10. Pennsylvania.....	58
11. Delaware.....	60
12. Maryland.....	61
13. North Carolina.....	64
14. South Carolina.....	67
15. Georgia.....	72

## SECTION III—FRENCH CLAIMS.

1. French Settlements and Discoveries.....	78
2. The French and Indian War.....	81
3. Events of 1756-1758.....	86
4. Events of 1759-1763.....	89

## SECTION IV—THE AMERICAN REVOLUTION.

1. Causes Which Led to the War.....	94
2. Events of 1775.....	101
3. “ “ 1776.....	108
4. “ “ 1777.....	115
5. “ “ 1778.....	121
6. “ “ 1779.....	125
7. “ “ 1780.....	129
8. “ “ 1781.....	137
Advancement of the Colonies.....	147

## SECTION V—THE UNITED STATES.

1. The Government.....	154
2. Washington's Administration.....	155
3. Adams' Administration.....	159
4. Jefferson's Administration.....	161
5. Madison's Administration.....	166
6. Events of 1813.....	172
7. Events of 1814.....	177
8. Monroe's Administration.....	181
9. John Q. Adams' Administration.....	184
10. Jackson's Administration.....	187
11. Van Buren's Administration.....	191
12. Administrations of Harrison and Tyler.....	194
13. Polk's Administration.....	196
14. Administrations of Taylor and Fillmore.....	202
15. Pierce's Administration.....	204
16. Buchanan's Administration.....	207

## SECTION VI—WAR BETWEEN THE STATES.

1. Lincoln's Administration.....	217
2. First Year of the War.....	219
3. Second Year of the War.....	226
4. Second Year of the War continued.....	231
5. Third Year of the War.....	241
6. Fourth Year of the War.....	249
7. Fourth Year of the War continued.....	256
8. The Last Year of the War.....	262

## SECTION VII—RECONSTRUCTION.

1. Johnson's Administration . . . . .	272
2. Grant's Administration . . . . .	275
3. Hayes' Administration . . . . .	280
4. Administrations of Garfield and Arthur . . . . .	283

## CONCLUSION.

Topics for Review . . . . .	22
Dates of Discovery . . . . .	22
Dates of Settlement . . . . .	76
Review of Important Events . . . . .	76
Topics for Review . . . . .	77
Principal Battles of the Revolution . . . . .	144
Review of Important Events . . . . .	145
Questions for Review . . . . .	146
Review of Important Events . . . . .	213
Review of Important Events . . . . .	267
Topics for Review . . . . .	269

## APPENDIX.

The Declaration of Independence.  
 Constitution of the United States.  
 Index.

## LIST OF MAPS.

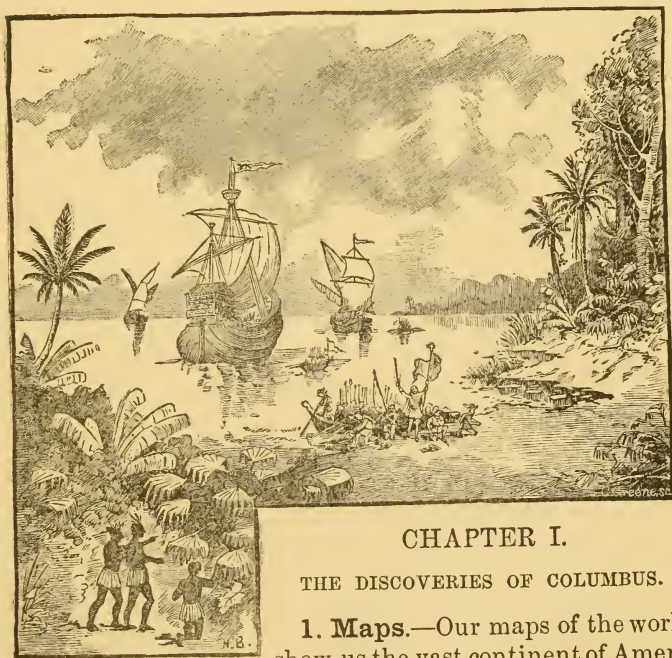
<i>Map.</i>	<i>Page.</i>
1. English Colonies and French Claims . . . . .	88-89
2. Map of Quebec . . . . .	90
3. Boston and Vicinity . . . . .	105
4. Campaigns of the Revolution . . . . .	112-113
5. Campaigns of the War of 1812-1814 . . . . .	168
6. Campaigns in Mexico . . . . .	199
7. Map Illustrating the War of 1861-5 . . . . .	221
8. The Peninsular Campaign . . . . .	232
9. The Valley Campaign . . . . .	234
10. Sherman's March to the Sea . . . . .	260
11. Map Showing Territorial Growth . . . . .	290-291





# HISTORY OF THE UNITED STATES.

## SECTION I.—DISCOVERIES.



### CHAPTER I.

#### THE DISCOVERIES OF COLUMBUS.

**1. Maps.**—Our maps of the world show us the vast continent of America, reaching from the frozen waters of the Arctic Ocean, far beyond the Equator, towards the South Pole. Four hundred years ago, the people of Europe and Asia knew nothing about this great country. They believed that the earth was flat, and that the ocean lay around its edges. But few

of them had sailed very far into this ocean, and they could not tell what might be found beyond it.<sup>a,b</sup>

**2. The Earth a Sphere.**—During the fifteenth century, some of the more learned and scientific men began to think the earth might be a sphere; but the maps and charts drawn by them represented only parts of the Eastern Continent, with what is now called the Atlantic Ocean, because they believed there was only one continent and one ocean.

**3. India.**—Gold and beautiful jewels and rich silks were brought from India, at that time, and, for many years, the merchants engaged in trading with this country had carried on their commerce by a long, tedious route—by boats over the Mediterranean Sea and by caravans over land. This made the journey to and from India one of great labor, and one which consumed much time; for this reason, the nations of Europe were seeking a shorter or easier way. Many voyages were undertaken, in different directions; but no

<sup>a</sup> **The Northmen.**—The men who lived in Norway, Sweden, and Denmark many years ago were called the Northmen or Norsemen. They loved the sea, and some of them went as far west as Iceland, where they made settlements during the ninth century. Others continued their voyages to Greenland. There were stories told, in those days, of ships that had been driven westward by storms until they reached the shores of a country that had never been visited before.

<sup>b</sup> **Vinland.**—One of their traditions says that Lief (life), the son of an old Norwegian sailor named Er'-ic, started with thirty-five companions and sailed upon the western waters in search of a new country, intending to begin new settlements. At length they reached a land, far to the southwest from Greenland, in which they found grapes in great abundance; from this circumstance, they called the country Vinland. After spending some time upon its coast, they returned home. From their descriptions of the place it is supposed that they they had come to New England. In this way the people of Norway claim to have been the first discoverers of North America.

Wales and Ireland also claim the discovery of the New World in a similar way; but every settlement in Greenland had been destroyed, and that wild western country entirely forgotten long before America was really known to the world.

vessel had then sailed around the Cape of Good Hope, and they were not sure that India could be reached by water.

**4. Columbus.**—Christopher Columbus,<sup>o</sup> a native of Genoa, in Italy, had spent much of his life upon the sea; he had sailed to the Madeira Islands and to the Canaries. When he returned from his voyages, he busied himself, drawing and studying charts. He, as well as other thoughtful men of his day, had noticed that when the shadow of the earth fell upon the moon, during an eclipse, its shape was round, and he soon became convinced that the new belief of the scientific men was well founded. A careful study of their maps assured him that India was on the opposite side of the unknown ocean, and that by sailing westward he would find that passage to India which so many were seeking.

**5. Preparations for the Voyage.**—But he could not go alone. Ships and men and supplies were necessary for this great undertaking. He applied to Portugal, and then to Spain for aid, while he sent his brother to England on a similar errand. Long years were spent in efforts to convince the kings of these countries that a westward voyage would

<sup>o</sup> **Christopher Columbus.**—In the town of Genoa, one of the seaports of Italy, it is generally believed that Christopher Columbus was born, about 1435. He was the son of a wool-comber and the eldest of four children. Though his father was too poor to give him many advantages, he was sent to school long enough to learn something of mathematics and astronomy, and afterwards he went to the University of Pavia. When he was fourteen, he went to sea; the principal part of his life, from that time, was passed on ship-board, or in preparation for his great enterprise of discovery. His business, when on land, was that of making maps and charts; and he generally saved a share of his small income for the support of his father and for the education of his younger brothers. He was devotedly pious, and believed that he had been chosen by God to “carry the true faith into the uttermost parts of the earth.” During the eighteen years, through which he labored and waited, from the beginning to the accomplishment of his plans, nothing turned him from his brave purpose.

lead to India; but the geographers only laughed at him,<sup>d</sup> and the kings would not consent to give the money he needed. At last, his plan was explained to Isabella, the queen of Spain. She listened with deep interest as she began to understand how valuable such a discovery would be to Spain, and she determined that the effort should be made: "I will pawn my jewels to defray the cost," she exclaimed. Three vessels<sup>e</sup> were fitted out for him and manned by more than one hundred sailors. The treasurer of the kingdom furnished the money, and so it was not necessary to take Isabella's jewels.

**6. His Departure.**—At last, after many years, his toil and perseverance were to be rewarded. He had  
Aug. 3, 1492. become a gray-haired man, nearly sixty years of age. On Friday, August 3d, 1492, he started out upon his great voyage of discovery. The last moments before his departure were spent in prayer for the guidance and protection of Heaven, and then he and his companions sailed out from Palos (pah'-los), a port of Spain, upon the untried sea. Their friends wept as they watched the ships leave the shore, fearing that they would never see them return.

**7. The Voyage.**—A month passed before they reached the Canary Islands. There they were delayed, repairing

<sup>d</sup> Some of the wisest men of those days could not believe that the earth was round. In opposition to the ideas of Columbus, they said: "Is there any one so foolish as to believe that there are antipodes with their feet opposite to ours—people who walk with their heels upward and their heads hanging down?—that there is a part of the world in which all things are topsy-turvey; where the trees grow with their branches downward, and where it rains, hails, and snows upward?" They imagined that the distant waters of the ocean were inhabited by hideous monsters, which devoured every living creature within their reach; and that the region of the torrid zone was so intensely heated that even the waves of the sea boiled upon the shores they washed against.

<sup>e</sup>The names of the vessels were the *Pinta* (peen'-tah), *Santa Maria* (ma-re'-ah), and the *Ninãh* (ne'-nah).



one of the vessels which had received an injury on the way. After leaving the Canaries, the sailors lost courage. Storms tossed their frail ships, and the waters widened between them and home. When they saw the needle of their compass turning toward the northwest, they believed they were lost upon a trackless sea, and were only moving onward to destruction. The trade-winds, wafting them so steadily in the same direction, day after day, was a new source of alarm. They were sure they could never sail back against it. The bravest among them shed tears; others uttered wild cries of grief and despair. When they entered the Sargasso Sea and found the waters covered with weeds many miles around them, they were in constant terror lest their vessels might be wrecked by striking against the shallow bottom, from which they supposed the sea-weeds were growing. Columbus knew that they were anxious to turn back, and that some of them were desperate enough to throw him overboard, if he refused to yield to their wishes; yet, firm in his purpose, he pushed bravely forward.

**8. Land.**—Days and nights of sorrow and dread dragged by. At length, they saw birds flying before  
Oct. 11, them, and pieces of timber and cane floating  
1492. in the water. One of the sailors picked up a branch of fresh berries that had drifted near them. These things made them hope that land was not far off. All was excitement on board the ships; each one was eager to catch the first glimpse of the shore. The sun went down, but still they watched and waited. About ten o'clock, Columbus saw a light shining over the water from a fire before them. A gun was fired from one of the other vessels. This signal had been agreed upon, and was understood by all; it was followed by a shout of joy announcing that land was in sight.

**9. San Salvador.**—The morning showed them a beautiful green island. Columbus dressed himself in his scarlet

Oct. 12, uniform, and stepped into a boat that had been  
1492. lowered from the ship. He carried the Spanish flag in his hands while his men rowed him to the shore. In gratitude for the success which had rewarded his anxiety and peril, he knelt to kiss the ground and give thanks to God. Then drawing his sword, he took possession in the name of Spain. He named the island 'San Salvador (Holy Saviour).

**10. Indians.**—The natives were wild men of a copper color. They flocked around the new-comers, staring with wonder. They supposed the ships to be huge sea-birds, and the men, visitors from Heaven. The island resembled so closely the islands of India in soil, climate, and productions, that Columbus thought he had indeed found the country he sought, and he called the natives *Indians*.

**11. Other Discoveries.**—For the double purpose of extending his discoveries and of searching for gold, Columbus sailed beyond San Salvador and visited Cuba, Hayti, and several other West India Islands, but he did not reach the mainland.

**12. His Return.**—At their own request, a party of his men were left to found a colony at San Domingo, on the island of Hayti. One of his vessels had been left a wreck on a wild coast he had visited, another had deserted from his command; this left him but one small ship in which to make the long voyage home. His arrival in the port of Palos produced the most intense joy among the people. Bells were rung throughout the town; all places of business were closed, that every one might take part in the welcome they wished to give the famous seamen, whom many had regarded as lost.

From Palos, Columbus hastened to Barcelona to report his discoveries to the king and queen. He had brought with

'San Salvador was one of the Bahama Islands, called by the natives Guanahani; it is generally known now as Cat Island.

him several of the native Indians, dressed in their savage costume, and decked with their simple ornaments of gold. Besides these, many curiosities had been collected—specimens of the productions of the Island, and stuffed birds such as had never been seen in Spain. Hundreds crowded to see the procession as they journeyed to Barcelona. Near the city, Columbus was met by a party of young Spanish noblemen, who accompanied him to the presence of the king and queen. Ferdinand and Isabella rose and extended their hands to greet him. This honor was never paid to any but men of rank or military fame.

**13. A Second Voyage.**—Believing that he had reached the rich islands of India, and understanding only imperfectly what he had learned from the Indians, Columbus imagined that the New World contained the best countries under the sun. The sovereigns of Spain lost no time in preparing another expedition to go out and make sure their claims to these newly-discovered regions. Men of every class crowded to the ships, eager to embark under so renowned a captain, and hopeful of acquiring sudden wealth in the land of gold to which they believed he would lead them. Fifteen hundred men sailed with him on his second voyage. With these he expected to strengthen the little Spanish colony that he had left on the new island. But when they reached Hayti, few traces of the first colony could be found; not a man remained to tell where his companions had gone. Their little fort lay in ruins.

Columbus called Hayti, Hispaniola (Little Spain). Three years were spent by him in exploring other islands, after which he again returned to Spain.\*

\* After the return of Columbus from the New World, evil men, envious of the honors he had won, so misrepresented him to the king that, although he had been appointed governor-general for life of the countries he had discovered, Ferdinand, the king of Spain, sent out another governor, who ordered that Columbus should be arrested and sent home in chains. After having spent all the money he had made, in attempts to

**14. South America.**—Six years after his first discovery, he reached the coast of South America, near the mouth of the Orinoco. This river was so much wider and so much deeper than any stream he had seen in the islands, that he felt sure he had found a continent, and that the continent was Asia. He never knew of the mainland of North America, although he had been so near its shores.

## CHAPTER II.

### THE AMERICAN INDIANS.

#### 1. Appearance.—

The people whom Columbus and the explorers who followed him found in this new country were very different from the inhabitants of Europe. They were of a red, copper color, with very bright, dark eyes, and straight, black hair.

**2. Dress.**—They wore but little clothing; their only covering was made of the skins of wild animals. For the feet, they made loose shoes, of buckskin, ornamented with beads, which they called *mo-*



INDIAN LIFE.

extend his discoveries, many of his friends deserted him, and he returned, after his fourth voyage, a feeble old man, to Valadolid, where he died at the age of seventy years. At his own request, his chains were buried with him. Since his burial in Spain, his remains have been removed to the cathedral in Havana, Cuba.



*casins*. The warriors painted themselves and decked their heads with feathers. They were fond of bright colors and ornaments, and wore beads made of shell. These shell beads, which they called "*wampum*," they also used as money.

**3. Language.**—They knew nothing of letters, had no written language, and had never seen anything like the books we use. The words they spoke were entirely new to the Europeans. Many of the geographical names of our country were given by the Indians, and are still retained in use.

**4. Customs.**—These red men lived by hunting and fishing, and never remained long in one place. Their houses were called "*wigwams*." They were made by bending saplings or poles together and fastening them at the top with a piece of bark. The skins of animals were then stretched over the poles; an opening was left at the top to allow the smoke from the fire inside to pass out. These wigwams were often grouped together in villages.

The men spent their time chiefly in the chase, or in the wars which the tribes were constantly waging with each other; they left all the work in the field and in the wigwam to be done by the women, whom they called "*squaws*." Besides building the home which sheltered him, she gathered the wood for the fires, cooked his meals, and cultivated the ground where the corn and beans were raised. When wandering from place to place, she carried the burdens, while he sported with his bow.

The habits of their wild life taught the Indians many things that seem wonderful to us. They could travel in a straight course through the forest without roads and with nothing to guide them but the sun, or the stars, or the moss and bark on the trees. They had so trained themselves to listen for unusual sounds that it was difficult to surprise them. They could discover when they were pursued, by placing one ear on the ground and listening for the sounds

of footsteps. The Spaniards tried to do the same thing, but their untrained ears could not detect a sound.

**5. Weapons.**—They had attained wonderful skill in the use of the bow and arrow. Their arrow-heads were made of sharpened pieces of flinty stone, and sometimes of bone. The tomahawk was also a weapon in common use among them; it was a kind of stone hatchet with a wooden handle about a yard in length. Their knives were made of sharp stone or shell. Besides these, their warriors also carried a sharp wooden spear. They were trained for war from childhood, and were taught to suffer pain without uttering a groan or shedding a tear.

**6. Religion.**—They had not heard of the Bible, but they believed in a Great Spirit; they did not worship idols. When an Indian died, they supposed he had gone to a better hunting-ground, and they buried with him his tomahawk, his bow and arrows, and his pipe, all of which they believed he would need in the distant country to which he had gone.

**7. Names.**—Each tribe called itself by its own name and each was governed by its chief or sachem. A tribe meant one large family or a group of Indian families. The principal ones were the Algonquins, the Iroquois, the Dakotahs, the Cherokees, and the Mobilians.<sup>a b</sup>

<sup>a</sup> **The Aztecs.**—The Spaniards found a tribe in Mexico who called themselves the Aztecs, and who were greatly superior to the other Indians in civilization and wealth. They lived in cities, where they had built palaces and temples, surrounded with gardens. Unlike the other natives, they had made some advancement in the art of painting, and in the knowledge of astronomy.

<sup>b</sup> **The Peruvians.**—In South America the explorers met with a similar race. They were called Peruvians, and were even more cultivated than the Aztecs. Their wealth in gold and silver was immense. They had built paved roads through their country, and one of their cities was supplied with water, which ran through pipes of silver from a lake near the city. The Spaniards treated these peaceable people with great cruelty and robbed them of their gold. Remains of the work done by the Peruvians may still be found in Peru.

## CHAPTER III.

1497

ENGLISH AND SPANISH EXPLORERS.

**1. The Cabots.**—A great many navigators now became anxious to try the new route to India. John Cabot, a merchant in Bristol, England, and his son, Sebastian Cabot, were the first to attempt it. They thought India and China lay just beyond the islands Columbus had discovered, and they supposed the shorter route would be a northwest passage. After sailing in a direction north of that in which he had gone, they arrived at Cape Briton, fourteen months before Columbus reached South America.

**2. Sebastian Cabot** anchored near the coast of Labrador the next year; there he found icy waters and  
1498. cold, barren shores; he turned his course southward until he came to Albemarle Sound. There he landed and took possession in the name of England. The government of England then claimed the continent as its own, because the Cabots were the first to reach the mainland of North America.\*

**3. Wonders in the New World.**—The nations of Europe now endeavored to make these discoveries profitable by fitting out new fleets to sail in search of the gold which they imagined to be so abundant beyond the seas. Every man who came to the New World had something new and strange to tell on his return, or something curious to show at home. One of the stories related was of a king who

\* **Naming America.**—Amerigo Vespucci, an Italian navigator, followed the Cabots. His conversations with Columbus had awakened in him a desire to try his fortunes in the west, and, after embarking upon an expedition to the "Indies," reached South America in 1499. He published a description of the country and a map of it, which so greatly delighted his readers that the country was called America in honor of *him*, instead of Columbus.

lived in a city where the streets were paved with precious stones, and the roofs of the houses were made of gold. Another was told of a wonderful fountain whose waters would restore youth and health to those who bathed in them. All this made the daring navigators of those times very eager to know more of this distant country. The Spaniards, who had made settlements on the West India Islands, went farther westward; some of them reached the continent and established a colony on the Isthmus of Darien.

**4. Ponce de Leon.**—(pon'-thā-dā-lā-on'), a brave old

1512. Spanish soldier, who had gone out with Columbus on his second voyage, had been made governor of Porto Rico. But he had lost his office as governor; his hair was turning gray. Hoping to prolong his life and increase his fortune, he sailed in search of the fabled fountain of youth. The land was covered with the green leaves and bright flowers of early spring when he reached the shore. From "*pascua florida*," the Spanish for Easter Sunday, the day on which he arrived, he named the beautiful country Florida. Vainly he searched among the streams and groves for the spring of youth; his fruitless labors only brought him disappointment, and he returned home.

1521. Nine years afterward, he visited Florida again. This time he was wounded by an Indian arrow and went back to Spain to die.

**5. Discovery of the Pacific.**—A company of Spaniards,

1513. led by Vasco Nuñez de Balboa, crossed the Isthmus of Darien, in 1513. After a long and weary march under the scorching sun of that tropical summer, they came to a range of mountains, beyond which, they had been told, lay a country rich in gold. Balboa climbed up the rugged slope, and from the top of the mountain he looked down upon the Pacific Ocean. He had made

a discovery almost as great as that made by Columbus. He was now convinced that he had not been exploring a part of Asia, but that he was upon a new continent. His companions joined him, and together they went down to the shore. There Balboa, with his flag and his sword in his hands, waded into the waves and claimed all the countries touched by the waters of the new ocean for Spain. He called it the great South Sea.<sup>b</sup>

**6. Efforts to Conquer Florida.**—A large amount of money was expended upon expeditions for the conquest of Florida. It was then thought to be an island, rich in gold—its rivers glittering with diamonds—but it was known to be inhabited by savage tribes who would resist every attempt to take possession of the country. For years these efforts failed. Many of the Spanish soldiers who were sent to Florida were killed by the natives, many were lost in a storm which wrecked one of the fleets, and but few of them returned.

**7. Hernando de Soto,**<sup>c</sup> who had been appointed governor of Cuba and Florida by the king of Spain, hoping to meet with better success, made prepar-

1539.

<sup>b</sup> Ferdinand Magellan, a Portuguese sailor, started from Spain in 1519, and, after sailing around South America through the strait that has received his name, crossed the Pacific Ocean, which he called Pacific, because of its freedom from storms during his voyage. He did not live to return; but one of his ships continued the voyage westward, and reached the port he had left in Spain. During an absence of three years, these sailors had added a proof of the roundness of the earth by sailing around it.

<sup>c</sup> Hernando de Soto, the son of a Spanish nobleman, had joined several expeditions to the New World; in 1532, he accompanied the famous Pizarro to Peru, as one of the leading officers in his army. With the vast amount of gold which he obtained in that conquered country, he returned to Spain. There he married and lived in the most luxurious style; he and his bride were received among the honored guests at the court of Charles V. But he could not long remain quietly at home, while there was so much abroad to tempt his love of adventure. The king allowed him to undertake the conquest of Florida, which he did at his own expense.



ations for invading Florida again. Many of his soldiers were sons of the wealthiest nobles of Spain, and the ships were laden with everything that money could provide for their comfort. Besides a bountiful supply of provisions and arms, tools were purchased for the carpenters and smiths; also, a herd of swine to be driven along the route, and a number of bloodhounds trained for hunting captives who might escape.

With six hundred men and three hundred horses, De Soto landed at Tampa Bay, Florida. The angry natives lurked in the groves through which the army marched, wondering at the strange sight. Trumpets were sounding and banners streaming; the prancing horses and shining spears were a new terror to the frightened savages, as their arrows glanced harmlessly from the bright surface of the steel armor of the cavaliers. Indian captives guided them from one tribe to another, with repeated promises of gold, through Florida, Georgia, and Alabama to the northwest.

After three years of slow and toilsome marching, they arrived at the banks of the Mississippi. Another month was spent in wandering still farther westward, and then, worn out by repeated failures, they retraced their footsteps to the Mississippi. While they were encamped upon its bank, De Soto died. His companions buried him beneath the waters of the great river he had discovered.

Those of his followers who survived built boats in which they sailed down to the mouth of the Mississippi, and following the coast reached the Spanish settlements in Mexico.



## CHAPTER IV.

## THE FRENCH.

**1. Verrazanni.**—France, too, wanted a share in the glory and the wealth that Spain and England were seeking in the west, and the king of France, Charles IX., employed Verrazanni (ver-ra-zah'-ne) an Italian mariner, to command an expedition to the new continent. He sailed to the shores of North Carolina and landed near the site of Wilmington. Before his return, he explored the coast as far north as Nova Scotia. He gave to the country the name of New France; it was afterwards called Canada.

**2. Cartier.**—Ten years later another Frenchman, James Cartier (kar'-te-a), reached the Gulf of St. Lawrence, on St. Lawrence day. He extended his discoveries as far as the site of Quebec and built a fort there, but a winter in that severe climate made him wish for his sunny-home in France, and in the spring he returned, leaving behind him no settlement in America north of Mexico.

**3. Huguenots.**—Twenty years passed before another company of Frenchmen crossed the Atlantic; these were Protestants, called Huguenots. They landed near Port Royal, South Carolina, and built a fort which they called Carolina, in honor of their king, Charles or Carolus IX. They were so much pleased with the country that they wanted to build homes around the fort. Twenty-six of them offered to remain, while the fleet returned for supplies. The soil, though rich and productive, would not yield a harvest without labor. The ships did not come back. There was no refuge from starvation, when their supply of provisions was exhausted. Their

next thought was of home. They built a small vessel, loaded it with the goods they had, and turned toward France. They would have been lost on the way but for an English vessel which rescued them from shipwreck. Thus this attempt at settlement failed; but the name of the fort has descended to the State upon whose soil they landed.

1565. Two years after their return, another colony of the same people settled in Florida, and built a fort on the St. John's river. They were joined by several hundred who followed them from France, because of the persecution which they had suffered there. The Spaniards would not allow these French settlers to remain in the territory claimed by their government, and Melendez (*mā-lén-deth*) was sent with troops to drive them out. France and Spain being then on terms of peace, Melendez apologized for this act by fastening to a neighboring tree this inscription, "Not as French, but as heretics."

4. **St. Augustine.**—The year 1565 is also famous for the founding of St. Augustine, the oldest city in the United States. The old town looks like a foreign city yet, and remains of the old Spanish fortifications may still be seen there. <sup>a</sup>

5. **Acadia.**—The French king granted to De Monts (*du-mong*), who was also one of the Huguenots, control of all the country between the Delaware river and Cape Breton. It received the name of Acadia.

1608 Champlain<sup>b</sup> afterwards built forts on the St. Law-

<sup>a</sup> **Santa Fe.**—The Spaniards, who traveled further into the central part of the country, reached the banks of the Rio Grande. There 1595. they found the natives living in houses built of stone or sundried brick, some of which were four stories high. They differed from the other Indians in many respects; their clothing was made of leather, and even of cotton. Because of the rich discoveries of silver made there, other Spaniards followed them, and a town was built, which they called Santa Fé. It is only thirty years younger than St. Augustine.

<sup>b</sup> **Samuel Champlain**, who was a native of France, was among the

rence river, and the Frenchmen who came with him built their homes around them. He also traveled southward and discovered Lake Champlain.

---

## CHAPTER V.

### THE ENGLISH.

**1. North America.**—It was a long time before the name of North America appeared upon the maps of the world. The new country was called Florida by the Spaniards, and New France, or Canada, by the French. England still asserted her claims because the Cabots had been the first to reach the continent; yet, though many of her seamen had been out upon expeditions to explore its coasts, eighty years passed before Englishmen decided to make settlements in the New World.

**2. Sir Humphrey Gilbert**<sup>a</sup> was the first to attempt to first to establish French settlements in America, and was afterwards appointed Lieutenant-general of Canada by the French government. Twice he assisted the Indians, who had been friendly with him, in making war upon their enemies, the Iroquois, of New York. He did not go very far into their country, and only succeeded in arousing the bitter hatred of that powerful tribe. Consequently, the French explorers and French trading parties were obliged to confine themselves to the region north of the Great Lakes, and along the Mississippi and its tributaries. Champlain selected the site and laid the foundations of the city of Quebec; and when he finished the strong walls of Fort St. Louis, on the high bank of the St. Lawrence, his companions felt sure that they could hold their claim in the New World. He spent his last days in the land he labored to win for France, and died in Canada in 1635.

<sup>a</sup> When Sir Humphrey Gilbert obtained a charter to explore the new country claimed by England, Queen Elizabeth did much to aid and encourage him. She said she "wished as great good-hap and safety to his ships as if herself were there in person." She also sent him a golden trinket in the form of an anchor guided by a lady, with the request that it should be worn by the brave commander of the fleet.

1578. take possession of this vast territory. He had read accounts of the immense shoals of codfish that had been seen near Greenland, and he thought more would be gained by establishing colonies to fish and trade in the New World than by continuing the search for gold, which had so often brought only failure and ruin. After obtaining permission from Queen Elizabeth, he and his half brother, Sir Walter Raleigh, sailed from England to carry out these new plans. They landed on the coast of Newfoundland and took possession in the name of the Queen of England. From this island they sailed southward. Two of the largest vessels of the fleet were wrecked, and Sir Gilbert embarked in a small frigate which proved unfit for the sea. During a violent storm, his vessel disappeared; but one ship returned to England with the news of his sad fate.<sup>b</sup>

**3. Sir Walter Raleigh**,<sup>c</sup> after his return, began making arrangements to send out another party of Englishmen to America. He obtained permission to settle them, in any portion of the country ly-

<sup>b</sup> The last words he was heard to speak were words of cheer to his companions: "Be of good heart, my friends; we are as near to heaven by sea as by land."

<sup>c</sup> Sir Walter Raleigh was famous in England as soldier and mariner, courtier and statesman, during the reign of Elizabeth. Seventeen years of that time he was a member of Parliament. He was a favorite of the queen; she rewarded him richly for his services by granting him several valuable estates, which contained, in all, about twelve thousand acres. He was one of the commanders of the English fleet which conquered the "Invincible Armada" of Spain; after his return, she made him one of the honored knights of her kingdom. Because of his great efforts at discovery and colonization, the poet, Spenser, called him the "Shepherd of the Ocean." He made two voyages to Guiana, in South America, and expended two hundred thousand dollars of his own money for the support of colonies in America.

After the accession of James I. to the throne of England, Raleigh was accused of treason against the king; he was tried and convicted. During

ing between the parallels of 33° and 45° north latitude. This embraced all the land between that claimed by the French on the north, and that by the Spaniards on the south. He sent out two vessels. Their commanders gave pleasing accounts of the country when they returned. It was named Virginia, in honor of Queen Elizabeth, who was never married, and for that reason was called the "Virgin Queen."

4. Raleigh sent out a colony, expecting the men to cultivate the soil, trade with the natives, and build homes in  
1586. the territory called Virginia. It consisted of one hundred families. After their departure, Raleigh prepared supplies, which he sent forward without waiting to hear that they were in need. But before these supplies reached them, the Indians had become unfriendly, and their stock of provisions had become very small; and when an English fleet approached the shore, they persuaded the commander to take them back to England.<sup>b</sup>

1587. The next year another company went out with Captain John White as governor. These settled on Roanoke Island. To avoid the trouble from which the former

the thirteen years of his imprisonment in the Tower, he wrote the "History of the World." He was at last condemned to death. On the scaffold, he asked the executioner to show him the ax. After touching its edge and kissing the steel, he said: "This gives me no fear. It is a sharp and fair medicine to cure me of all my diseases." He begged earnestly for the prayers of all who heard him, then knelt with his head upon the block; his lips were moving in prayer while he waited for the fatal blow.

<sup>b</sup> Tobacco and Potatoes.—Although Columbus and his men were the first who saw tobacco or potatoes used by the Indians, the colonists sent out by Sir Walter Raleigh are said to have been the first to bring these articles into use in England.

A story has been told of Sir Walter that, once while he sat smoking in his room, a servant entered and saw the smoke. Supposing that his master was being consumed by fire, he emptied a mug of beer upon him to quench the flames, and then ran for help.



colony had suffered, Governor White sailed for England to obtain supplies, but Spain and England being then at war, he was unable to return. Even the ships sent out by Raleigh did not reach them. Governor White was absent three years; when he returned, he could find no trace of the colony he had left.

**5. The London and Plymouth Companies.**—Nearly 1607. thirty years passed, after Raleigh's first expedition, before any permanent settlements were made in Virginia. The efforts for colonizing the country had accomplished but little during the reign of Queen Elizabeth, yet the way had been opened for her successors to push forward the work with better results. English sailors continued to visit the shores of America; cargoes of furs, for which the hatters of Europe paid high prices, and sassafras root, which was then thought to be a good medicine, were brought back and sold at a fine profit. A number of merchants and wealthy men in England thought they could increase their fortunes by making settlements and trading in Virginia, and two companies were formed for that purpose. King James divided the country that had been given to Gilbert and Raleigh into two portions. The northern division was bounded by Newfoundland and the Hudson river. This was to belong to the Plymouth Company, and was called North Virginia. The southern portion lay between the Potomac and Cape Fear rivers, and was given to the London Company. It was known as South Virginia.

---

## CHAPTER VI.

1609.

THE DUTCH.

**1. The People of Holland,** who were called the Dutch, had built a great many ships; and these ships were sent to



trade in different parts of the world. Henry Hudson, an English sailor, who had gone to Holland, was employed by the people there to take command of one of their trading vessels.

**2. The Half Moon**, a ship of eighty tons, was fitted out for him. With a crew of Dutch and English, he sailed toward the northeast, in 1609. He was on his way to China, but finding the route closed by ice, he concluded to turn to the west and seek an opening through North America. A storm drove his vessel among the French fishermen on the banks of Newfoundland. A few days later, he stopped in a harbor of Maine to mend his torn sails and to cut a new mast from the woods. Then starting anew on his voyage, he sailed southward. While Champlain with his Frenchmen were rowing their boats on Lake Champlain, Henry Hudson approached Sandy Hook.

**3. Manhattan Island.**—A crowd of Indians stood on the southern point of Manhattan Island, where New York city now stands, and watched with wonder the coming of the ship. Hudson took a cask of rum with him when he landed. After drinking, he handed his cup to the chiefs. They only smelled it, and passed it from one to another. The last one took it, tasted and drank its contents. The others watched him until he reeled and fell, but finding that he recovered, they concluded to try the experiment for themselves. They called the rum "fire-water," and named the island Manhattan, meaning "the place of drunkenness."

**4. The Hudson River.**—He passed up the river to a point a little north of Albany, and then returned to England. The English government detained his ship, and claimed that his services belonged to his own country. He sent to Holland an account of his voyage and discoveries, but did not go back himself.\*

\* **Hudson's Last Voyage.**—On another voyage, Henry Hudson dis-

## TOPICS FOR REVIEW.

1. Give a sketch of the life of Columbus—his voyages and discoveries.
2. Give the reasons for the English claims to North America.
3. Tell the events connected with the discovery of Florida.
4. Tell the circumstances under which the Pacific was first seen by Balboa.
5. Describe the travels and discoveries of DeSoto.
6. Describe the appearance and habits of the American Indians.

## DATE OF DISCOVERY.

ENGLISH KINGS.			FRENCH KINGS.
Henry VII.	1492	COLUMBUS discovered <i>America</i> .	Charles VIII.
Henry "	1497	The CABOTS discovered <i>North America</i> .	Charles "
Henry VIII	1512	PONCE DE LEON discovered <i>Florida</i> .	Louis XII.
Henry "	1513	BALBOA discovered the <i>Pacific Ocean</i> .	Louis "
Henry "	1534	CARTIER discovered the <i>St. Lawrence</i> .	Francis I.
Henry "	1541	DeSoto discovered the <i>Mississippi</i> .	Francis "

## BOOKS FOR REFERENCE.

Bancroft's "History of United States;" Irving's "Life of Columbus;" Catlin's "North American Indians;" Edwards' "Life of Raleigh;" Irving's "Conquest of Florida;" Abbott's "Ferdinand DeSoto;" Longfellow's "Hiawatha;" Parkman's "Pioneers in North America;" Longfellow's "Evangaline;" Cooper's "Leather Stocking Tales."

covered the great bay of North America, where he spent some time trying to find, in the northwest, the passage to India he had sought so long. The severities of a winter amidst the ice of those northern waters made his men discontented and rebellious. They seized him and his son, with eight others, and, after placing them in an open boat, left them to perish. Cold and hunger ended the life of the brave Hudson, upon the bay that perpetuates his name.

## SECTION II.—SETTLEMENTS.

### CHAPTER I.

#### THE SETTLEMENT OF VIRGINIA. 1607.

**1. The Charter.**—The London and Plymouth Companies asked the king to allow them to take control of the country and trade with the natives; and, to keep any other persons from disputing this right with them, he gave them the permission in a written paper to which he signed his name. This paper was called a *charter* or grant.

**2. Jamestown.**—The London Company sent out a colony in 1607, which settled at Jamestown, on the James river. The colony numbered one hundred and five men. Captain Newport commanded the vessel in which they came. As they entered Chesapeake Bay, they named the capes on the right and left, Cape Charles and Cape Henry, for the sons of the king. They landed May 13, when the whole forest was beautiful with the fresh green of the spring-time. The king had written laws for their government in the charter. Seven of their number were appointed councilmen, and Mr. Wingfield was chosen president; but he was not a good man and did not manage affairs well for the people.

**3. Trouble.**—Captain Newport returned to England before they became accustomed to the new way of living, but he left with them a brave and noble man, Captain John Smith.\* There was much sickness among them during the

\* Captain John Smith was born in Lincolnshire, England. When quite young, he left England and went to Holland, and afterward to Austria, where he enlisted in the army to fight the Turks, with whom

summer, and many died. Most of them were idle, and took no care to provide themselves with food for the next year; when all their supplies were exhausted, they were left in a state of want and suffering.

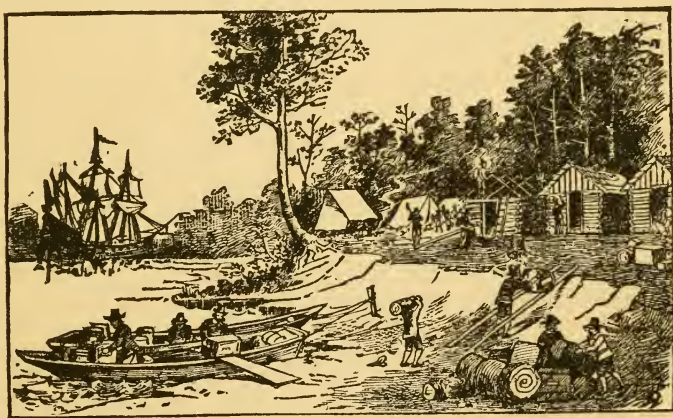
**4. Captain Smith's Management.**—By quarreling among themselves, they made matters worse. Through jealousy, they had excluded Captain Smith from the council, but they were at length compelled to turn to him for help. Under his skillful management, they were relieved of many troubles. He worked hard himself and compelled the idlers to follow his example. Their work added many comforts, which the cold winter made necessary, for their rude homes. At first they stretched an old sail to the limbs of trees, to shelter them from the sun and rain, and built walls of rails; but afterwards they learned to cut down trees and build houses. He also made treaties of friendship with the Indians, and procured food for the needy colony.

**5. Captured by Indians.**—After Captain Smith had trained the men to some degree of order, he prepared for an exploring expedition up the Chickahominy river. When he had gone about thirty miles, he and his party were attacked by Indians. They killed his companions and captured him. He amused them by showing them his pocket compass and by writing to his friends. The Indians were so much impressed by this new way of sending messages, and by many things he said and did, that they kept him imprisoned a long time, thinking they had no right to

Austria was then at war. He became very famous by killing three of the Turks in single combat, but was finally captured and sold as a slave. His Turkish master treated him with great cruelty, and he determined to make his escape. One day, while he was employed threshing grain, he killed his master with the flail and ran away. He went to Russia, then to Austria and Spain and on to Morocco. At last he came back to England and joined the new expedition with Captain Newport, when he was nearly thirty years old.

kill such a wonderful man. The chiefs met and consulted about what they should do with him. Powhatan (pow-ha-tán), their king, determined to put him to death.

**6. Pocahontas.**—Captain Smith's hands were tied and his head laid upon a log of wood. A club was raised to strike the fatal blow. Powhatan's young daughter, Pocahontas, threw herself beside the prisoner, and clasping her arms around him, with tears besought her father to spare him. The chiefs were all greatly moved by this, and her father consented to release him. Captain Smith made a treaty of peace with Powhatan, and, after an absence of seven weeks, returned to Jamestown.



ARRIVAL AT JAMESTOWN.

**7. The Colony Saved by Pocahontas.**—Soon after this Powhatan broke his promise of peace to the English, and made a plot to destroy the whole colony. The night before the Indians expected to make the attack, Pocahontas went through the rain and the darkness to tell Captain Smith to prepare for the approach of the savages. She walked back



the same night to her father's village. By this act of kindness, the colony was saved and peace restored.<sup>b</sup>

**8. Gold.**—Captain Newport came back with provisions and one hundred and twenty new colonists. Some 1608. of these were goldsmiths, and they had come to find the gold which they expected to see in quantities along the hillsides. Captain Newport loaded his ship with sparkling soil, which they had gathered on the bank of a river, and took it to England; but when he returned and told them that the treasure was of no value, they gave up searching for the precious metal.

**9. Captain Smith Wounded.**—The colony had been in Virginia two years, when Captain Smith was so 1609. severely wounded by an explosion of gunpowder that he was obliged to return to England. He never came back to Jamestown. A few years afterward he sailed to a point north of that place, and explored the shores between the Penobscot and Cape Cod. He called the country New England; that section still retains the name he gave it.

**10. The "Starving Time."**—A short time before Captain Smith left Jamestown, a fleet, bringing two 1609-10. hundred new additions to the colony, arrived. This increased the number of settlers to five hundred; but after Captain Smith's departure, great suffering followed from the scarcity of provisions. Many died. Their number was

<sup>b</sup> **Capture and Marriage of Pocahontas.**—Pocahontas, who had been such a true friend to the colony, was stolen by a party of men 1613. under Captain Argall. These men sent a message to her father, telling him that the young girl should be released whenever he paid them the price they demanded. Powhatan refused to pay it, and prepared for a war with the white men in order to rescue his daughter. A young Englishman named Rolf, who had influenced her to become a Christian, fell in love with her, and persuaded her to marry him. Her father consented, and terms of peace were made. Three years after her marriage, while on a visit to England with her husband, she died, leaving an infant son. Some of the best families of our country claim to be her descendants.



reduced from five hundred to sixty ; and those who survived, determined to leave Jamestown. About this time, a vessel, which had spent the winter in the West Indies, arrived with provisions and new emigrants. Yet they were still determined to leave the place in which they had suffered so long. They had sailed down to the mouth of the river, when they met a fleet of English ships bringing Lord De la Ware, or Delaware, their new governor, with men and supplies. He induced them to return to Jamestown. They always called the winter of 1609-10 the "starving time."

**11. Lord Delaware's Government.**—The king had given a second charter, which dismissed the council at Jamestown and gave them a governor. Their condition was at once improved by the wise management of Lord Delaware. This deliverance from famine and death led many of them to acknowledge the goodness of God. They met in their little church every day to beseech His blessing. Health and plenty and peace returned to them, but Lord Delaware's health soon failed, and he embarked for England. Sir Thomas Dale was his successor.

**12. Tobacco.**—Columbus had found the natives smoking tobacco in Cuba. It is said to have received its name from the island, Tobago, where it was first cultivated. In Virginia it became the chief article of commerce. For a long time it was the currency of the country. The salaries of clergymen, private debts, and even taxes were paid in tobacco. Ninety young women were sent by the London Company to Virginia, and each young settler, who married one of them, paid one hundred pounds of tobacco for her. Fines were also paid in this product, and whenever it could be proved that a woman was guilty of slander, her husband had to pay five hundred pounds of tobacco. They valued it

**Cows, Goats and Hogs.**—In 1611, Sir Thomas Gates became governor at Jamestown, and brought with him the first cows, goats and hogs that were brought to this country.

so highly that they even planted it in their gardens, and often in the streets of Jamestown.

**13. Slavery.**—The soil of Virginia was rich, and the cultivation of tobacco was so profitable that the majority of the settlers did not live in towns and villages, but on plantations throughout the country. Men who had committed crime in England were sold to the planters to work the plantations for ten years. Some of the Indians had been captured, and made to work as slaves in the same way, but they were not profitable laborers. In 1620, a Dutch vessel brought twenty African negroes to Jamestown. They were sold to the settlers; and this was the beginning of negro slavery in this country.

**14. Indian Massacre.**—During the same year, twelve hundred persons, belonging to an excellent class of people, moved to Virginia from England. Two years of unbroken peace and prosperity followed; but at the end of that time, a sudden attack made by the Indians brought death and sorrow to the colony. The new Indian king hated the white men, and wanted to destroy their settlements. He called his warriors around his camp-fire and made them promise to hide themselves in the forest around the plantations, and at noon, on a day which he had chosen, to rush upon the Englishmen in their homes and murder them without mercy. The plot was kept secret; the colonists knew nothing of it, until on the morning of the appointed day, a converted Indian told the people at Jamestown. Men were sent to warn all the settlers, but before the news could reach every plantation, twelve o'clock came, and three hundred planters, with their families, were killed. A bloody war followed, in which the Indians were defeated and driven back into the forest.

**15. A Royal Province.**—The London Company be-

1624. came divided by political opinions, and the king compelled them to give up their claims in America. He then took the government of the colony into his own hands, and himself appointed its governors. This made Virginia a royal province.

---

## CHAPTER II.

### THE SETTLEMENT OF VIRGINIA CONTINUED.

**1. Indian War.**—After the great Indian massacre, the savages, though professing to be at peace with the  
1644. white men, were really seeking an opportunity for revenge. Twenty-two years afterward, in 1644, they made another sudden attack upon the plantations, and killed a large number of the settlers. The war which followed this attack lasted two years. Many red men were killed or captured, and the Virginia Indians gave but little trouble to the colony afterward.

**2. The "Old Dominion."**—After the execution of Charles I., king of England, many royalists re-  
1658. moved to Virginia, where the people had remained devoted to the cause of the king. Sir William Berkeley was appointed governor, and Charles II., who was then banished from England, was invited to come and reign as king in Virginia. From this circumstance, Virginia was called the "*Old Dominion*."<sup>a</sup>

<sup>a</sup> A quarrel between King Charles I. of England and the Parliament brought on a civil war in that country in 1642. A part of the people took sides with the king, and were called Royalists or Cavaliers. The king's friends called those who were on the side of the Parliament, Roundheads, because there were so many apprentices among them, whose hair was cut short. Oliver Cromwell was one of the leaders of the army against the king. After four years of trouble, during which several battles had been fought, the town into which the king had gone was surrounded

**3. Taxes.**—The people of Virginia were very glad to hear that Charles II. had been placed upon the throne, and they hoped that he would reward their devotion by securing all their rights to them; but the English government passed laws which the Virginians thought were very unjust. These laws compelled them to pay a duty of five per cent. on everything exported from the colony, and on everything brought into it.

**4. Culpepper and Arlington.**—Virginia had been a royal province about fifty years, when the king gave the whole of the country to two of his favorites—Lord Culpepper and the Earl of Arlington. This act of the king aroused deep feelings of indignation among the people.

**5. Bacon's Rebellion.**—Nathaniel Bacon, an ambitious young lawyer in Virginia, strengthened this feeling of discontent by making the people believe that their rulers were to blame for much of the trouble, and that the country was ready for rebellion. The Susquehanna Indians had been plundering the plantations along the border, from the Potomac to the James. Bacon said that Governor Berkeley had not the courage to resist these raiders. Some of the men armed themselves, and made Bacon their leader. He asked the governor for a commission, and promised to march against the Indians immediately. Governor Berkeley suspected that he had some other object, and refused him the commission. Bacon marched to Jamestown with six hundred men, and demanded from the council, then in session, what the governor had withheld. Governor Berkeley

by the Parliamentary army, and he was made a prisoner. He was tried by a court made up of members of Parliament; this court condemned him to be beheaded. Oliver Cromwell was then proclaimed Lord Protector, and the king's son fled from the country. In 1660, thirteen years after the death of Charles I., his son, Charles II., was restored to the throne of England.

still firmly refused, but the frightened councilmen wrote the commission, and insisted that the governor should sign it. Bacon marched against the Indians. As soon as he had gone, the council annulled his commission, and pronounced him a rebel. Bacon brought his men back to Jamestown, and Governor Berkeley fled to collect forces who were friendly to him.

Civil war began to rage throughout the province. Property was destroyed, plantations plundered, and Jamestown burnt to ashes. It was never rebuilt, and nothing but a ruined church now stands to show where the first settlement was made. Williamsburg became the capital.

**6. Bacon's Death.**—The king pronounced Bacon a traitor, and sent over troops to assist Governor Berkeley. Bacon died suddenly before they reached the shores of Virginia, and his followers surrendered. This ended the rebellion without further trouble.

**7. William and Mary College.**—Virginia continued to be oppressed by English laws and English governors during the reign of Charles II. and James II., until William and Mary were placed on the throne. Then, as the affairs of government became more settled, the people began to give more attention to education. There were already men of learning and character and enterprise among the Virginians. William and Mary College was established in 1692. Many free schools were also begun. As their wealth increased, they built elegant houses of imported brick. Some of these houses are still standing; their carved mahogany stairways and the pieces of massive mahogany furniture which have been preserved show in what style those gentlemen of the "Old Dominion" lived.



## CHAPTER III.

## THE NEW ENGLAND COLONIES.

## MASSACHUSETTS. 1620.

**1. Early Colonies.**—About the same time that Captain Newport brought over the colony to Jamestown, 1607. the Plymouth Company sent a ship with settlers for North Virginia. They landed on the coast of Maine, near the mouth of the Kennebec river. The intense cold of the winter that followed their landing made them unwilling to live in America, and the next spring they returned to England. After Captain Smith published his map of New England, others were induced to come to this wild country, but none of them remained very long and no permanent settlement was made.

**2. The Pilgrim Fathers.**—In England, at that time, any person who would not worship in the Church 1620. of England was severely punished, and people were persecuted for attending any other religious service. From this cause a number of families had gone to Holland, where they could enjoy more freedom. These people observed strictly the rules of their religion, and were called "Puritans." They could readily be distinguished by their plain and peculiar dress. They had been in Holland twelve years when war began between the Dutch and the Spaniards, and some of these Englishmen resolved to embark for America. They sent two of their number to ask the consent of the Company in London. During their stay among the Hollanders, they had received the name of "Pilgrims," from their unsettled condition. They numbered about one thousand, and from that number, one hundred of the youngest and strongest were chosen to go. A



patent, or written right, sealed with the company's seal, was given them for a tract of land in North Virginia. A company of merchants in London lent them money, which they were to repay with their labor. The profits of seven years of work were required to repay ten pounds of the money borrowed.

**3. The Mayflower.**—The two vessels in which the Pilgrims were to sail were called the Mayflower 1620. and the Speedwell. The Pilgrims worshipped together the last time. Their aged pastor knelt with them on the shore and prayed for the blessing of Heaven upon them, after which they parted from their friends and went on board the ship. The sails were spread and the shores of Holland soon faded from their sight. The Speedwell was compelled to return to England twice for repairs. The Mayflower started at last, alone, September 6, 1620. They expected to land at the mouth of the Hudson river, but, after sailing sixty-three days, they reached Cape Cod, where they cast anchor.<sup>a</sup>

**4. Form of Government.**—This colony had no charter from the king, like that of the Jamestown colony, and, before landing, a form of laws was written out and signed by the men—forty-one in all. Every man was allowed an equal share in the government, and John Carver was chosen governor for one year. They had established a democracy.

**5. Plymouth.**—A place, which they called Plymouth, was selected for their settlement. They entered a pathless, unbroken forest, covered with the snow and ice of that se-

<sup>a</sup> **Relics.**—Some of the articles brought over in the Mayflower by these Pilgrims are still preserved. An iron dinner kettle, and a small oaken table with folding leaves, which had never been touched by varnish, some of the same spinning-wheels on which the women and girls who came with them spun flax, and the cradle in which Peregrine White—the baby born on the Mayflower—was rocked, are among the things that are still in the possession of their descendants.

vere climate, and went to work at once, cutting down trees and building houses; but before they could protect themselves against the storms of snow and sleet, which soon came, their sufferings were intense, and, before spring, more than half their number died from exposure and disease. Governor Carver and his wife and son were among those who were buried on the shore.

**6. Indians.**—A short time before his death, Governor Carver made a treaty with several Indian chiefs, which protected the colony. This treaty was sacredly kept for fifty years.

**7. Indian Corn.**—As the spring came on, health and strength returned to the settlers. The Indians taught them to cultivate maize, or Indian corn, and to shoot fish with arrows; they also added to their store of provisions by killing deer and wild turkey in the woods. They had no cattle then, and the wolves that howled around their houses at night would have killed cows, hogs, or sheep, if they had been brought to that wild country.

**8. Suffering for Bread.**—In the fall, a vessel with thirty-five Puritans arrived without a supply of provisions, and the following winter was one of intense suffering. A part of the time they had no grain of any kind. One of them wrote: "I have seen men stagger, by reason of faintness, for want of food." They planted corn-fields to cover the graves, so that the Indians might not know how small their number had grown. Much that they suffered was owing to the plan they had adopted of working together and keeping the proceeds of their work in one common collection, from which each man could draw his weekly allowance. There were some who would not work so long as they could live by the labor of others, and their harvests were too scanty to supply all. After trying this system three years, a portion of ground

1621-2.

was given to each family for its own use, and there was no general suffering from famine afterward.<sup>b</sup>

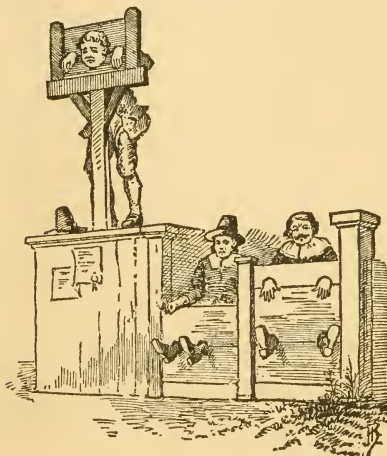
**9. The Company of Massachusetts Bay.**—After this part of the country began to be settled, it was no longer known as North Virginia, but was called New England, the name Captain Smith had given it. Eight years after the Mayflower reached Plymouth, a company of of men in England purchased that part of this section “which lies between three miles to the south of the Merri-mac river and three miles to the south of the Charles river, and extending from the Atlantic to the South sea.” They received from Charles I. a charter, in which it was agreed that the government of the colonies settling in that region should be managed by the company, and that the company should be called “The Governor and Company of Massachusetts Bay in New England.”

**10. Boston.**—Among the stockholders of this company were some prominent Puritans and other good men. They thought the country would be more valuable if it were filled with people to cultivate and improve it, and in order to encourage families to move out from England, they promised that the councilmen should be chosen by the settlers themselves. John Winthrop was the first governor. About fifteen hundred emigrants came to Massachusetts; and settlements were made at Boston and at other points within a few miles of that place.

**11. Government.**—The next year a meeting of all the men of the settlements was held in Boston, and John Winthrop was again elected governor. As long as they continued to meet together and vote for their officers and decide upon all the affairs of the colony them-

<sup>b</sup> **Salem.**—John Endicot came over with a colony of one hundred Puritans, who settled at Salem in 1628. They gave their settlement this name because the word in Hebrew means “peace.”

selves, their government was purely democratic. Afterward, this plan was changed, and the citizens voted for representatives in a legislature, who made laws for their government. Only church-members were considered citizens and allowed to vote.



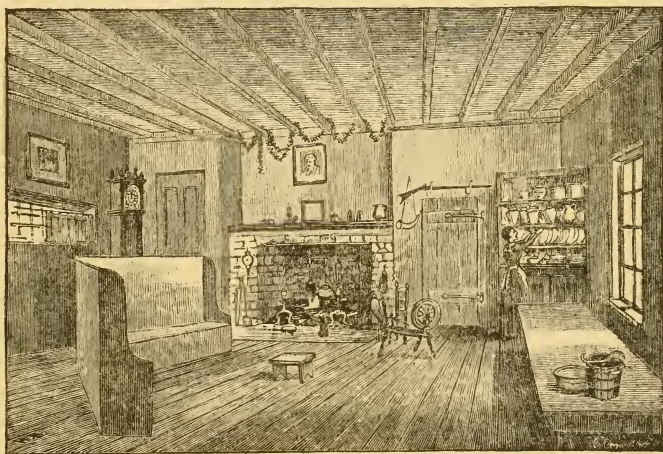
THE PILLORY AND STOCKS.

**12. Laws.**—They were very strict in the observance of their religious laws, and every person was required to attend church every Sunday. Any who were absent were punished, unless the excuse given was considered a good one. Every settlement had its meeting-house, and every Sunday morning at the drum-beat they were all ready to march to church. The men carried their guns.

The sermon often lasted two hours. The seats for the women were always on the opposite side of the church from those occupied by the men. For a violation of law the offender was sometimes made to stand, during service where he could be seen by the congregation, the name of the offence having been written upon a paper and fastened to his person. Commonly, such criminals were put in the stocks or the pillory.

**13. The Houses in New England** generally contained two or more low rooms, with an attic above. They were built of logs; the roof was covered with thatch, and the chimneys were made of pieces of wood, covered with plastered clay. The large kitchen was the sitting-room for

the family. Within its wide fire-place hung the crane, supporting pots and kettles over the wood fire. From the rafters were suspended showy festoons of pepper and strings of dried pumpkin and dried fruit. Chairs were few, and the high-backed settle was in use a long time. The spinning-wheels were kept busily at work; heavy wooden looms were used for making the cloth for the household.



THE NEW ENGLAND KITCHEN.

Articles of comfort were added slowly—one by one. The first clocks were made mostly of wood, and, reaching from the floor to the ceiling, occupied one corner of the room. The cupboard was a useful piece of furniture that, after a time, had its place in most of these houses. It, too, was made to stand in a corner; its shelves held the store of plain china and pewter ware used by the family. The windows and doors were small and low; oiled paper was substituted for glass. A narrow looking-glass and a few pictures or



namented the walls. The father's gun and powder pouch, above the door, were always ready for defense against an attack by Indians.

The narrow space between the house and the low fence in front contained the flower garden, filled with old-fashioned holyhocks and four-o'clocks. Borders of touch-me-not were on both sides of the walk from the gate, and the jack bean, gay with its scarlet blooms, twined itself over the low porch and window.

**14. Schools.**—The Puritans were anxious about the education of their children, and common schools began to be popular among them at an early day.

**15. Massachusetts.**—The colonies of Plymouth and Massachusetts Bay were united in 1692, and called 1692. Massachusetts. The name is said to mean "Blue Hills."

---

## CHAPTER IV.

### SETTLEMENT OF RHODE ISLAND.—1636.

**1. Roger Williams** came to Salem, Massachusetts, in 1631. He had been a minister in the Episcopal church, when quite a young man, but he afterwards separated from that church and united with the Baptist denomination. He preached in Plymouth and Salem, and to the Indians, with great earnestness and eloquence; and explained the Bible according to his belief. He said that civil rulers ought to punish for crimes, but that they had no right to control men in matters of religion. He complained against the law which compelled men to attend church. The Puritans called him a heretic, and after having tried him they condemned him to exile from the settlements.

**2. His New Home.**—He left Salem about the middle of January, in the night. He wandered fourteen weeks through a forest of snow and ice, alone and on foot. When he reached the territory of the Narragansett Indians, he made friendly terms with them, and they gave him shelter and protection. He received permission from the chief to live on land belonging to that tribe, and he built his home in the unbroken wilderness. The next spring he planted the ground and was joined by a few friends.

**3. Providence.**—He had located within the boundaries of Massachusetts, and the government sent a messenger to say that he could not be allowed to remain where he was. After that, he and his friends removed to Rhode Island. The chief of the Narragansetts gave him land, and he began to build and plant once more at the head of Narragansett Bay. He named his settlement Providence, to express his confidence in the goodness of God. Many who were persecuted in Massachusetts and in England joined him, and the settlement grew rapidly. He received all who came without questioning their religious belief, but he was firm in maintaining the laws of order and justice. Every one was required to sign a written agreement to obey all laws which were made for the public good, and which had received the consent of the greater portion of the citizens.

**4. Newport.**—A short time after Roger Williams left Salem, a woman preacher in Boston, Mrs. Anne Hutchinson, made such a disturbance among the Puritans by her religious teachings, that she was condemned as a heretic by a number of ministers, and she and her followers were banished from the colony. William Coddington led a band of those who believed in her doctrines to Providence. Through the influence of Roger Williams, they bought from the In-

dians the Island of Aquidneck ; they called it Rhode Island. This party of exiles made a settlement at Newport, and established a democratic government like that of Providence.

**5. The Charter.**—Roger Williams went to England and  
1643. obtained from Parliament, for the two colonies, a charter, in which they were united in one, and under which they were governed until Charles II. was restored to the throne.

---

## CHAPTER V.

### CONNECTICUT.—1635.

**1. The Dutch** were the first to take possession of the  
1633. valley of the Connecticut ; they built a fort on the bank of the river. That stream was named by the Indians, Connecticut, which means *long river*.

**2. Saybrook.**—When the people in England heard of  
1635. the beautiful, fertile country west of the settlements in Massachusetts, the Plymouth Company granted it to the Earl of Warwick, who transferred it to Lord Say and Lord Brooks. Their agent built a fort at the mouth of the Connecticut, and called it Saybrook, in honor of them. The Dutch attempted to prevent the Englishmen from sailing up the river, but they did not succeed. The English vessels sailed past the Dutch fort, and built houses for their traders at Windsor.

**3. Colonies from Massachusetts.**—A number of families who had grown tired of the religious quarrels  
1636. in Massachusetts, and who wished to settle in this fertile region, left Boston the following summer, with the Rev. Thos. Hooker as their leader. With only a compass to guide them, they traveled through the wilderness, driving their cattle before them, and reached the river in fourteen

days. The Indians sold them land, and some of them settled at Hartford, and built new homes. Others went up the river to Windsor, and some, down to Wethersfield. The colony, which was made up of these settlements, took its name from the river, and was known as the Connecticut Colony.

**4. New Haven.**—Not more than twelve months after 1637. this time, a rich merchant from London, with his friends, came to Boston. Religious disputes were kept up so constantly among the people of that place, that this party also resolved to seek a more peaceful home in the unsettled country toward the west. After sailing from Boston and examining the shore, they landed and made a settlement at New Haven.

**5. Three Colonies.**—Connecticut then contained three 1644. separate colonies; namely, Saybrook Colony, Connecticut Colony (embracing Windsor, Hartford and Wethersfield), and New Haven Colony. In 1644, nine years after the founding of the Saybrook Colony, it was united with the Connecticut Colony, but the New Haven Colony continued to be a separate government until King Charles combined them into one. After that they were known as Connecticut.

#### NEW HAMPSHIRE.—1623.

**6. Gorges and Mason.**—Sir Fernando Gorges, (gor'-jez) 1623. and Captain John Mason received from the Plymouth Company a grant of land extending from the Kennebec to the Merrimac river. Three years after the Pilgrims landed at Plymouth, in 1623, two settlements were made on the Piscataqua river. The banks were covered with wild strawberries when the English ships arrived. Captain Mason, who had come with the settlers, built his house near the river, and called his home "Straw-

berry Bank." The village which grew up around it took the same name. It is now the city of Portsmouth. The other settlement was made further inland, and was called Dover.

**7. Mason's Grant.**—Captain Mason obtained another grant which reached from the Piscataqua to the Merrimac, and included the settlements he had made. He named the region New Hampshire, from Hampshire, England, the place from whence many of the settlers had come.

**8. Union with Massachusetts.**—Seven years after receiving this new grant, Captain Mason died, and no one succeeded him. The colony was left with no settled government, and the country was divided among many who claimed a right to it. Much disputing and much trouble followed. The people of Massachusetts claimed that the Plymouth Company had given a part of New Hampshire to them. In addition to these troubles about government, the people suffered greatly from the hostility and cruelty of the Indians, and they finally decided to seek protection from Massachusetts. New Hampshire continued to be a part of Massachusetts during thirty-nine years. After that time it was again made separate by the king.

#### VERMONT.

**9. Governor Wentworth,** one of the governors of New Hampshire, claimed that all of the land which is now called Vermont, belonged to New Hampshire, and he gave away townships, or tracts of land west of the Connecticut river, which were settled by people from Scotland and Ireland.

This region had already been explored by Champlain. Settlements were made so slowly that it did not become a separate colony before the revolution. It was known as



the "New Hampshire Grants," because of the land Governor Wentworth had given away.

#### MAINE.

10. After Captain Mason obtained possession of New Hampshire, Gorges also received another grant, 1639. which gave him the land from the Piscataqua to the Kennebec. This part of the country had been called the Mayne (main) land, to distinguish it from the islands along the coast. From this circumstance the name of Maine has been applied to this region.

At first, there were only a few fishing stations. Settlers moved in so slowly that, like Vermont, it did not become a separate colony for many years.

---

### CHAPTER VI.

#### THE CONFEDERATION OF NEW ENGLAND.

1. **The Pequod War.**—Cassacus, a chief of the Pequod Indians, saw that the Englishmen were taking 1634. possession of the land that had belonged to his fathers, and he wanted to destroy all the white settlements in New England; he tried to persuade other tribes to join him in his plot. Through the influence of Roger Williams, the Narragansetts and Mohawks refused to assist him.

Two English captains of trading vessels on the Connecticut were killed by Pequod Indians; and two years afterward an English vessel was captured by a party of the same tribe, and its commander cruelly killed. The colonists of Massachusetts and of Connecticut became so indignant at this that they resolved to declare war against the Pequods. Roger Williams persuaded the Narragansetts and

Mohicans to join their forces with those of the colonists. He was showing the beautiful spirit of forgiveness, in thus interfering to protect the people of Massachusetts, who had exiled him from his home among them.

**2. Battle with the Pequods.**—During the winter of 1637, four companies were raised in Massachusetts to march against the Pequods. Captain Mason, with the companies from Connecticut, joined them, and a friendly Indian led them to the principal fort of the Pequods, on the Mystic river. Lines of wigwams, protected by the fort, were filled with Indian families. Captain Mason directed the attack on the fort. The fighting was desperate. About seven hundred Indians were killed. Many perished in the flames when their wigwams were burned, and about two hundred women and children were captured. The fort was left in ruins and the strength of the Pequods was completely broken. The white men lost but few of their number; some accounts of the battle tell us that there were only two men missing on their return.

Cassacus escaped, but was afterward killed by some of the Indians. The soldiers from Connecticut and Massachusetts, and the Indians who had joined them, claimed the captives for slaves. Large numbers of these prisoners were sent to the West Indies and sold into slavery.

**3. The Slave Trade.**—A year previous to this war, the first American slave vessel was built. It was 1636. launched at Marblehead, Massachusetts, and named the "Desire." It brought back to Massachusetts the first ship load of African slaves, and the negroes were bought by many of the most influential men of the colony. The people of Virginia had owned slaves eighteen years when the people of this section began to engage in the same traffic.

**4. Harvard University.**—It was as long ago as 1638,

1638. that Rev. John Harvard founded a college in Massachusetts. He left about four thousand dollars and his library for its use, and it was called Harvard University. It is the oldest college in this country.

**5. The Printing Press** was introduced about this time by Rev. Jesse Glover. Stephen Day managed this  
1638. press, and its first issue was a pamphlet called "The Freedman's Oath."

**6. Confederation.**—After the war with the Pequods,  
1643. the colonists of New England concluded that it would be best to form a union of all the colonies, in order to protect themselves against the savages, and against the Dutch and French who also threatened trouble. Each colony was to retain the control of its own affairs, and two commissioners were to be chosen from each colony, making eight in all, who were to manage all the business that belonged to the confederation. None but church members could be elected commissioners, and the colonies were not to be bound by any act of the general council of commissioners, unless it had been agreed to by all represented. Plymouth, Massachusetts Bay, Connecticut, and New Haven formed this union in 1643, and gave it the name of "The United Colonies of New England." Rhode Island was not received because of its freedom in matters of religion.

**7. The Quakers**, or Friends, were a religious sect in England, who believed that the government had no right to interfere with religion; that no crime but that of murder should be punished with death; and that no person should be imprisoned for debt. They could not believe that it was right for nations to wage war against each other, and they refused to be enrolled as soldiers. They would never take an oath in the civil courts, because they thought that speaking the truth was sufficient. But the foolish behavior of some of their members, who stripped themselves of their

clothing and went about the streets and into the churches, preaching to the people, made the sect very unpopular. Like the Puritans, they avoided all that was costly or ornamental in dress. They considered all men equal, and refused to honor any man with a title, simply addressing each by his Christian name or as "thee and thou." They wore their hats even in the presence of a king, to show their belief that all were equal.

**8. Persecution of Quakers.**—Laws were passed excluding the Quakers from Massachusetts. When 1656. one of the sect came into the colony, he was punished with the loss of an ear and banishment. If he were found within the colony again, he was driven out, with the loss of the other ear; and if he still persisted in returning, his tongue was bored through with a hot iron. These severe laws did not keep the Quakers away from Boston. They were whipped and tortured, and even put to death. Four of them were hung; after that, there was so much excitement among the people that the laws were changed. The new laws required that these peculiar persons should be whipped from the colony.

**9. Trouble with England.**—While the Virginians were showing their devotion to the king, the Puritans were opposing him, and when Charles II. was 1660. restored to the throne, three of the judges who had condemned his father—Whalley, Goffe and Dixwell—fled to New England for safety. The English government sent an order for their arrest, but they were allowed to escape to Connecticut.

The people of Massachusetts began to fear that the new king might punish their opposition to him, and they sent agents to England, with the request that he would confirm their charter. He agreed, but insisted that they should tolerate the church of England, and allow those who were not

church members to vote. Royal commissioners soon arrived in the United Colonies and Rhode Island. They disputed with Massachusetts about her claim to New Hampshire, but returned to England without settling the question. Other troubles at home occupied the attention of the king, and New England was neglected.\*

---

## CHAPTER VII.

### KING PHILIP'S WAR 1675.

**1. King Philip.**—After the unwelcome royal visitors had returned to the king, a bloody Indian war spread its terrors amidst the homes of New England. This was in 1675, and was called King Philip's war, because he led the tribes against the English. Philip was the son of a chief who had been a friend of the first settlers, and who had taught them to cultivate corn. At his death, Philip was made the chief of his tribe; he became very jealous as he saw the white men taking possession of the country which had been the hunting grounds of his fathers. His brothers and several members of his tribe had been tried for murder, and sentenced to death by a jury of Puritans and Indians. All this had aroused his bitter hatred against the white men.

**2. The War.**—Philip visited every tribe from Maine to Connecticut, and persuaded them to join him in a league to drive out the English. His army con-

\* **John Elliot.**—While many fled to America because of religious persecution, others were specially interested in the conversion of the Indians; they either came to the settlements, or gave money to help those who were willing to come. One of the most prominent among them was John Eliot. He taught a school for Indians. The first Bible printed in America was that which he translated into the Indian language. He preached to them about God, and taught them the truths of the Christian religion.



sisted of three thousand warriors. The first attack was made at Swanzey, in Plymouth. The English were superior to the savages in numbers and in arms; although the red men knew something of the use of firearms, they had comparatively few guns and but little ammunition. Troops from Boston compelled them to leave Swanzey. Their line of retreat was marked by burning houses, and often by scalps and heads of the dead attached to poles along the way. Every settlement upon the western border was kept in a state of constant terror. Brookfield, Deerfield, and Springfield were burned.<sup>a</sup>

**3. The Swamp Fight.**—A force of one thousand men was raised by the colonists to march into the country of the Narragansetts and break King Philip's league of destruction. Captain Winslow commanded these troops. They marched through the deep December snows to a Narragansett town, in a swamp enclosed by palisades, where they found Philip and his army, with their wives and children, and their corn and beans, which they had gathered for the winter. As Captain Winslow's men approached, the Indians fired upon them and killed numbers of the white men. After a fight of two hours, the Englishmen reached the fort and burned the town. When this battle was ended, a thousand Indian warriors were among the dead, and many women and children had breathed their last in the midst of their burning homes.

**4. Philip's Death.**—Philip, with some of his followers, escaped. He continued to attack unprotected villages whenever he found an opportunity. The English sol-

<sup>a</sup> The people of Hadly were at church and their services were interrupted by the war-whoop of the Indians. In the midst of the confusion which followed, a white-haired old man, a stranger to them all, came among them. He called the men to order, and, as their leader, enabled them to drive back the savages. It was afterward thought that he was William Goffe, one of the regicide judges who had condemned Charles I. He had also been a general in Cromwell's army, and had fled from England.

diers followed him, killing his men whenever they came in reach of them. Still the brave chief would not surrender, and the war went on. He is said to have slain one of the chiefs who proposed peace. In June a strong force captured his wife and child—a boy of nine years. This loss crushed Philip's spirit, and he and his few surviving followers were overtaken in their refuge in a swamp. An Englishman aimed his gun at Philip but it did not fire, and one of the Indians shot his king through the heart. Philip's death ended the war. Many lives had been lost, and much property destroyed. A heavy debt was incurred by the colonists, but the strength of three powerful tribes was broken. Philip's young son was sent to Bermuda and sold as a slave.

**5. Sir Edmund Andros.**—Great excitement spread through New England when the news came that the king of England had determined to take away the charters of the colonies. Sir Edmund Andros was sent over with a council, which the king had appointed to take control of the colonies of New England. He bore the title of Captain-general, and had power to make laws and levy taxes as he chose. His treatment of the people in Massachusetts was very tyrannical. He would not allow public meetings, and forbade any person to leave the country without permission from him.

**6. The Charter Oak.**—He took possession of the Rhode Island charter, and when he reached Hartford, he ordered the Legislature to deliver to him the charter of Connecticut. Obedience to this order was delayed until later in the day. The charter was placed upon the table after the candles were lighted. When Andros attempted to take it, the lights were suddenly put out; when they were relighted, the charter had disappeared. One of the members had hurriedly left the room and carried it with

him. For sometime it was kept safely hidden in a large hollow oak tree, which, for many years afterward, was known as the "Charter Oak."

**7. New Charters.**—Although Andros failed to obtain this charter, he exercised complete control over all these colonies. The people sent to England to ask relief from his tyranny, but they received no encouragement from the king. During the reign of William and Mary, new charters were granted to the colonies, and their liberties were once more restored, though they could no longer elect their governors—the king appointed them. In Connecticut the old charter was brought back from its hiding place. The new charter for Massachusetts united Plymouth and that colony under one government.

**8. Witchcraft.**—Many people in England and Scotland, in those days, believed that the greater number of their diseases and troubles were caused by persons called witches, whom they supposed to have power given them by Satan to harm people and animals. These same beliefs had crossed the Atlantic with the emigrants to the New World. The excitement reached such a height that the lives of many persons were in constant danger from their accusers. The children of a minister in Salem, Massachusetts, were afflicted with convulsions, and their father believed they were bewitched. He traced the cause of the trouble, as he thought, to an Indian servant in the family. By severe punishment, he made her confess that she had bewitched the children.

**9. Cotton Mather,** a minister of influence, did much to increase and spread the excitement. Whenever persons were afflicted with nervous diseases, the cause was sought by accusing some other persons of the crime of witchcraft; trial and imprisonment followed. As many as twenty were hung in a few months, while the prisons were filled with

people supposed to be in league with evil spirits. These colonists were in serious danger of destroying one another. The courts began to see the folly of punishing this supposed crime with death, and, after they refused to notice the accusers, the trouble ceased.

---

## CHAPTER VIII.

### THE SETTLEMENT OF NEW YORK.—1614.

**1. Dutch Traders.**—The Dutch claimed that part of 1610. North America which Henry Hudson had discovered; and the merchants of Holland sent out trading vessels to the new country after his return. They established trading posts on the Hudson river and on Manhattan Island, and came back to Holland. Their ships were loaded with valuable furs which had been bought from the Indians.

**2. New Amsterdam.**—Seven years after Captain Smith began his work at Jamestown, cabins were built on 1614. Manhattan Island, and also a fort of logs for their protection. The name of New Amsterdam was given to the place.

**3. New Netherlands.**—After this, a number of Holland merchants united in forming the Dutch West 1621. India Company, and obtained a charter from their government allowing them to trade in the territory lying between South Virginia and New France. In this charter it was called New Netherlands, and extended from the Connecticut river to the Delaware. Settlements were soon made and treaties of friendship formed with the Indians.

**4. Peter Minuit** (min'-ū-it) was sent to New Netherlands as its first governor. He bought Manhattan 1626. Island from the Indians for twenty-four dollars.

The people of Manhattan proposed a covenant of friendship with the Plymouth colony. The Plymouth governor accepted the proposal, but reminded them that the fortieth degree of latitude was the boundary of New England and that the Dutch had no rights beyond it.

**5. New Settlements.**—The settlers from Holland carried on a profitable trade in furs, but New Amsterdam grew slowly. Farther up the river Fort Orange was built. On Long Island, Staten Island, and out into New Jersey, wherever the rich soil or an abundance of beavers attracted, their settlements were extended. They were careful to pay the Indians for all the land they obtained from them.

**6. Trouble with Indians.**—The rum which the white men sold the Indians made them quarrelsome. 1642. They did some things which the traders resented with cruelty, and the savages began to attack the white settlements. About this time a company of River Indians, who had been fighting with the Mohawks, fled to the banks of the Hudson, near Manhattan Island, and asked for help from the Dutch. Instead of helping them, the governor sent a band of men to surprise and murder them. Nearly one hundred of the unsuspecting red men perished before daylight. Neither the old, nor the sick, nor the mothers with their children were spared.

**7. Indian War.**—This led to a bloody war, and the homes of the white settlers, from the Hudson to 1642. the Connecticut, were laid in ashes, and the inmates killed by the furious savages. Among the number was Mrs. Anne Hutchinson, who had been driven from Massachusetts.

**8. Dutch Customs.**—Some of the old customs which those people brought with them from Holland are still retained by us. From them, the children have learned to expect visits from "Santa Claus" or "St. Nicholas," on



Christmas-eve, and to color eggs at Easter time; while the grown people continue the custom of New-Year's calling.

**9. Dutch Homes.**—The people in New Netherlands were quite different from the Puritans in New England. Some of them were rich men, and they brought with them costly furniture to use in their new homes. Their houses were built of wood and made with "many doors and windows," and with their gables toward the street. A stoop, or porch, formed the entrance; there the men often sat and smoked their pipes. Painted tiles were built in the wall around the fire-places. Fires of pine-knots or tallow candles gave them light at night. The Dutch house-keepers were cleanly and orderly. The floors were covered with white sand, in which fanciful figures were drawn with the broom. Instead of clocks and watches, they used hour-glasses and sun-dials. In some houses, a mark was made to show when it was twelve o'clock by the sun, and time for dinner. Wind-mills, that had been so numerous in Holland, were also built by the Dutch settlers.

**10. Habits.**—The women and girls learned to spin flax on the spinning-wheels, which formed a part of the furniture in every house, just as the sewing-machine does in our own. They spun all the linen used in the household; it was folded away in large chests, made for the purpose. No young woman was considered ready to be married until the linen chest was filled with all that she would need in her husband's home.

**11. Dress.**—Besides spinning the linen, the women knitted all the stockings for the family and did all the sewing. Their own stockings were colored red, green, or blue, and were worn with high-heeled shoes and bright colored skirts. They brushed their hair smoothly back under white muslin caps.

The dress of the men was a woolen coat, trimmed with

large bright buttons, and worn with knee pants and long stockings. At the knee and on the shoes were fastened large silver buckles. The hair was allowed to grow long and was gathered into a cue or long braid at the back of the head.

**12. Dutch Government.**—When these people in New

1664. Netherlands heard their neighbors tell of the liberties which the charters had given to New England, they felt that their Dutch governors and patroon<sup>a</sup> masters were making slaves of them; and they wished for some change that would give them more freedom.

**13. The Duke of York.**—The English had always

1664. claimed New Netherlands, because it was discovered by the Cabots, and because Henry Hudson was an Englishman. When Charles II. was restored to the throne, he gave this territory to his brother James, then Duke of York, who sent over an armed fleet to take possession. The people, already dissatisfied with their own rulers, were unwilling to fight when the troops arrived, and though the governor desired to resist, he had to surrender to the British commander all the region claimed by the Dutch. Its name was changed to New York in honor of the duke, and Fort Orange was called Albany. New Amsterdam, on Manhattan Island, has been known as New York ever since the duke's soldiers entered it.

**14. English Rule.**—The settlers did not receive from the English what they expected. They were not allowed

<sup>a</sup> **Patroons.**—The West India Company, which was composed of merchants in Holland, was anxious that the new territory should be filled with emigrants; and, to induce people to come to New Netherlands, this company offered to every man who would bring a colony of fifty persons, a body of land sixteen miles in length, provided the land had not been occupied, and on condition that he paid the Indians for it. He was to have control of the colony, with the title of "patroon" or "lord." They were not allowed to manufacture wool or cotton, because a company in Holland did all of that for them.

to choose their rulers, but had to submit to the control of governors sent over by the duke.

**15. Dutch and English.**—The English had been in New York about nine years, when war began between England and Holland, and a Dutch fleet took possession of the city of New York. In little more than a year from that time, the English government established its claims a second time. Major Edmond Andros, who was afterward such a tyrant in the New England colonies, was sent out as governor by the Duke of York. The settlers in New York complained so bitterly against him that a new governor was appointed; and the people of that colony were allowed for the first time to elect representatives for a Legislature, and to adopt the same form of government as that of the other English colonies. New York continued to be an English colony until the War of Independence.

**16. Indian Treaty.**—Because of some movements of the French, the new governor of New York and the governor of Virginia made a treaty with the Five Nations or Iroquois (ir o-kwois) Indians, living in the northern and western part of New York. This treaty gave peace to the Englishmen, and protected them from the French in Canada for many years. <sup>b °</sup>

<sup>b</sup> **Jacob Leisler.**—A civil war in England gave the crown to William and Mary, and when the news reached New York, the governor hurried back to England. Ten men, calling themselves a "committee of safety," commissioned a captain of militia, named Jacob Leisler (Lice-ler), to take possession of the fort. About five hundred armed men joined him. He promised publicly to submit to the governor whom the king should appoint, whenever he should arrive. The mayor of the city, accompanied by other gentlemen, went to Albany to occupy the fort at that place for the king. They were not associated with Leisler. When he sent his son-in-law, Milbourn, to ask them to surrender to him, they refused. The next spring they became alarmed by the approach of Indians, and Milbourn was allowed to take command of the fort.

Leisler kept his place at the head of the government nearly three years

## CHAPTER IX.

## NEW JERSEY.—1622.

1. **The Danes.**—The land lying between the Hudson and the Delaware belonged to New Netherlands, and while the Dutch were establishing their trading posts throughout the territory, a colony of Danes made a settlement on the Delaware river.

2. **New Jersey.**—When the Duke of York took possession of New York, he gave the southern portion to two of his noblemen—Lord Berkeley and Sir George Carteret. These new owners were called "*proprietors.*" Sir George Carteret had been governor of the Isle of Jersey, near England, and the new province was called New Jersey in honor of his old home. Lord Berkeley's part was called West Jersey, Carteret's East Jersey.

without opposition from the king. When Governor Sloughter was sent to New York, Leisler and Milbourn were imprisoned and tried for treason. Their enemies invited Sloughter to a banquet, and, while he was intoxicated with wine, persuaded him to sign a warrant for the execution of Leisler and Milbourn. The next day during a heavy rain they were hung. This pleased a portion of the people, but the others did not fail to express their displeasure. The number of Leisler's friends, and those who favored his belief in the equal rights of all men, increased after his death. Those who opposed him were the aristocrats, who wanted to allow a rich man as many votes as he had estates. These were the descendants of the old lords or patroons.

° **Captain Kidd.**—At this time commerce suffered greatly from pirates. The number had increased to a fearful extent, when several members of Parliament, encouraged by the king, fitted out a vessel and placed Captain Kidd in command, to go on a trip in search of the sea-robbers and to protect the commerce of the country. Soon after leaving England, Kidd made a bargain with his sailors to change the object of their enterprise, and he became one of the most notorious pirates on the ocean. After three years of daring robbery, he approached the coast near Boston, and was captured. He was sent to England, where, after trial, he was publicly executed.

**3. The Charter.**—These noblemen being anxious to encourage immigration, obtained promises in their charter that all sects of religion should enjoy equal rights, and that the government should consist of a governor and council appointed by the proprietors. No rent was to be paid in five years; no taxes were to be demanded except those imposed by the Legislature of the colony. This liberal charter brought many persecuted families to the shores of this fertile region, and New Jersey grew rapidly in numbers; prosperity rewarded their industry.

**4. Elizabeth.**—The first English settlement was made at Elizabeth, about one year after New Netherlands 1665. became New York. The town was named in honor of Sir George Carteret's wife.

**5. The Jerseys United.**—The rights of the two proprietors were, after a time, given back to the queen 1702. of England, who united them into one colony, under the name of New Jersey. New York and New Jersey had the same governor, though New Jersey had its own Legislature, elected by the people. This state of things continued through a number of years, and then the people of New Jersey sent a petition to the queen for a governor of their own. This was granted, and the crown continued to appoint its governors until the War of Independence.\*

\* **Princeton College.**—The settlers of the colony of New Jersey showed their appreciation for education by establishing Princeton College. It was begun at Elizabeth in 1774, but was removed to Princeton ten years afterward.



## CHAPTER X.

## PENNSYLVANIA.—1681.

**1. The Name of the Province.**—William Penn's father had been an admiral in the British navy, 1681. and, as a reward for his success in the conquest of Jamaica, and for other services for the British government during the war between England and Holland, he had been promised sixteen thousand pounds sterling. After his father's death, Penn offered to take a grant of land in America, instead of the money, in payment of the debt. Charles II. was very willing to pay him in that way. His grant included "three degrees of latitude by five degrees of longitude," lying beyond New Jersey and between New York and Maryland. The king called it Pennsylvania, meaning "Penn's Woods."<sup>a</sup>

**2. Philadelphia.**—In 1683, four years before the rule of Andros in New England, William Penn,<sup>b</sup> sailed 1683. from England with one hundred emigrants. They were nine weeks crossing the Atlantic. The vessel sailed up the Delaware, and Penn selected a place "fringed with

<sup>a</sup> Lots of land containing one thousand acres were sold to the Quakers at one penny per acre.

<sup>b</sup> William Penn was educated at the University of Oxford in England, and, when he was quite a young man, he embraced the religion of the Quakers. His father being much displeased at this, sent him away from home to travel on the continent, hoping that he would give up these new doctrines after he had seen more of the world. When he returned, he became more firm than he had been before, in the belief which his father opposed. He then engaged in the study of law. He was several times imprisoned on account of his heresy and because of his pleading for the persecuted sect of Quakers. Once, after he had been released, his father turned him from his door; he was saved from suffering by his mother's kindness. The cruel treatment he received in England made him turn his attention to the colonies in New Jersey.

piners" between the Schuylkill and the Delaware river for his city. The Swedes, who had been the first to settle in that part of the country, sold them the land. He called the city Philadelphia, or "city of brotherly love." In three years six hundred houses had been built.

**3. Treaty With the Indians.**—Penn met a company of Indian chiefs on the banks of the Delaware, and made a treaty with them. The old chiefs seated themselves in a semi-circle on the ground and the younger ones were grouped behind them. Penn had already sent them messages of friendship, which had made them ready to trust him. He said to them: "We meet on the broad pathway of truth and good will. No advantage shall be taken on either side, but all shall be openness and love. We are all one flesh and one blood."

The Indians accepted his presents and gave him a belt of wampum as a sign of their friendship. They replied to him: "We will live with William Penn and his children in love so long as the moon and the sun shall endure." The red men were true to the promise they made, and this contract was never broken. While other settlements were suffering all the horrors of Indian wars, the people in Pennsylvania lived in peace and safety. Penn paid the Indians for their lands and refused to sell them spirits.

**4. Government.**—Every man who wished to vote or hold office was required to believe in God and to rest from labor on the Sabbath day. Penn and his sons were the proprietors; they appointed governors for the province.

**5. Troubles.**—After remaining in America about two years, Penn returned to England. He left the colony in a happy and prosperous condition; it numbered seven thousand. During his absence, troubles arose. The people refused to pay the rents which were the means by which Penn hoped to be paid for the land which

he had bought from the Indians, and for the expenses which he had borne for the settlers.

**6. Slavery.**—William Penn was himself a slaveholder, and the company of traders under his charter brought African slaves into the Quaker colony. He did all in his power for their improvement and for their happiness.

**7. Penn's Character.**—William Penn did more than any other man of his day to benefit his fellow-men. In following the precepts of the "Golden Rule," he unselfishly risked his own safety, to plead the cause of persecuted Quakers, and then generously provided them homes on his estate, which he had inherited from his father and received from the king. His faithfulness to duty and his firm adherence to the right made him great; and the good that he did made his name and his memory dear to thousands. He died in England after his return from Pennsylvania (in 1718).

**8. Growth.**—Many of the early settlers of this province were industrious farmers, and the rich soil rewarded their labors with plenty and comfort. The commerce of the colony was also profitable. The city of Philadelphia, at the time of its founder's death, had a population numbering ten thousand.<sup>c</sup>

---

## CHAPTER XI.

### DELAWARE.—1638.

**1. New Sweden.**<sup>a</sup>—Peter Minuit, who had been the first governor in New Netherlands, was employed by 1638. the Swedish government, and he brought over to

<sup>c</sup> Newspapers were printed in Philadelphia at an early day, though thirty years later than in Boston. Benjamin Franklin, who went there six years after the death of William Penn, as a printer, became the editor of one of them.

<sup>a</sup> Gustavus Adolphus.—While other nations of Europe were sending

America a number of Swedes and Finns. They bought land on the Delaware Bay, from the Indians, and named it New Sweden. Their fort was called Christina in honor of the young queen of Sweden. Other colonists came afterward and settled near the mouth of the Schuylkill.

**2. The Dutch** claimed this part of the country. They built a fort five miles from Fort Christina. The  
1655. Swedes destroyed the new fort, and drove the Dutch away. After this, the governor of New Netherlands went to New Sweden with six hundred armed men and compelled the Swedes to surrender and to acknowledge New Sweden as a part of New Netherlands.

**3. The English.**—When the Duke of York asserted his claim to the Dutch possessions, this region was in-  
1674. cluded in his territory. When William Penn obtained his grant, it was included in that, and was called the “lower counties of the Delaware.” During Penn’s absence in England, these counties separated from Pennsylvania. He gave them a governor of their own and a separate Legislature.

## CHAPTER XII.

MARYLAND.—1634.

**1. Lord Baltimore.**—Maryland was at one time a part  
1632. of Virginia, and was embraced in the charter given to the London Company, but Sir George Calvert,

colonies to America, Gustavus Adolphus, the king of Sweden, anxious to extend the Protestant religion and to “benefit the persecuted,” resolved to plant a colony of Protestants in the New World. Before he accomplished this design, the German war engaged his attention, and he was killed in one of its battles. His little daughter, Christina, who was then only six years old, succeeded him as queen of Sweden. One of her father’s friends, Oxenstiern, determined to fulfill the king’s wishes in regard to the colony.

Lord Baltimore, obtained from Charles I. a grant of land on the northern side of the Potomac river, as far as the fortieth parallel of latitude. He called this part of the country Maryland, in honor of Queen Henrietta Maria, the king's wife, who, like himself, professed the Roman Catholic religion.

**2. The Charter** given by the king made Lord Baltimore the proprietor or owner of Maryland, and he was  
1632. to control it through the governors he sent out, without any hindrance from the king. As a sign of his submission to the English government, he was to send two Indian arrows every year, and to pay one-fifth of all the gold and silver found within his boundaries. The laws were to be made by a Legislature chosen by the people, and they were to pay no taxes to the English. All Christians were to be perfectly free in matters of religion.

**3. St. Mary's.**—It was Lord Baltimore's desire to make Maryland a refuge for all persecuted Christians, but  
1634. he died before he saw his plans carried out. His son, Cecil Calvert, became the second Lord Baltimore and the proprietor of Maryland. His brother, Leonard Calvert, brought over two hundred settlers, who were nearly all Catholics. They landed near the mouth of the Potomac river, in 1634, the year before Roger Williams was banished from Massachusetts. They bought an Indian village for a settlement, which they named St. Mary's. Clothes, knives, axes, hoes, etc., were given as presents to the Indians, and treaties of friendship were made with them. The Indian women taught the settlers' wives to make corn-bread. They raised a crop of corn the first year, and were saved much of the suffering from want which some of the other colonies experienced.

**4. William Clayborne**, who lived in Virginia, had been employed by a company in England to buy furs from the



Indians, and he wanted to exclude every one but  
1635. himself and his company from the profits of that trade. Lord Baltimore's charter took away from him the right to trade in Maryland, and he tried to revenge himself by raising a rebellion. He attacked one of the settlements, but he was driven back into Virginia and his men were made prisoners. The governor of Virginia sent him to England. There he endeavored to establish his claims, but failed. The charter had given the control of Maryland to Lord Baltimore.

**5. Prosperity.**—The colony soon became prosperous, and other settlements were made. The lands were good, and the cultivation of tobacco became general and profitable, as it had in Virginia. The people lived on their plantations along the rivers and throughout the forests, and there were but few large towns.

Negro slaves helped to raise tobacco for the planters, commerce employed ships in the harbors, and Baltimore grew in importance.

**6. Disturbance.**—The Indians were treated with kindness, and they were peaceable until Clayborne returned.  
1642. He aroused their enmity and made trouble. This lasted but a short time. The next year Clayborne gathered together his followers, and made an attack upon the colony. He succeeded in driving the governor of Maryland into Virginia, and did much damage by destroying the public records. Three years of trouble and disorder followed, until Calvert returned with troops to subdue the rebellion. Pardon was promised to all, and peace was restored.

**7. Civil War.**—During the early years of the colony,  
1652. freedom was allowed to all Christians, but at length, the Protestants in the Legislature passed a law forbidding Catholics the rights of citizens. A civil war followed, which continued six years.

**8. A Royal Province.**—King William made Maryland a royal province, and established the Church of England; the people were taxed for its support. 1691. Twenty years later, the fifth Lord Baltimore gave up the Catholic religion; the province was given to him as its proprietor, and there were no further changes in the government until the War of Independence.\*

**9. A Mail Line** between Philadelphia and the Potomac was established and letters could be sent eight 1695. times in the year.

**10. Free Schools** were established by law throughout the province.

**11. Mason and Dixon's Line.**—There were some disputes about the boundary between Pennsylvania 1673. and Maryland, and as William Penn and Lord Baltimore could not agree about it, the question was taken to England. Two surveyors, Charles Mason and Jeremiah Dixon, were employed. Their survey decided the matter by fixing the present boundary. For many years it has been known as Mason and Dixon's line, being the dividing line between what were once the slave States and the free States.

---

## CHAPTER XIII.

NORTH CAROLINA.—1640.

**1. Albemarle.**—Some of the inhabitants of Virginia, who were unwilling to belong to the Church of England, moved away from that province. They 1640. cleared land and built houses near Albemarle Sound. Gov-

\*The capital was changed to Annapolis while Maryland was a royal province.

ernor Berkeley, of Virginia, claimed them as citizens of his colony, and appointed a governor for them. This colony was called Albemarle, for the Duke of Albemarle, in England.

**2. Carolina.**—A grant for all the territory between Virginia and Florida was obtained from Charles II.,  
1663. by Lord Clarendon and seven other English noblemen, who were to be its proprietors. It was a long time before there was a division between the northern and southern provinces; the whole region was known by the general name of Carolina.

**3. The Grand Model.**—The proprietors employed John Locke, who was then a famous philosopher in England, to write a plan of government for the new colony. They expected to found a great empire, and they wanted it to contain an order of nobility, like that of the old countries of Europe. His constitution for the government was called the "Grand Model." The people, under its rule, were to enjoy freedom in religion, but the lands were to belong to noblemen, called earls and barons, and the country was to be under the control of a few persons. It was found to be unsuitable for people who lived in log-houses on plantations, often miles apart, and who dressed in homespun and deer-skin. The proprietors and earls and barons lived in England, and the "Grand Model" was never fully carried out.

**4. Clarendon.**—Two years after the grant was given,  
1665. a colony made its settlement on the Cape Fear river, and gave it the name of Clarendon, in honor of Lord Clarendon, one of the proprietors.

**5. Dissatisfaction.**—The people in Albemarle were dissatisfied, because the proprietors claimed all the  
1669 land and control over the inhabitants, and because they could not own their plantations as the people of Virginia did. They soon began to rebel against their rulers

openly ; but when they were assured that the changes which they wished about the land should be made, quiet was restored. They were then also allowed a Legislature to be chosen by the people, and a governor and council to be appointed by the proprietors.

**6. North Carolina.**—The two colonies, Albemarle and Clarendon, each of which had been ruled by its own governor, were, after a number of years, united into one province and called North Carolina. The government was in the hands of bad men a long time. Riots among the people and quarrels among their leaders kept the country in a state of discord many years.

**7. Occupations.**—New settlements were made and churches were built ; yet nearly all the country was still a wilderness. Instead of travelling over roads, the people found their way from one plantation to another by paths through the forest, where the trees had been blazed or notched with an ax to show the right direction. Some of them raised tobacco, others made tar and turpentine from the trees of the pine forests, and many of the men spent their time in hunting and trapping beavers and other animals for their furs, which they sold to the traders.

**8. Indians.**—The Tuscarora and Coree Indians became very jealous of the advancement of the white settlements, and they determined to drive the pale faces from the country. Twelve hundred of them joined in a plot of destruction. On the night appointed for the attack, they went in small parties to the houses throughout the colony, where they were treated as friends. Pretending to be displeased with the supper that had been set for them, they began to murder men, women, and children. The militia came together as soon as possible and stopped the massacre.

**9. Improvement.**—Up to this time, the number of the

1712. inhabitants had increased slowly, but as the fertility of the inland portions of the country began to be known, settlers moved in rapidly. At the beginning of the war of the Revolution, they numbered one hundred and eighty-one thousand.

**10. A Royal Province.**—The proprietors sold their right to the king and North Carolina became a  
1729. royal province. Its governors were appointed by the king until the War of 1776.

---

## CHAPTER XIV.

### SOUTH CAROLINA.—1670.

**1. The First Settlement.**—It was fifty years after the Pilgrims landed at Plymouth, that William Sayle  
1670. brought out a company of emigrants from England and made a settlement on the southern bank of the Ashley river. This was the first permanent white settlement made in what is now known as South Carolina, and was the beginning of Old Charleston.

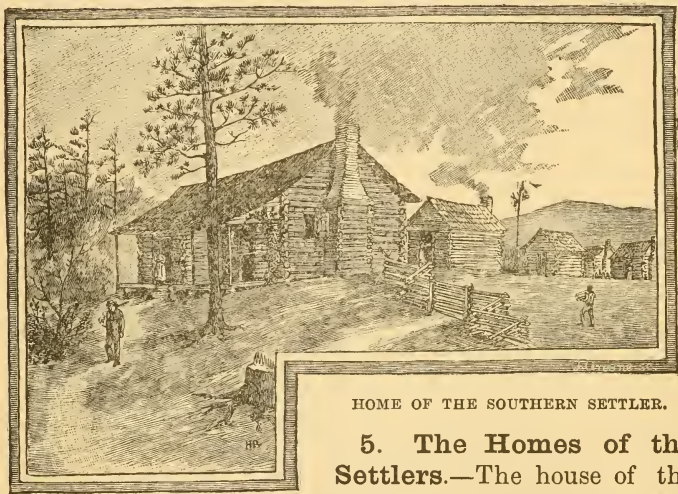
**2. Charleston.**—The situation of the first settlement was inconvenient for the approach of large vessels,  
1680. and they removed to the harbor of Charleston. This was done ten years after the colony first landed, and the new settlement became the city of Charleston. The town grew rapidly in size and in commercial importance.

**3. Government.**—Although this settlement was made under the same charter with Albemarle and Clarendon, yet, as they were so far apart, it was thought best to have a separate government.<sup>a</sup>

<sup>a</sup> After New Netherlands had passed into the hands of the English, a number of Dutch families left that province and settled in the southern part of Carolina. This increased the number of inhabitants, and also brought a good class of people into the new colony.



**4. Negroes.**—Soon after this settlement was made, a company of Englishmen came from Barbadoes and brought with them about two hundred negro slaves. These were the first negroes in this part of Carolina.



HOME OF THE SOUTHERN SETTLER.

**5. The Homes of the Settlers.**—The house of the settler in the southern colonies

was generally built of logs, cut from the forest of pines around it. The sides of the logs were hewn so as to make a flat side for the wall, and the spaces between them were filled with angular pieces of wood called chinks, in order to make the wall a tight one. The house consisted, generally, of two large rooms, with a wide, open hall running between them. Glass windows were not even thought of then. A rude piazza often extended across the entire front, and the vines of the yellow jessamine or honeysuckle trailed over it. One end of this piazza always contained a shelf, on which stood a wooden bucket filled with spring water, and above was hung a gourd for the use of the family and

their guests. A few steps back of this house was the kitchen, where the meals were prepared by a negro cook and sent to the family; and not far off, the smoke-house, without which no country home was complete. It held the year's supply of meat. The cabins for the "darkies" were placed in groups at a convenient distance from the "big-house," a name they gave the master's dwelling.

**6. Cavaliers and Dissenters.**—The people of South

1682. Carolina became divided by two political parties. One party consisted of men called *cavaliers*, who belonged to the Church of England, and who had received large grants of land from the proprietors. The other party was made up of *dissenters*—persons who had left the English Church, and who wished the people to adopt a democratic form of government. The cavaliers thought all the laws sent from England ought to be strictly obeyed; the dissenters contended that only those laws that were for the good of the country in its condition, at that time, should be binding. No governor was able to please both classes, and for that reason each one was removed from his office in a short time.

**7. Quit Rents.**—The proprietors charged the settlers a

1686. small amount on the lands they had taken, which they called quit rents. Although it was a small sum on each acre, they felt unwilling to pay it, because so much of the land was not cultivated, and therefore brought them no profit. The officers whom the governor appointed to collect the rent did not succeed in getting it, and he declared the country to be under martial law, that is, under the laws which govern an army. The Legislature met, ordered the governor to leave the country, and declared him unworthy of holding an office in the colony.<sup>b</sup>

<sup>b</sup>The Spaniards attacked Port Royal in 1686, and almost destroyed it. The governor of South Carolina wished to take revenge upon the Span-

**8. French Settlers.**—A large company of Protestants, called Huguenots, who had been persecuted in 1696. France because of their religion, had come to Carolina. The mild climate reminded them of the summers at home. They began to raise the mulberry and the silk worm, and they were soon at work in their new homes as they had been in those they had left behind. They were industrious and peaceable, and many of them were educated gentlemen, but the English hated them because they were French. The Huguenots became anxious about the titles to their lands, and the feeling between the two grew to be so strong that one of the proprietors came over from England to settle their differences. He relieved them all of the quit rent, and had roads made through the country. He did much to soften the hatred toward the French settlers. They remained in Carolina, and the influence of their refinement and culture was felt for a long time by the people of that colony, among whom they lived.

**9. Rice.**—The captain of a ship from Madagascar gave the governor of South Carolina some of the rice seed that he had brought with him. He described the plant, and said the rice was excellent as an article of food. The governor divided the seed among his friends; they were so

iards by attacking St. Augustine, but the proprietors would not consent to it.

**Seth Sothel.**—In the midst of these troubles, Seth Sothel, who had been driven from North Carolina, arrived. He made them believe that he was one of the proprietors, and took upon himself the control of the government. Here he continued the same tyrannical course which he had followed in North Carolina. Traders from Bermuda and other places were seized as pirates; plantations were taken from their owners, and the planters were often obliged to pay large sums to be allowed to keep their own lands. His conduct became so unbearable that the Legislature determined to banish him and rid the people of his injustice. When the proprietors heard of his conduct, they recalled him to England for trial.

much pleased with it that they began to raise it in quantities. In time it became one of the chief products of the State. Indigo was also raised in quantities.

**10. The Yemasees War.**—While England was at war with France and Spain, the Spaniards in Florida did much to annoy the people of Carolina. The traders in South Carolina had paid the Indians in advance for their furs, and were urging them to bring in the number for which they had been paid. At the same time, the Spaniards excited them to jealousy against the white settlers. The Yemasees, the most warlike tribe of the Southern Indians, sent a messenger with a bloody stick to all the tribes from Florida to Cape Fear, inviting them to join in a war which should drive the pale faces from their shores.

The governor called out all the men who could bear arms to follow him in a war against the savages. The Yemasees fought desperately, but were compelled to retreat. They left death and ruin behind them in Carolina. After they were driven out, forts were built along the border to protect the colony. The Indians had learned that it was impossible for them to destroy the white settlements, and they never attempted that again, though they annoyed the plantations nearest them by their raiding parties.

**11. A Royal Province.**—The unwise management of the proprietors, under which there had been so much bad feeling among the people, was brought to an end by the king. He bought Carolina, separated the settlements into North and South Carolina, and made them royal provinces. In return for the protection of the king, they were required to give England all the benefit of their trade.

**12. Education.**—The rice planters in South Carolina soon made fortunes by selling their crops of rice, and were able to send their sons to the best schools in England. In

this way many of the young men became educated gentlemen. The people of this colony loved old England, and always spoke of it as home.

---

## CHAPTER XV.

### GEORGIA.—1732.

**1. The Thirteenth Colony.**—Georgia has been called the youngest of the thirteen colonies, because it was the last one to be settled before the Revolution. At that time, by the laws of England, men were imprisoned for debt and hung for theft. James Oglethorpe was a member of Parliament, and had been an officer in the British army. When he visited the English prisons, he saw hundreds of men within those dark walls, separated from their families because of the debts they owed. He thought of a plan by which he might find new homes for them in America, where they could begin a better life, free from the disgrace of debt and the pain of poverty.

**2. The Charter.**—For this purpose, he obtained a charter from King George II. for the country lying between the Savannah and the Altamaha rivers and extending to the Pacific ocean. It was named Georgia, in honor of the king, and placed under the control of trustees for twenty-one years. Parliament contributed ten thousand pounds toward establishing settlements. The seal of the trustees had on one side silk worms at work, and the words, "*Non sibi, sed aliis*," meaning *not for themselves, but for others*.

**3. The First Settlers.**—In November, 1732, one hundred and twenty-five years after the settlement of Jamestown, Virginia, Oglethorpe sailed with one hundred and twenty emigrants. The governor of

Nov.  
1732.



South Carolina received them with much kindness at Charleston. They landed at Beaufort. Oglethorpe sailed up the Savannah river to select a place for his settlement. On a high bluff, where the city of Savannah has since been built, he chose a place for the homes of the new colony, and pitched his tent in the shadow of four tall pine trees. A short time afterward, the immigrants reached this place. The streets of the future city were laid out with great care, and so as to leave spaces for public squares at regular distances from one another. At first, the houses were all built on one plan, and all of rough boards.

**4. The Indians.**—Tomochichi (tom-o-cheé-chee), a chief of the Muscogee Indians, wishing to make terms of  
1732. friendship with the new colony, brought to Oglethorpe a buffalo skin, on the inside of which were painted the head and feathers of an eagle. "The feathers of the eagle are soft," said he, "and signify love; the buffalo skin is warm, and is the emblem of protection. Therefore, love and protect our little families." Other Indian chieftains made a visit to their English neighbors and signed a treaty to give up the country as far south as the St. John's. Oglethorpe's kind treatment of the Indians secured their friendship, and opened the way for the missionaries, who came afterward, to teach them of the true God.

**5. The Salzbergers** were inhabitants of a valley among the Alps. Leopold, Duke of Austria, persecuted those  
1734. who were Lutherans or Protestants. He tortured them without mercy, and drove them from their country, often separating husbands and wives, and often tearing children from their parents. The trustees of Georgia, in England, collected money with which they offered fifty of these suffering families a free passage to Georgia, a year's supply of provisions and a home free of rent for ten years. In a few months after Oglethorpe and his party landed, these new settlers came with their Bibles and hymn-books and catechisms. Their

leader was allowed to select a place for their settlement. The people wanted a country that abounded with hills and pure springs of water. On their journey to the interior, Oglethorpe accompanied them. After travelling along the bank of the Savannah about thirty miles, they were so much pleased that they did not care to go farther. As an evidence of their gratitude to God, they sang a psalm and set up a stone; they named the place Ebenezer, which means "Hitherto hath the Lord helped us."<sup>a</sup>

**6. Negro Slaves.**—The trustees would not allow rum or African slaves to be brought to Georgia. They thought the white men would not care to work if they had slaves; they also feared the Spaniards in Florida would incite the slaves to insurrection, or entice them away from their masters.

**7. Rents.**—The colonists in Georgia were required to pay an annual rent of twenty shillings for every hundred acres of land, and if any part of this sum were unpaid, in six months after it became due, the land was to belong to the trustees again.<sup>b</sup>

One of the conditions of owning land was, that one thousand mulberry trees were to be planted upon every one hundred acres, because it was thought that the produce of raw silk would be very profitable.

**8. The Wesleys.**—Three years after Oglethorpe's arrival, a new company of immigrants came to Georgia. They were mostly Salzbergers and Moravians.

1735.

<sup>a</sup>This part of the country has since been called Effingham county, in honor of Lord Effingham, who believed the colonies were right in asserting their independence. He resigned his position in the army to avoid using his sword against them.

<sup>b</sup>Indians.—The trustees kept the Indians on terms of friendship by making them presents of guns, ammunition, and other articles which they liked. This was done once a year. The guns, which were useful to them in killing deer, were given in small numbers.

John and Charles Wesley, who came to preach the gospel to the Indians, were with them. The deep piety of these people and the patience with which they endured their trials, so impressed John Wesley that it was the cause of his conversion. He afterward said, that though he had started out to teach the Christian religion to savages, he had not yet been converted to God.

**9. Silk and Indigo.**—The Salzbergers became very successful in producing raw silk. In one year, the silk that they sold amounted to ten thousand pounds. Indigo, which had been raised extensively in South Carolina, also became one of the staples of Georgia.<sup>c</sup>

**10. Rev. George Whitefield** came to preach in Georgia. While on a visit to Ebenezer, he noticed the 1738. good that was being accomplished by the orphan school which the Salzbergers had begun. He resolved to establish one at Savannah, and persuaded gentlemen in England to help him by giving money. Two years after his arrival, the orphan house was begun. It was built near Savannah and called Bethesda. It still remains a monument to George Whitefield.

**11. Spanish Claims.**—The Spaniards claimed that the new province was a part of Florida, and Oglethorpe 1737. heard that they intended to invade Georgia and drive out the English settlers. He then returned to England and brought back with him six hundred soldiers to defend his colony. During his absence, he was made commander-in-chief of all the militia of Georgia and South Carolina, with the title of general. A war of two years' duration followed, after which Georgia was once more freed from invaders, and the people returned thanks to God for their deliverance.

<sup>c</sup>**Augusta.**—The city of Augusta, on the Savannah river, was begun about this time, 1737. Being near to the Cherokee country, it was at first inhabited only by traders, but it soon became a place of considerable importance.

**12. A Royal Province.**—After Oglethorpe returned to England, rum began to be sold, and the Georgians hired slaves from South Carolina. In a short time, slaves were brought from Africa to Savannah. In 1775, the trustees returned to the king their rights to Georgia, and it became a royal province.

Oglethorpe never revisited the colony for which he had spent ten years of labor. He died in England, in 1785, at the age of 96.

#### DATE OF SETTLEMENT.

1 Virginia.....	1607 by English Protestants.
2 New York.....	1614 by the Dutch.
3 Massachusetts.....	1620 by English Protestants.
4 New Jersey.....	1622 by the Danes—afterward by English Quakers.
5 New Hampshire.....	1623 by English Protestants.
6 Maryland.....	1634 by English Catholics.
7 Connecticut.....	1635 by English Protestants.
8 Rhode Island.....	1636 by English Protestants.
9 Delaware.....	1638 by the Swedes—afterward by English Quakers.
10 North Carolina.....	1665 by English Protestants.
11 South Carolina.....	1670 by English Protestants.
12 Pennsylvania.....	1681 by English Quakers.
13 Georgia.....	1732 by English Protestants.

#### REVIEW OF IMPORTANT EVENTS—1607-1650.

##### *English Kings.*

##### JAMES I.

1617.	A settlement made at Jamestown, Virginia.
1609.	Henry Hudson discovered the Hudson river.
1610.	Trading posts were established in New Netherlands.
1610.	A settlement made on Manhattan Island.
1620.	The Pilgrim Fathers landed at Plymouth Rock.

##### CHARLES I.

1623.	A settlement made in New Hampshire.
1628.	A settlement made at Salem, Massachusetts.
1634.	A settlement made in Maryland.
1635.	Settlements begun in Connecticut.
1636.	Settlers arrived at Providence, Rhode Island.
1638.	A settlement made in Delaware by the Swedes.
1640-50.	People from Virginia made a settlement on Albemarle Sound in North Carolina.
1643.	Clayborne raised a rebellion in Maryland.

IMPORTANT EVENTS FROM 1650-1700.

CHARLES II.

- |       |   |
|-------|---|
| 1664. | New Netherlands became New York.  |
| 1665. | The Clarendon settlement made on the Cape Fear river in North Carolina. |
| 1665. | New Jersey settled.   |
| 1670. | Albemarle and Clarendon united.   |
| 1670. | A settlement made in South Carolina.                                    |
| 1675. | King Philip's war begun.  |
| 1680. | A settlement made at Charleston, South Carolina.                        |
| 1681. | Pennsylvania settled.   |

JAMES II.

- |       |  |
|-------|--|
| 1686. | Sir Edmund Andros came to New England, and the charters were annulled. |
| 1695. | A mail line established between Philadelphia and Virginia.             |

IMPORTANT EVENTS 1700-1763.

- |       |                                       |
|-------|---------------------------------------|
| 1732. | The first settlement made in Georgia. |
| 1735. | The Wesleys came to Georgia.          |
| 1763. | The survey of Mason and Dixon's Line. |

TOPICS FOR REVIEW.

- 1 Give an account of the settlement of Virginia.
- 2 Write a sketch of the life and character of Captain John Smith.
- 3 Tell what you know of the trouble which the Indians caused the early settlers.
- 4 Give an account of Bacon's rebellion.
- 5 Tell the events connected with the settlement of Massachusetts, and give some of the causes of trouble there.
- 6 Relate some of the most important facts connected with the founding of settlements in Rhode Island.
- 7 Give a short history of the colonies of Connecticut, of New Hampshire, Vermont and Maine.
- 8 Name the Indian wars in New England and give an account of them.
- 9 Who were the Quakers and how were they treated?
- 10 Where did witchcraft prevail, and how was it punished?
- 11 Give the early history of New York.
- 12 Tell what you know of the settlement of New Jersey.
- 13 What causes led to the settlement of Pennsylvania?
- 14 Give its history.
- 15 Who settled Delaware and under what circumstances?
- 16 Give an account of the settlement of Maryland.
- 17 Give the history of the colonies in Carolina.
- 18 Tell what circumstances attended the settlement of Georgia and describe its progress.
- 19 Name the Indian wars in the Southern colonies.



## SECTION III.

### CHAPTER I.

#### FRENCH SETTLEMENT AND DISCOVERIES.—1607.

**1. France and England.**—As the commerce of the world reached out to the ports of America, jealousies arose among the nations about the profits each one acquired in trade or possessions in the New World. France grew to be an important naval power, and became England's rival in trade as well as in manufacture. Former wars between the two countries had already caused ill-will between the people, and in addition to this, they were separated by religious questions; France held to the Roman Catholic faith, while England had become Protestant.

**2. The Cross and the Lilies.**—Soon after the early settlements were made in New France, along 1607–1620. the St. Lawrence, while Captian Smith and his men were building their cabin homes at Jamestown, the French priests began to travel from tribe to tribe among the northern and western Indians, and they won many converts to the Catholic religion. They gained the good will of the Indians by giving them presents. In the wilderness around Lake Superior and Lake Michigan, in New York as far as Albany, and along the Kennebec in Maine, they set up the cross in the name of their religion, and placed upon it a wooden shield engraved in lilies—the national emblem of France. In this way, they claimed the country for their king.

**3. The Mississippi.**—The Indians told the French missionaries of a great river, to the west of them, 1673. “full of monsters which devour both men and ca-

noes," and flowing through low, hot lands filled with disease and death. Marquette (mar-két), one of their most daring priests, determined to find and explore this stream, and to claim the country along the banks for France.

**4. The Journey.**—In 1673, Marquette set out with Joliet (zhoh-e-a'y) and five other companions, accompanied by two Indian guides. They sailed from Lake Erie to Lake Michigan, and then from Lake Michigan up the Fox river. They carried their canoes from the head-water of the Fox river to the head of the Wisconsin. There the guides left them and returned. Marquette and his party sailed on down the Wisconsin, through the silent, uninhabited forests and plains. Seven days afterward, they were on the bosom of the mighty Mississippi. They floated on beyond the mouth of the Arkansas, and having learned that the Mississippi did not empty into the Atlantic, nor into the Gulf of California, they returned to Lake Michigan.

**5. La Salle.**—A young French fur-trader, La Salle (la-sa'l), explored Lake Ontario and obtained from the French king the exclusive right to trade in buffalo skins and furs, and to extend the discoveries of the Mississippi. He built a fort on Lake Erie, at the mouth of the Maumee. The next year, he went to the Illinois and built a fort on that river.

**6. Louisiana.**—After long delays and many difficulties, in 1682, La Salle and his men sailed down the Mississippi to its mouth. He named the region through which he passed Louisiana, and added it to the possessions of France. This news reached Paris the same year.<sup>a</sup>

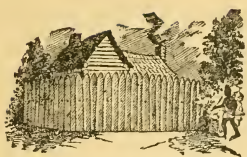
<sup>a</sup> **Texas.**—Two years after La Salle sailed down the Mississippi, a colony led by him was on its way from France to the new country. The ships went too far westward, and the emigrants landed on the coast of Texas.

**7. English Claims.**—The English felt that the French were intruding upon British territory. The  
1689. claims of some of their charters extended from the Atlantic to the Pacific, and they were not willing to be confined to a narrow strip of country bordering upon the Atlantic. The French were anxious to hold all of America that they had explored, and much more ; besides, they wanted to reserve for themselves all the profits of the Indian trade in fur. This state of things led to several wars between the English and the French, aided by Indians. The last, which was known as the French and Indian war, was the most important, because it decided which of the two nations—England or France—should rule in America.

**8. Indians at Work for the French.**—The villages along the border suffered most from attacks during these wars. Often, while the inhabitants were at work in their fields, they were surprised by the report of guns near them, and, in another moment, the whooping savages, led on by French commanders, were murdering them with tomahawks. Often at night, these villagers were awakened by the enemy's frightful war-whoop, and the glare of burning houses. All who could escape fled with the scanty clothing they could gather in the haste and confusion of their flight. Fortified houses and forts were afterward built for their protection. <sup>b</sup>

The vessel, which contained the provisions and the outfit for the colony, was wrecked near the harbor, and for this reason some of the families returned with the other ship to France. La Salle determined to find the Mississippi and go to Canada for assistance, but on the way, he was murdered by one of his companions. Because of the coming of these Frenchmen, Texas was claimed as a part of Louisiana, though all who remained perished, and this attempt at planting a colony was a failure.

<sup>b</sup> **Haverhill.**—In the town of Haverhill, Mass., a party of Indians surrounded the house of Thomas Dustin. He was away in his field at work



A FORTIFIED HOUSE.

**9. French Forts.**—During the years that followed, the French were busy building, along the Mississippi and along the great lakes of the north-west, until they had a series of forts and trading posts from the St. Lawrence to the Gulf of Mexico. Fort

Niagara, which had been erected at the mouth of the Niagara river, by the French missionaries, was repaired and strengthened, in order to gain the respect of the Iroquois Indians, and to shut out the English from the fur trade. Another fort was built at Crown Point, on Lake Champlain, that its guns might prevent the English from invading Canada by that route; and Fort Vincennes, on the Wabash river, was intended to protect their traders on the way from Canada to the Mississippi.

## CHAPTER II.

### THE FRENCH AND INDIAN WAR—1754–1763.

**1. The Causes.**—This war was waged to settle the question whether England or France should rule the continent of America. It began in 1754 and ended in 1763.

and returned too late to save his home. As he came, his children ran to meet him. Placing himself between the children and the Indians, he hurried the little ones before him and defended them with his gun until they reached a place of safety. The savages left his home in ashes, and killed his baby by dashing its head against a tree. They led his wife along their march as a captive.

Mrs. Dustin, another white woman, and a boy were kept in a wigwam, in which two Indian families lived on an island in the Merrimac river. One night, while the families were asleep, the two women and the boy armed themselves with tomahawks and killed ten of the sleeping Indians. In a few days, they surprised their friends by their return to Haverhill.

**2. The Ohio Company.**—A company of Virginians and Englishmen received from the king of England 1749. a grant for land lying on the Ohio river, and also the right to trade with the Indians. They explored a part of the country west of the mountains and built a trading post on the Monongahela, at Redstone. The French sent traders to undersell the Virginians and troops to build forts near them.

**3. Washington.**—These French troops made prisoners Oct. 31, of some of the Englishmen, and Governor Dinwiddie, of Virginia, sent Major George Washington with a letter to the French commander, telling him that the land claimed by the Ohio company belonged to Virginia, and asking him to take away his troops, as they had no right there during a time of peace. Washington was then twenty-one years of age.

**4. The Journey.**—The French fort, Venango, was some distance north of the Ohio, on the Alleghany river. Washington and his companions reached it in December. Their journey through the wilderness had been full of danger. It led them over mountains covered with snow and through swollen streams. They often waded through water which froze into ice upon their clothes as they went. St. Pierre, the French commandant, gave Washington a written answer to the governor's letter.

On the way homeward, Washington and his party were waylaid and shot at by Indians, but they escaped unhurt. Before they could cross the Alleghany river, they spent a day making a raft, and with but one hatchet for the work. In the midst of the river, the raft was caught by the floating ice, and while trying to manage it with a pole, Washington was thrown into the river. He saved himself by holding to one of the raft logs. The cold, dark night was spent upon an island. In the morning, a solid sheet



of ice covered the water and they crossed with less trouble. They reached home in one month after leaving Fort Venango.

**5. The Answer.**—St. Pierre's letter informed the governor that he had come by the order of his general, and that he had been sent to take possession of the country in the name of France.

**6. Fort Du Quesne.**—Governor Dinwiddie sent out a party of men to build a fort at the junction of the Alleghany and Monongahela rivers. In the spring, a regiment of militia was sent under Colonel Fry, with Washington as second in command. While this force was on the way, the men who were building the fort were driven away by the French, who took possession of the place and finished the building. They named it Fort Du Quesne (dŭ-kān'e), in honor of the governor-general of Canada.

French troops were sent from the fort to meet the Virginians, but friendly Indians warned Washington of their coming, and he marched with a body of men through the heavy rain of a dark night to surprise them. Nearly all of the Frenchmen were killed or captured.

**7. Fort Necessity.**—At a place called Great Meadows, within fifty miles of Fort Du Quesne, in what is now Fayette county, Pennsylvania, Washington built a fort. The wagons which were to bring provisions for the Virginia soldiers were delayed, and they suffered so long from the scarcity of food, that the fort was given the name of Fort Necessity. About this time, the colonel of the regiment died, and Washington, being the next in rank, succeeded him. While he was at this place, he was attacked by a large French force; after fighting bravely ten hours, he was compelled to sur-

render, but he and his command were allowed to return to Virginia.

**8. War.**—All of the colonies promised to help in fighting against the French. A treaty was made which secured for the English the friendship of the Iroquois and the Ohio Indians. The north-western tribes were allies of the French. England and France also prepared for the war which they knew must come. Early in 1755, General Braddock was sent over as commander-in-chief with two regiments of British soldiers. After consulting with the governors of the colonies, he determined to march against Fort Du Quesne, to send a force to gain possession of Fort Niagara, and to forward another force to take the fort at Crown Point, on the western shore of Lake Champlain.\*

**9. Braddock's Advance.**—General Braddock moved forward with twelve hundred men toward Fort Du Quesne. In spite of the warnings of Washington, who was one of his aids, General Braddock marched his army through the country, in military order, with gay uniform and shining arms. They were within seven miles of the fort, when a quick fire from the front announced that they had been attacked by an ambuscade of the enemy. The British soldiers had never been in such a battle. While their brave comrades were falling around them, no

\* **Acadia**, which we now know as Nova Scotia, though then belonging to the English, was inhabited by French people. While the troops were being raised to carry out General Braddock's designs, soldiers were sent to take these people out of their country. This was done because they refused to take the oath of allegiance to the English government, and for fear they would aid the French in the coming war. Seven thousand of them were taken from their homes and scattered throughout the colonies. Their houses were burned, and they were only allowed to carry their money and such articles as would not be inconvenient on the vessels. Many were left without food, and many families were divided and scattered.

foe could be seen, and they could only fire wildly at the rocks and trees which hid the savages and from which the death-shots were falling. General Braddock showed great bravery, but was soon mortally wounded. Washington moved among the men and tried in vain to rally them. Two horses were killed under him, and several shots passed through his clothes. In three hours the British army was retreating in disorder. Seven hundred had been killed. Washington, with the Virginia troops, covered the retreat and saved some of the men. The retreating forces returned to Philadelphia.

**10. Niagara.**—General Shirley marched toward Fort Niagara, as far as Oswego, and stopped there to build a fort. The sickness of his men and the desertion of the Indians who had joined him, together with the news of General Braddock's defeat, influenced him to give up his enterprise and return.

**11. Crown Point Expedition.**—

1755. General Johnson, with six thousand men, started toward Crown

Point, on Lake Champlain. He stopped on the banks of the Hudson, about forty-five miles above Albany, and built Fort Edward.

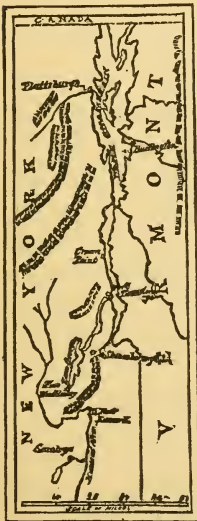
**12. Battle of Lake George.**—A few

Aug. miles further north, he fought a  
1755. battle with four thousand of the  
enemy, who had come from Crown

Point. He succeeded in driving them back, though the loss was heavy on both sides.

After the battle, a company of British soldiers found Baron Dieskau (dyeas-ko), the French commander, wounded and

<sup>a</sup> See map of American revolution.



LAKE CHAMPLAIN.<sup>a</sup>

leaning against a tree. He put his hand into his pocket for his watch, thinking he would have to give it to his captors. One of the British, supposing he was taking a pistol from his belt, shot him and he died soon afterward.

**13. Johnson's Return.**—At the place where this battle was fought, General Johnson built another fort, and called it Fort William Henry. Hearing that the French had strengthened their fortifications at Crown Point, and that they had also taken possession of Ticonderoga, he concluded to leave a garrison at the new fort and return to Albany. The remainder of his army was disbanded, and the men sent to their homes to spend the approaching winter.

---

### CHAPTER III.—1756-1758.

**1. Plans.**—Preparations for taking possession of the forts at Crown Point, at Niagara, and at Du Quesne, 1756. were resumed in 1756. Lord Loudon was sent from England to take command of the English forces, and General Montcalm came from France to succeed General Dieskau. War was declared between England and France, though it had already been going on between the colonies of the two countries in America.

**2. Ontario and Oswego.**—In August, the French general, Montcalm, came across Lake Ontario, and 1756. made an attack on Fort Ontario, on the Oswego river. The garrison fought until all of their ammunition was exhausted. Then they spiked their cannon and retreated to Fort Oswego, on the opposite side of the river. Montcalm followed them, and fourteen hundred men surrendered to him. He also captured a large amount of stores, after which he went back to Canada. These reverses pre-

vented the English from carrying out their plans for the year.

### 1757.

**3. Fort William Henry.**—The next year, ten thousand

1757. French troops, under Montcalm, came from Crown Point and besieged Fort William Henry. There were less than five hundred men at the fort. They fought bravely until half the guns were disabled and nearly all of the ammunition was exhausted. No help came from Fort Edward, fifteen miles distant, and at last the commander had to surrender.

**4. Terms of the Surrender.**—According to the terms of the surrender, the English, having promised not to "bear arms against France for eighteen months," were to be allowed to leave with the honors of war; but as the soldiers marched off, the Indians began to rob and kill many of them, while the others fled. Montcalm did all in his power to stop this brutal work of the Indians.

### 1758.

**5. Greater Preparations.**—The English felt deeply troubled at their failures during the last two years, but they determined to carry on the war with new vigor, in 1758. General Abercrombie was appointed in place of Lord Loudon, who had been recalled, and larger armies were raised in America and in England. Three expeditions were undertaken—one against Louisburg, one against the forts on Lake Champlain, and one against Fort Du Quesne.

**6. Louisburg.**—In June, thirty-seven armed vessels, bringing twelve thousand men, under General Amhurst, reached Louisburg from England. With the assistance of General Wolfe, the men were led over the fallen trees of which the breastworks were made, and against the firing of

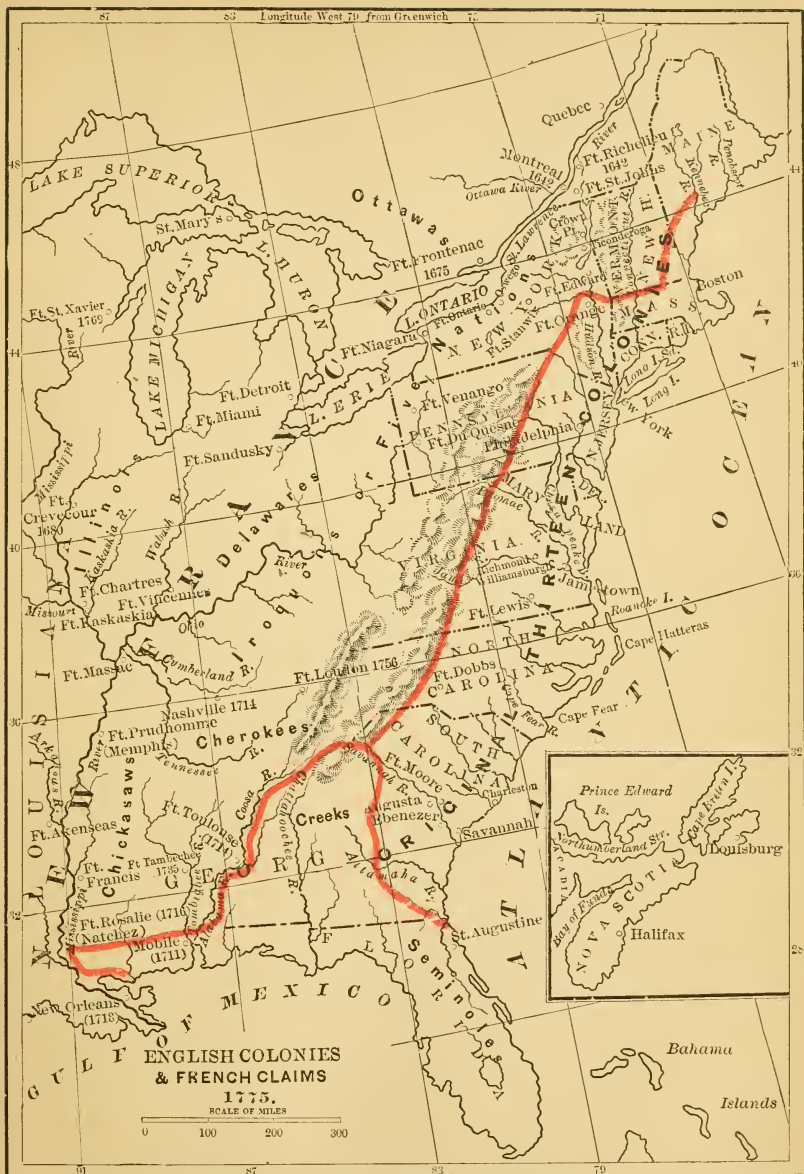


the French from the defences of the town. The siege lasted until the last of July, when Louisburg and Prince Edward's Island surrendered to the English. Both were important victories over the French.

**7. Ticonderoga.**—The English were not so successful elsewhere. Early in July, General Abercrombie crossed Lake George and landed near Fort Ticonderoga. He took with him fifteen thousand men, but he did not wait for his cannon to arrive. Montcalm sent out a force to meet the English as they marched toward the fort. Lord Howe was killed in the battle that day. He had been loved and trusted by the soldiers, and his death caused much sorrow and some disorder among them. Two days afterward, the English advanced a second time to take the fort, but they were compelled to retreat to Fort William Henry. They left about two thousand of their dead and wounded where they had fought.

**8. Fort Frontenac.**—Colonel Bradstreet was sent to take the French fort, Frontenac, on Lake Ontario. In two days after his arrival, the garrison surrendered. He captured a quantity of stores and ammunition, besides nine armed vessels. This gave the English the control of Lake Ontario, and opened the way to Niagara.

**9. Fort Du Quesne.**—After many delays, General Forbes, who led the expedition against Fort Du Quesne, reached the Ohio valley in November. His army consisted of nine thousand men. The French force there at that time was so small that orders were given to leave the fort when he arrived, and the French troops moved down the Ohio river. The name of the fort was then changed to Fort Pitt, in honor of Mr. Pitt, the head of the ministry in England. The place is still known as Pittsburg. Soon after the capture of this fort, the western Indians made peace.



Engraved for Field's History of United States.



## CHAPTER IV.—1759-1763.

**1. General Amhurst.**—The war was pushed forward the next year with greater determination than before. General Amhurst was placed in command of the English forces. Mr. Pitt thought the capture of Quebec would insure the conquest of Canada. Arrangements were accordingly made to move the main army toward Quebec, while a second division went against Ticonderoga, and a third against Fort Niagara.

**2. Success.**—General Wolfe, who had led in the attack at Louisburg, went up the St. Lawrence to Quebec. His fleet carried eight thousand men; they landed on the Island of Orleans, a few miles below Quebec. In order to repel this threatened attack, Montcalm removed most of the troops from the other forts to strengthen Quebec. General Amhurst attacked Crown Point and Ticonderoga about this time, and had but little trouble in taking both forts with their small garrisons. He intended joining Wolfe in Canada, but, as he was unable to do this, he went into winter quarters at Crown Point. General Prideaux (prid-ó), with the third division of the army, succeeded in taking Fort Niagara. This cut off the communications of the French between Canada and Louisiana.

**3. Quebec** is divided into the upper and lower town. The upper town is built on a rock two hundred feet high, which forms a precipice on the northwestern side of the St. Lawrence, called the Heights of Abraham. The lower town rests on a plain at the water's edge. When Wolfe's army landed on the Island of Orleans, Quebec was defended by a strong fort on the north of the river, and by the French army of thirteen thousand men. Wolfe destroyed the lower town by his batteries at

Point Levi, on the opposite side of the river, but every attempt to reach the strong fortress on the rock had failed.

**4. The Night March.**—Wolfe waited for General Amhurst until September, and then began to put into practice his bold plan of attack. He had discovered beyond the town a narrow path which led from the river bank to the heights, and which he found was guarded by about one hundred men. His plan was kept secret until the night of September 13, when, at midnight, the men were moved in float boats to Wolfe's Cove. They landed in silence and quietly climbed up the rocky pathway. The French guard were soon scattered, and at sunrise the next morning, Wolfe's army was drawn up in line of battle on the Plains of Abraham.



**5. Battle of Quebec.**—A bloody battle followed, in 1759, which the English were victorious. The generals of both armies, Wolfe and Montcalm, were killed. While General Wolfe was dying on the battlefield, he heard a shout: "They run!" Lifting his head, he asked: "Who run?" When he

understood that it was the French, he answered: "Then I die content," and soon breathed his last.

When Montcalm was told that he could live but a short time, he said: "So much the better, for then I shall not live to see the surrender of Quebec." Five days afterward, Quebec surrendered.

England has since erected a monument to mark the place of this battle, and the names of both generals are inscribed upon it.

**6. Montreal.**—The French collected an army at Mon-



1760. treal, and the next year they tried to retake Quebec, but failed. In September, Montreal was compelled to surrender, and all the French posts were given up soon after that.

**7. War with the Cherokees.**—This same year, war began with the Cherokees. The governor of South Carolina called a meeting of the Cherokee chiefs to settle a matter of business between them and his government. There were some misunderstandings about the business, and he had some of them put in prison. When these Indians were released, they declared that they would be revenged; on their return, they induced their nation to wage war with the colonists.

**8. The Cherokee Country Invaded.**—General Amhurst sent Colonel Montgomery with a strong force from New York to assist the people of Carolina. After the militia joined him, he marched into the Cherokee country, where he burned several villages. A battle was fought near the town of Etchoe, in which Colonel Montgomery was victorious.

**9. Fort Loudon.**—Without advancing further, he returned to New York, leaving only four companies to defend the borders of Carolina against the savages. The garrison at Fort Loudon, on the Tennessee river, was obliged to surrender, or starve for the want of supplies. On the way to the settlements, the Indians killed or captured the whole force.

**10. A Second Invasion.**—The next year, General Amhurst sent another regiment to unite with the colonists in invading the Indian country. This time the Indians were routed and driven to the mountains, where they consented to make peace.

**11. Pontiac War.**—In 1763, Pontiac, a brave Indian chief, led his warriors against the English in the northwest. All the forts in that part of the country, except Forts Pitt, Niagara and Detroit, fell into their

hands. Many of the settlers were killed, and many families were driven out from their homes, which they left in ashes behind them. Peace was restored by sending troops among these Indians to recover and hold the forts.

**12. The Treaty of Paris.**—The war between France and England was not ended until 1763. A treaty of peace was then signed in Paris; it was called the Treaty of Paris. By its terms, France gave up to Great Britain all of her possessions in America east of the Mississippi, except the island and city of Orleans. At the same time and by the same treaty, peace was made with Spain, and the Spanish possessions in Florida were ceded to England in return for Havana, which had fallen into the hands of the English the year before. The English, at the close of this war, were masters in America, and France was no longer a rival there.

PRINCIPAL BATTLES OF THE FRENCH AND INDIAN WAR.

COMMANDERS.			
<i>Battles.</i>	<i>English.</i>	<i>French.</i>	<i>Victorious Army.</i>
	1754		
Fort Necessity.....	Washington	Villiers .....	French.
	1755		
Near Fort Du Quesne	Braddock ....		French.
Lake George.....	Johnson .....	Dieskau ... ..	English.
	1756		
Oswego.....		Montcalm....	French.
	1757		
Fort William Henry	Monroe. ....	Montcalm....	French.
	1758		
Louisburg.....	Amhurst. ....		English.
Ticonderoga.....	Abercrombie	Montcalm....	French.
Fort Frontenac.....	Bradstreet.. .		English.
	1759		
Crown Point.....	Amhurst.....		English.
Fort Niagara.....	Prideaux... ..		English.
Quebec .....	Wolfe.....	Montcalm....	English.

## REVIEW OF IMPORTANT EVENTS.

- 1673 Marquette and Joliet reached the Mississippi.  
 1682 La Salle explored the Mississippi to its mouth.  
 1754 The French and Indian war was begun.  
 1755 Braddock was defeated. The battle of Lake George was fought.  
 1756 Lord Loudon took command of the English army and the Marquis Montcalm, of the French.  
 " Forts Ontario and Oswego were taken by the French.  
 1757 Fort William Henry surrendered to the French.  
 1758 General Abercrombie succeeded Lord Loudon.  
 " Louisburg was captured by the English.  
 " A battle was fought at Ticonderoga.  
 " Lord Howe was killed.  
 " Fort Frontenac was taken by the English.  
 " Fort Du Quesne surrendered to the English.  
 1759 Crown Point, Ticonderoga, and Fort Niagara were taken by the English.  
 " The battle of Quebec was fought.  
 1760 All the other French posts surrendered.  
 " A war began with the Cherokees in Carolina.  
 1763 The Pontiac War began.  
 " The Treaty of Paris closed the war between France and England.

## QUESTIONS FOR REVIEW.

1. Give an account of the progress of French explorers in America.
2. What causes led to the French and Indian war?
3. Describe Washington's journey to the French fort, Venango.
4. Tell what Washington did as a commander in this war.
5. Give an account of General Braddock's movements.
6. Write the history of the war during 1755, 1756, and 1757.
7. Give an account of the principal events of 1758.
8. Tell all you know of the battle of Quebec.
9. What were the results of this war?

## BOOKS FOR REFERENCE.

Campbell's "History of Virginia;" Cooke's "Virginia" and "Stories of the Old Dominion;" Palfrey's "History of New England;" Neal's "History of the Puritans;" Longfellow's "Courtship of Miles Standish;" Holland's "Bay-Path;" Irving's "King Philip's War Sketch Book;" Dunlap's "School History of New York;" Irving's Knickerbocker "History of New York;" Cooper's "Waterwitch" and "Last of the Mohicans;" Browne's "Maryland;" Ramsey's "History of South Carolina;" Simms' "Yemassee;" "Georgia Historical Collections;" Jones' "History of Georgia;" Stephens' "History of Georgia;" Avery's "History of Georgia;" Wright's "Memoir of James Oglethorpe."

## SECTION IV.

### THE AMERICAN REVOLUTION.

#### CHAPTER I.

##### THE CAUSES WHICH LED TO THE WAR.

**1. Taxation.**--The expenses of the French war had brought upon England a debt of nearly three millions of dollars, and Parliament decided that, as the war had been carried on partly for the protection of the colonies, they should be taxed to pay a portion of the debt.

**2. Navigation Acts.**--Parliament had already passed laws called "Navigation Acts," which required the colonists to sell all their tobacco, wool, cotton, indigo, etc., to England, where the merchants paid their own prices and made all the profits. The colonies were also compelled to buy everything they needed from England, at the price put upon the goods there, and everything bought or sold had to be carried in English ships. In addition to this, other laws were passed prohibiting the colonies from manufacturing the simplest articles for sale or for their own use. Not even a "nail for a horse-shoe" could be made; all such articles were bought from England.

The only part of these laws which favored the settlers was, that they were to supply Great Britain with tobacco, and that no planter was allowed to raise it in England or in Ireland.

**3. No Taxation.**--America had submitted to these laws more than one hundred years; though a petition for relief had been sent to England, nothing had been gained by

it. They knew that a large share of their earnings was constantly taken from them and given to the merchants of England. As the colonies had no representative in Parliament, who could speak for them in deciding the amount of their taxes, they believed it was unjust to be thus taxed without their consent. They said they had already paid a large share of the expenses during the French war, and they were not able to pay any more. "*Taxation without representation*" was opposed by all the colonies. The main causes of the war which followed were their resistance of the taxes and the determination of Great Britain to enforce them.

**4. The Stamp Act.**—In 1765, an act was passed by Parliament, called the "Stamp Act," by which all 1765. "contracts, notes, bonds, deeds, writs and public documents" were ordered to be written on stamped paper, and they were to be of no value unless thus written. This paper was to be sold at high prices, and the English government expected to gain a large sum by the sale of it, as nearly every kind of business would have to stop unless it were brought into use.

**5. Liberty.**—Providence intended the Americans should be a free people, and the way for their freedom was being opened. They had fled from persecution in England and other countries of Europe; they had met all the dangers from wild beasts and savages in the wilderness, and they had suffered the pains of hunger, cold, and disease that they might be free from oppression. The habits of these men had given them a spirit of independence. They lived on their own lands, which produced everything that was necessary for their comfort; and their charters had given them a free government, which allowed them to make nearly all of their own laws. All this made it hard for them to submit to the new tax law.



**6. Virginia.**—The people thought and talked of taxation until all classes became excited and earnest about  
1765. resisting it. Through the efforts of Patrick Henry, a young lawyer of Virginia, the Legislature of that province passed resolutions declaring that the Legislature alone had the right to tax Virginia, and that the “Stamp Act” was unjust.<sup>a</sup>

The passage of these resolutions in Virginia made all the other colonies more than ever opposed to the law. The people of Massachusetts and South Carolina proposed to the other colonies to send delegates to a congress to meet in New York, a short time before the day on which the Stamp Act was to become a law, that they might consult about the best way to resist it.

**6. Congress.**—The first Colonial Congress, composed of  
Oct. 7, twenty-eight delegates from nine colonies, met in  
1765. New York city, October 7, 1765. That Congress made a declaration of the rights of the colonies, and insisted that all taxes imposed upon them without their consent were violations of their rights. These declarations, with a written petition for justice, were sent by Congress to Parliament and to King George III.

**7. British Goods.**—The merchants of the principal cities agreed that they would buy no more British goods until the Stamp Act was repealed.

**8. Repeal of the Stamp Act.**—The merchants in Eng-  
land complained that they were losing heavily  
May, while their trade with America was interrupted,  
1766. and they asked that the commerce between the two

<sup>a</sup> In Patrick Henry's famous speech on that day, he said: “Cesar had his Brutus, Charles I., his Cromwell, and George III.—” “Treason! Treason!” cried the speaker and several others. Henry turned toward the speaker, and, after a moment's silence, continued, “and George III. may profit by their example! If that be treason, make the most of it!”

countries might be re-opened. William Pitt and Edmund Burke, both men of influence in Parliament, were friends of the American cause, and they urged the repeal of the Stamp Act. This, Parliament consented to do, one year after passing the act. The news brought gladness to the people of the colonies. Their old love for the mother country, from which their fathers had emigrated, revived, and the trade between England and America began again.

**9. A New Tax on Glass, etc.**--The next year, the plan for raising money in America was tried in a new shape. Duties were fixed on "glass, paper, tea and painters' colors." The money raised by these taxes they called revenue. Officers were sent over to collect it, and custom-houses were established. Besides this, Parliament directed that the money should be used to pay the salaries of the officers and of the governors and judges. The colonists understood that if their rulers were paid in that way, instead of receiving their salaries from the Legislatures every year, they would soon care very little for the rights of the people.

**10. Opposition.**--Ministers preached against this new form of taxation, and the newspapers were full of reasons why it should be resisted. From New Hampshire to Georgia there were as many excited and dissatisfied men as there had been before the repeal of the Stamp Act.

**11. Troops in Boston.**--King George III. sent two regiments of soldiers to Boston to help the governor to enforce the laws. When this was known, a town meeting was called, and a day was appointed for fasting and prayer, that the people might seek the protection of God. Boston refused to furnish quarters for the British troops, and the governor ordered them to take possession of the state house. The citizens hated the soldiers, who, as they passed through their streets, dressed in the red British uniform,

taunted them as rebels. There was nothing for these troops to do; they could not compel the people to buy the English goods which they had agreed to do without.

**12.—The Boston Massacre.**—A soldier and some of his companions, after having a quarrel with a rope-maker in Boston, attacked him and some of his workmen. A mob of citizens armed themselves with clubs and hurried to the spot. Meeting a sentinel, they were about to kill him, when he called for the rest of the guard. They came with their guns loaded. Men and boys rushed up, shouting to them, and the guard fired. Three citizens were killed and several others wounded. The death of these men and the sight of the blood that had been tracked about on the snow through the streets aroused deeper and more bitter feeling throughout the city. The people would not be satisfied until the governor promised to take the troops away from the town. The next morning, the regiment to which these soldiers belonged was removed to the fort outside the city.

**13. The Revenues.**—In one year, the amount raised by a tax on teas, wines, and other articles was only eighty-five or ninety pounds, and the cost of the ships and troops sent to aid the officers in collecting it was about one hundred thousand pounds.

**14. The Tax on Tea.**—By this time, Parliament began to see that the plan for raising money by taxation in the colonies would fail. The London merchants, who had lost heavily by the damage done to trade, had sent a petition to Parliament for help. A bill was passed to remove all the taxes, except that of three cents per pound on tea, which was retained to show the colonies that England had the right to tax them. The colonies objected that the principle of taxing them without their consent had not been given up; that "to tax ten pounds involved the power to tax a thousand," and they determined to buy no more tea.

**15. The Boston Tea Party.**—There had been no orders for tea, but cargoes of it were sent to America. The people of Boston wanted the tea-ships sent back, but the governor would not allow that. Dec. 16, 1773. One cold, moonlight night, in December, a party of men, dressed as Indians and wrapped in blankets, went on board the ships and threw into the water three hundred and forty chests of tea.

Other cities followed the example of Boston. At New York and Philadelphia, the tea-ships were not allowed to enter, and were obliged to return to England without unloading. In Charleston, South Carolina, the tea was stored in damp cellars, where it moulded before it was brought out for sale.

**16. The Boston Port Bill.**—In order to punish the people of Boston, Parliament passed an act which 1774. required that the port of that town should be closed against all commerce, until the owners were paid for the tea that had been wasted, and until the citizens showed a spirit of submission to English law. The custom-house was removed to Salem. No vessels could come in except to bring wood or provisions. Even these were compelled to go first to the custom-house at Marblehead, and take with them a custom-house officer to Boston. Commerce had been the principal industry of the place, and when that was forbidden, many of the men were left without employment.

**19. Sympathy for Boston.**—There would have been much suffering among the poor, but for the sympathy of other towns and colonies. The towns of New England sent flour, cattle, oil, and fish. South Carolina and Georgia sent several hundred barrels of rice, and the other colonies gave corn, provisions and money. Marblehead offered the free use of its wharf and warehouses. The people of Boston could have opened their port by paying for

the tea that had been destroyed, but they felt that they were right, and they were determined not to submit.

**20. Continental Congress.**—The first Continental

1774. Congress, composed of delegates from twelve colonies,<sup>b</sup> met in Philadelphia, September 5, 1774.

This Congress declared that, before the colonies could feel secure, all the acts of Parliament that interfered with their rights must be repealed. Resolutions were passed to import no more goods from Great Britain. Addresses were sent to the people of Great Britain for aid in securing their liberty and to the inhabitants of the colonies for determination in holding it. At the same time, a petition for relief was also sent to the king.

**21. Preparations for War.**—General Gage, who was the commander-in-chief of the British forces, was also appointed military governor of Massachusetts. He began to fortify Boston Neck, and took possession of the stores at Cambridge and Charlestown. The Legislature, which had been dismissed by the governor, met at Cambridge, and called itself a Provincial Congress. This Congress appointed a "Committee of Safety," and determined to arm twelve thousand men. A part of the militia was formed into companies called "minute men," who promised to be ready to defend their country at a moment's warning. The other colonies also prepared to defend themselves against the oppression of Great Britain.

<sup>b</sup> Georgia was the only one of the thirteen colonies that did not send delegates to the first Continental Congress. The province was in a prosperous condition, and was of importance to England because it bordered upon the Spanish possessions. It was filled with ship timber which made it valuable, and its many miles of seacoast, with harbors and bays and large rivers into which ships could enter, made it difficult to defend in time of war. The settlements in Georgia had received the aid of nearly a million of dollars from England. Their governor, instead of wronging the people, had endeared himself to them, and he constantly used his influence



## CHAPTER II.

## EVENTS OF 1775.

**1. British Movements.**—New troops came from England to General Gage, until his army numbered three thousand. He sent out spies to find where the American stores were kept, that his soldiers might go and destroy them, but some of the patriots of Boston promised to let the people know whenever the British were preparing to march out, by hanging a lantern in the spire of the North Church. Men were stationed just across the Charles river, in Charlestown, to watch for it, and late in the night of April 18, 1775, they saw the signal light shine from the old church steeple. Messengers were sent immediately to warn the people, and a short time afterward, eight hundred British soldiers, under the command of Colonel Smith and Major Pitcairn, marched out from Boston, in silence, along the road to Concord, sixteen miles away. By that time, the church bells of the villages began to ring.

**2. The Battle of Lexington.**—By five o'clock in the morning, the British had reached Lexington, but April 19, the minute men, commanded by Captain John 1775. Parker, were ready to meet them. Major Pitcairn rode forward and called out to the Americans, "*Disperse! ye rebels! Lay down your arms and disperse!*" The minute men stood firmly in line, and Pitcairn gave the order to fire. Eight of the men of Lexington were killed and nine were wounded. Finding that they were largely

to make them believe that any disobedience of the laws of Parliament was ungrateful, and unworthy of them. The governor had dismissed the Legislature about the time that the other colonies were sending delegates to Congress, and there was no power left them for the appointment of representatives.

outnumbered by the British, they dispersed. Pitcairn's men gave three cheers for their triumph, and then marched on toward Concord.

**3. Concord.**—The news of the approach of armed troops brought terror to the hearts of the people; and the women and children fled from the town, while the men were busy hiding the military stores which they knew the British would seize. The militia men gathered on the hill in front of the meeting-house, but when they saw that they had to meet four times their number, they retreated beyond Concord river and waited for help. The English soldiers destroyed quantities of flour and sunk five hundred pounds of ball in the river. The greater part of the stores had been hidden or removed. While they were plundering the town, the militia men from the surrounding country gathered to Concord, and in the fight which followed, several men were killed.

**4. The Retreat.**—It was near noon when the British began a retreat toward Boston. The Americans hurried over the hills and hid themselves behind barns and trees and stonewalls to fire at the British as they passed. From every rock and from every thicket along the roadside, the retreating forces were attacked and driven on by the New England men, until they began to run in disorder. The officers could not stop their flight. Colonel Smith was severely wounded, and Major Pitcairn lost his horse and his pistols. The whole force would have been completely routed, but for the reinforcements with which Lord Percy met them at Lexington. From that place, they continued the retreat, the minute men pursuing and firing until they reached the protection of the English vessels, about sunset. In this battle, the British loss was about two hundred and seventy-five in "killed, wounded and missing." That of the Americans was nearly one hundred.

**5. Effects of the Battle.**—Great numbers of the militia of New England hurried to Boston, and soon after the battle, they nearly surrounded the town on the land side. A strong spirit of resistance was aroused in every colony. At this time, the people first began to talk of a separate government of their own.<sup>c</sup> They had hoped for a settlement of their difficulties through the justice of the king and the people of Great Britain, but now the cry of "Liberty or Death" was heard everywhere. The British had laughed at the farmers and planters of America, and called them cowards, yet, in the first battle, they had saved themselves by flight.

**6. Georgia.**—After the skirmish at Lexington, Georgia hesitated no longer about joining the other colonies in their union for defence. There were then in the province "seventeen thousand whites and fifteen thousand negroes." The militia numbered three thousand. The northern and western boundary, extending from Augusta to St. Mary's, was exposed to ten thousand savage warriors, but the danger did not keep her men from the right.

**7. Ticondegoga and Crown Point** were strong points, which the Americans wished to hold. In May, Ethan Allen and Benedict Arnold, with a band of brave men from Vermont and Massachusetts, took pos-

<sup>c</sup>**The Mecklenburg Declaration.**—When the news came that both houses of Parliament had sent an address to the king, declaring the colonies to be in a state of rebellion, the people of Mecklenburg county, in North Carolina, determined to assert their independence of British law. The news of the bloodshed at Lexington strengthened their determination. Two delegates from each militia company in the county were selected to represent them as a committee in Charlotte. This committee acknowledged themselves to be under the control of the Provincial Congress of North Carolina, and subject to the direction of the great Continental Congress. After the resolutions of the committee were signed, the people adopted them. In this way, the inhabitants of Mecklenburg were the first to separate from the British Empire.

session of both forts, with valuable military stores and more than a hundred pieces of artillery.

**8. The Second Continental Congress.**—On the same day on which Fort Ticonderoga was captured, the May 10, 1775, second Continental Congress assembled in Philadelphia. Its members determined to raise an army of twenty thousand men; by a unanimous vote, they elected George Washington, of Virginia, the commander-in-chief of the American army. He was then a member of Congress, and was greatly surprised at the choice; but he modestly accepted the appointment, refusing to receive for his services anything more than his actual expenses required. He then resigned his seat in Congress and began preparations for his work in the army.

**9. The British Army Increased.**—Reinforcements in large numbers were sent to Boston under the command of three generals—Howe, Clinton, and Burgoyne. These additions gave General Gage twelve thousand men.

**10. Breed's Hill Fortified.**—There were two ranges of hills near Boston, that could be made useful to either June 16, 1775, army—Bunker Hill and Breed's Hill, on the northwest, and Dorchester Heights on the south. The New England troops had built a line of fortifications from Roxbury to the Mystic river. General Prescott went, on the night of June 16, 1775, with a thousand men, to fortify Bunker Hill. The earthworks were erected on Breed's Hill instead of Bunker Hill. The work did not begin until midnight; but every man did his part faithfully, and at daylight the British were surprised to see the Americans entrenched upon the hill opposite Boston.

**11. The Battle of Bunker Hill.**—The guns from the ships and from a battery in Boston began firing upon the earthworks at once. General Howe, with three thousand men, crossed in boats to Charlestown to begin the attack.

The shells thrown from the battery set fire to Charlestown. While the houses were burning, Howe advanced along the hillside toward Prescott's men, who, after a night of labor, without food or water, stood behind their entrenchments awaiting his approach. Their supply of powder was very small, and the orders of their officers were, "Aim low." "Wait until you can see the whites of their eyes."

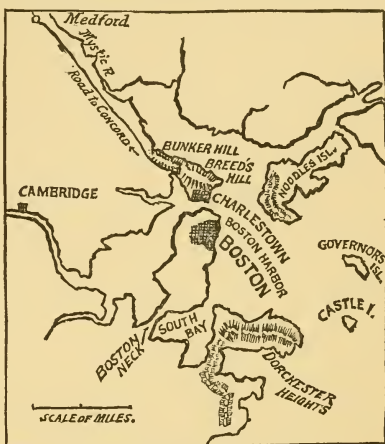
A volley from Prescott's muskets covered the ground with British red-coats—dead and wound-

ed. Those who were unhurt turned back, and a shout rose from the breastworks. A second charge was made, which ended as the first had done. General Clinton brought forth fresh troops, and the third attack was successful. As the New England men had used nearly all of their powder, they were compelled to retreat. The British were victorious, though their loss was more than a thousand men. The Americans lost about four hundred.<sup>c</sup>

## 12. The Army near Boston.—<sup>d</sup>Washington established

<sup>c</sup>This battle was fought on Breed's Hill, yet it is known as the battle of Bunker Hill, and the Bunker Hill monument stands where Prescott fought.

<sup>d</sup>George Washington was born in Westmoreland county, Virginia, near the Potomac, February 22, 1732. His mother was left a widow when he was quite young. He had few advantages of education, and was truly a "self-made man." When a boy of sixteen, he began surveying land for Lord Fairfax. His labors left him little time for reading, but



MAP OF BOSTON AND VICINITY.



his headquarters at Cambridge. He found fourteen thousand men gathered there from different parts of the country, but with no powder or cannon, no tents or blankets, and Congress had not furnished him with money to obtain these needed supplies. Very few of the regiments had uniforms. Many were in their shirtsleeves, as they had come in haste from home. Some of the companies from Virginia wore embroidered upon the breasts of their hunting-shirts the words "*Liberty or Death.*" Washington's first work was to organize the army—that is, to put each soldier in his proper place, and then to teach him the duties of a soldier. He had to meet many difficulties, yet, in a short time, he was able to compel the British to remain inside the town of Boston.

**13. Royal Government.**—By the autumn of 1775, there were no royal officers with any power left them in any of the colonies. All the royal governors had been compelled to leave the country.<sup>e</sup>

the few books he had were read and re-read with the closest attention; and whatever he attempted, he tried to do well. He sought the friendship of the best men that he knew, and in that way was kept from the evil of bad associates. One of the principal features in his character was his trust in God and his providential care over all things. He was strictly temperate, and this, with the hardy life of a surveyor in the wilderness, where he often slept, wrapped in a blanket, on the ground, before a camp-fire, did much to give him a strong constitution and to fit him for his duties as a leader in the army. At the age of forty-three, he took command of the American forces. His success as an officer in the French war had given him the confidence of the new army, but they had served with him only a short time when their hearts turned to him in tenderest love.

<sup>e</sup>Dunmore, the royal governor of Virginia, seized a quantity of military stores, collected at Williamsburg, but Patrick Henry, with a company of militia, compelled him to pay for what he had taken. After he had caused some trouble with the negroes, he was driven from the colony. He took refuge on a British man-of-war, and, in revenge, he bombarded and burned the town of Norfolk.

**14. The Invasion of Canada.**—Some of the leading men of the country thought that a large amount of stores could be secured at Quebec, and that the people of Canada would take part with the colonies in the revolution, if encouraged to do so. Congress decided to invade that province. General Schuyler (ski'-ler) advanced with his forces by Lake Champlain, and Colonel Benedict Arnold marched through Maine, by the Kennebec.

**15. Schuyler and Montgomery.**—Schuyler had gone only a part of the distance, when he became seriously sick, and was compelled to return home. General Montgomery took command of the troops he left, and marched onward to St. Johns. After some delay, he took possession of the place. He then proceeded to Montreal. Its surrender followed without difficulty. The time, for which some of his men had enlisted, ended during his stay there, and he moved on to Quebec with those who remained.

**16. Arnold.**—Arnold's army endured many hardships along the way. Their supply of provisions became so small that "they even ate the dogs that followed them," yet they journeyed on, and crossed the St. Lawrence river at Point Levy. His force was not strong enough to attack the city; therefore he journeyed on to Point aux Trembles beyond Quebec, where he joined Montgomery.

**17. Quebec.**—Together, they moved against Quebec. On Dec. the last day of December, the attack was made in 1775. the midst of a storm of snow and sleet. The Americans were repulsed; General Montgomery was killed and Arnold wounded. Arnold remained near Quebec until spring, when he was driven back by a larger British force. Nothing was gained by the invasion.

**18. The King's Proclamation.**—In November, Congress learned that the king had refused to hear anything from the colonies, and that he had published a proclamation,

calling them "rebels and traitors, whom civil and military officers were ordered to bring to justice." At the same time, the king made arrangements for increasing his army, by hiring Hessians from Germany, and these were to be sent out to conquer the rebels.<sup>f</sup>

---

## CHAPTER III.

### EVENTS OF 1776.

**1. Important Events.**—This year has long been remembered, because of the Declaration of Independence, made by Congress. The siege of Boston and the attack on Charleston, South Carolina, which occurred during this year, together with the movements of the two armies, in New York and New Jersey, made it a year of deep interest in the history of our country.

**2. Washington's Plans.**—Large additions to the British forces were expected in the spring. Though the American army numbered less than ten thousand men, and though its supply of artillery and powder was very small, General Washington decided to entrench a part of his troops on Dorchester Heights, which overlooked Boston and the harbor. His plans were laid carefully, and the work was done secretly and silently, during the night of March 4th.

**3. The Evacuation of Boston.**—By the dawn of the morning, strong lines of breast-works had been built along the tops of the two hills, and when General Howe, who was then in command at Boston, saw the work, he said it must

<sup>f</sup>**Tories and Whigs.**—Though the greater number of the people were earnest in their desire for freedom, there were, all through the war, some men who professed to love the king, and who thought the colonies ought to submit to Parliament. These men were known as Royalists, or Loyalists, and more commonly as Tories. The others were called Rebels, or Whigs.

have been the labor of twelve thousand men. He knew that he must either drive back the Americans or leave Boston. He called a council of war, and determined to retreat from the city at once. Fifteen hundred loyalists went with him to Halifax.

General Washington removed his headquarters to Boston after Howe's departure. The people all over the country rejoiced at this deliverance. The patriots who had been compelled to remain in the city had not been able to obtain provisions without paying the highest prices, and for fuel, they had torn down empty houses, and even burnt the pews of churches. Congress sent its thanks to the army, and had a gold medal made in honor of the victory.

**4. Results of the Victory.**—The British left a number of cannon in Boston, and large quantities of coal, wheat, clothing, and blankets. British ships came into the harbor afterward; the captains had not heard of General Howe's retreat, and their cargoes became the property of the Americans. One of these ships carried seven times as much powder as General Washington had when he began to fortify the heights.

**5. Charleston.**—On the first of June, 1776, Sir Peter Parker's fleet, carrying twenty-five hundred British soldiers under the command of General Clinton, was seen near Charleston, South Carolina. Orders were immediately sent into the country for the militia forces to come to the defences of the city. Reinforcements from the adjoining colonies, and the militia of South Carolina, were placed under the leadership of General Charles Lee, who had been appointed to command all the forces of the Southern colonies. The fortifications were strengthened; negroes from the country and citizens of the town worked with spade and hoe until all was done that could be done. On Sullivan's Island, a fort was built of palmetto logs and

filled in with sand. It was mounted with cannon, and its garrison was commanded by Colonel Moultrie. The supply of lead was so small that, in order to furnish bullets, the windows of churches and dwellings were stripped of their weights.

**6. The Attack.**—The ships began the attack about ten o'clock in the morning, with a terrific cannon-  
June 28, 1776, ade; but the balls either sunk in the sand or in the spongy palmetto logs, which did not split or break. There were ten times as many guns firing from the ships as Colonel Moultrie had at the fort, and he had to use his powder sparingly. The battle continued until after nine o'clock at night. The next morning, the fleet was out of sight, on its way back to New York.

**7. Fort Moultrie.**—In honor of the brave defenders of the fort, it received the name of their commander, and is still known as Fort Moultrie.

**8. Sergeant Jasper.**—Soon after the battle began, Sergeant William Jasper, one of the garrison at Fort Moultrie, saw that the flag-staff had been broken by a cannon ball, and that the flag had fallen over the wall. Facing the furious fire from the ships, he leaped down, and, snatching up

**The Cherokee and Creek Indians.**—The English agent, who had given a yearly present of clothing and guns from his government to the Indians, made the savages believe that the non-importation laws of the colonies would keep them from receiving presents from the king, and that the war would be turned against the red men as soon as possible. The Indians were persuaded to attack the white people about the same time that the British forces came to Sullivan's Island, and after the departure of the fleet, a part of the militia was sent out to punish the Cherokees. A force from Virginia and one from North Carolina also crossed the mountains to check the advance of the savages. The Georgia militia approached from the south, and when the Indians found that they were surrounded on all sides, they asked for peace. A treaty of friendship was made, and, to keep it from being broken, Fort Rutledge was built. Two companies of soldiers were sent to defend it.



the flag, returned unhurt, and fixed it in its place. The next day, he was presented with a sword by President Rutledge, as a compliment for his bravery.

**9. The Declaration of Independence.**—By the spring of 1776, nearly all of the colonies had given July 4, 1776, up the hope of being reconciled with the British government, and had directed their delegates in Congress to vote for a separation from England and for the formation of a government of their own. A resolution was offered by Richard Henry Lee, one of the members from Virginia, "That these united colonies are, and of right ought to be, free and independent States." After adopting the resolution, a committee was selected to write a declaration of independence. This was written by Thomas Jefferson, who was chairman of the committee, and on July 4, 1776, it was read in Congress. Every member voted for it and signed it. This declaration gave to the thirteen colonies the title of the United States of America.<sup>a</sup>

**10. A Free People.**—A few days later, General Washington had the Declaration read to every brigade in the army, and the news spread from one colony to another. Everywhere the people expressed their joy. Houses were illuminated, bon-fires kindled, and bells rung.

**11. The Two Armies.**—After the evacuation of

<sup>a</sup>**Publishing the Declaration.**—The people of Philadelphia were waiting anxiously to know what Congress would do, and an agreement had been made that, as soon as the Declaration was adopted, the bell of the old State House in which Congress was holding its meeting, should be rung. This bell had been hanging in its place about twenty years, and upon it had been cast this inscription: "Proclaim liberty throughout the land to all the inhabitants thereof." The bell-ringer had sent his son to the door of the hall, where the doorkeeper could let him know when the Declaration was to be made public. As soon as the boy heard the news, he ran to his father screaming, "*Ring! Ring! Ring!*" and the old bell "proclaimed liberty to all the land." A crowd gathered around the State House steps and the resolution was read to them.

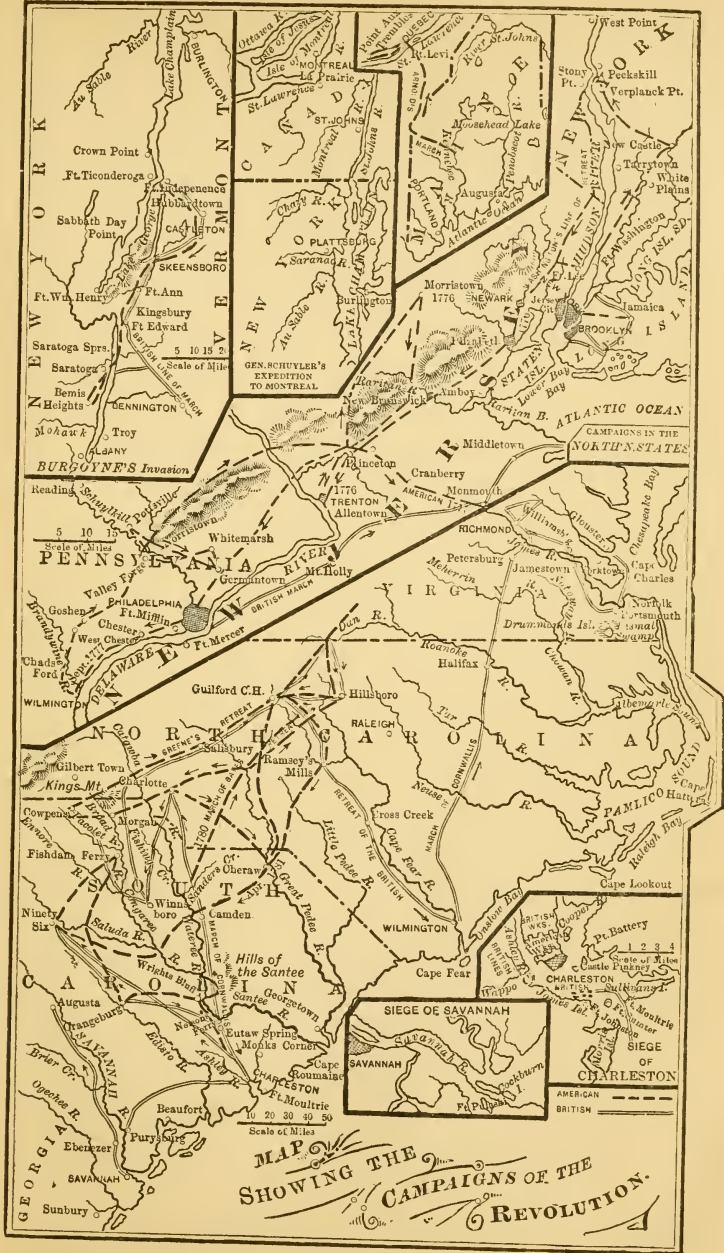
Boston, General Washington sent the main part of his army--about seventeen thousand men--to New York, thinking that might be the next place of attack. Early in July, General Howe took possession of Staten Island with his forces from Halifax. In a short time, a fleet, commanded by his brother, Admiral Howe, brought over reinforcements from Europe, and General Clinton came with his troops from Charleston. This increased General Howe's army to thirty thousand.

**12. The British Plan.**--The British general intended to gain possession of the city of New York, and the country between that and Canada. By that means, New England would be separated from the other colonies.

**13. Battle of Long Island.**--As General Clinton intended to make the attack on Brooklyn first, he Aug. 27, 1776, crossed to Long Island with ten thousand men.

The United States troops at Brooklyn numbered about nine thousand, and were commanded by General Putnam. A battle was fought, and the Americans were defeated with a loss of sixteen hundred men. Eleven hundred of these were prisoners. The British loss was very small.

**14. The Retreat.**--General Howe believed that all the Aug. 29, American troops would fall into his hands before they could escape from the island, but on the night of the second day after the battle, while a heavy fog hid the movements of both armies, General Washington removed his men in boats to New York. He knew that the British ships would prevent his remaining in the city of New York. He therefore continued his retreat to Fort Washington. After Howe began to move further up the river, Washington thought that it would not be safe to leave men and stores at this place; but his officers, in a council of war, agreed that it would be best to hold the fort, and Congress sent an order which induced him to leave



Engraved for Field's History of United States.



three thousand men to defend it. The commander-in-chief marched the rest of his force to White Plains. Howe pursued and attacked him there. The Americans fought bravely, but were compelled to give way; they marched to a stronger position at North Castle. Howe returned toward New York. Washington left four thousand men with General Charles Lee, at North Castle, and, because he believed that Philadelphia would be the next point of attack, he crossed the Hudson and marched southward.

**15. Fort Washington.**—In a few days after the Americans had crossed the Hudson, the British captured Fort Washington. The loss of this fort was a great disappointment to the people of the United States. Many found fault with General Washington for not withdrawing his men and stores from the fort. Others said, a better general would not retreat before every advance of the enemy. They did not understand his difficulties, nor did they know that he did what was the only thing that could save the American army. "He never excused himself before the world by throwing the blame on another," even when the mistakes of others made him appear to be in the wrong.

**16. The Retreat through New Jersey.**—Soon after the surrender at Fort Washington, the garrison was removed from Fort Lee, and General Washington continued his retreat through New Jersey, until he crossed the Delaware river. Earl Cornwallis commanded the British, who pursued. On the way, British troops were left at Newark, New Brunswick, and Princeton, and Cornwallis reached Trenton

**General Charles Lee.**—Repeated orders were sent by General Washington to General Charles Lee, to bring the troops that had been left with him at North Castle, in New York, but he would not obey. At last, he concluded to come, but was captured on the way by British scouts.



just as the last of the Americans were crossing the river, but he could not follow for want of boats, and concluded to wait until the river was frozen over.

**17. The American Army.**—The time, for which many of the Americans had enlisted, ended in November, and nearly half of them then returned home. Others, discouraged and worn with privations, deserted, and the commander-in-chief was left with only three thousand men. A great many of these were without shoes, and had only scant and ragged clothing.

**18. Trenton.**—Cornwallis returned to New York, but he left at Trenton fifteen hundred Hessians—German soldiers from the province of Hesse-Cassel, in Germany—who had been hired by the king of England. General Washington determined to strike a blow at the triumphant British, and supposing that the Germans would spend the holidays in feasting and drinking, Christmas night was chosen as the time for the attack.

**19. Crossing the Delaware.**—A division of the army Dec. 25, marched with him to the river, ready to cross. 1776. Their path through the snow was marked with blood from their bleeding, half-covered feet. The night was intensely cold and very dark. The river was full of floating ice, but wherever their brave commander led, those men did not shrink from following.

**20. The Victory.**—The early morning found them on the Jersey side of the river again, and in a few hours, Trenton was attacked. The Hessians, who had spent the night in carousing, were not prepared for a battle; the surprise was so complete that about fifty of them were killed, their commander, Colonel Rahl, mortally wounded, and about one thousand of them made prisoners. Valuable stores were taken, and General Washington returned to Pennsylvania with his prisoners and his prizes, having lost only four men,

two of whom were frozen to death. Before this victory, many thought the cause of liberty was lost, but after it, the army was encouraged, and new additions were made to it. In a short time, the whole American force re-crossed at Trenton.

**21. Rhode Island.**—About three weeks before this victory, at Trenton, Sir Peter Parker's fleet sailed to Rhode Island, and the whole colony was immediately invaded.

Dec.  
1776.

---

## CHAPTER IV.

1777.

**1. The Two Campaigns of 1777.**—This year was marked by two important campaigns; viz., that of General Washington, in New Jersey, and the invasion of Burgoyne.

**2. Princeton.**—Cornwallis advanced toward Trenton, Jan. 2, January 2, with a large body of men; he felt sure 1777. that he would be able to capture the whole of the United States army. General Washington could not risk a battle with an enemy which so largely outnumbered him, because his retreat was made almost impossible by the Delaware river, which was filled with masses of floating ice. He left a guard to keep his camp-fire burning, while he marched through the country, around to the rear of the British army; he reached Princeton in the morning of the next day. Cornwallis could not believe that the sound of firing, in the direction of Princeton, was from Washington's guns. But he was soon convinced; this sudden attack upon the British, at that place, was successful, and Washington marched on to Morristown, with the prisoners he had taken.

**3. Retreat of Cornwallis.**—Cornwallis retreated to

New Brunswick and Amboy ; this freed nearly all of New Jersey from her much-dreaded enemy.

**4. Assistance from France.**—Congress found so much difficulty in obtaining supplies for the army that an attempt was made to procure aid from foreign countries. Mr. Silas Deane was sent to France, in 1776, and afterward Dr. Benjamin Franklin and Arthur Lee. For a long time, no public sympathy was shown, but, secretly, about one thousand barrels of powder and about twenty thousand stands of arms came from France to America during the year 1777.

**5. LaFayette.**—One of the young French noblemen, the Marquis de LaFayette, felt so deeply interested for the colonies in their struggle for independence, that he prepared a vessel at his own expense and sailed for America.

**6. Howe's Movements Against Philadelphia.**—General Washington's army continued to increase, and in May, it numbered ten thousand. The British were anxious to get possession of Philadelphia, but they thought the safer plan for them would be to go in vessels by water ; and about the last of June, they left New Brunswick and went back to Staten Island. After a month of preparation, eighteen thousand of them sailed to the Chesapeake Bay, and landed in Maryland, intending to march to Philadelphia. They could not go up the Delaware river, because the Americans had built Fort Mifflin on one bank and Fort Mercer on the other, a little further south, to guard the river.

**7. Washington in Philadelphia.**—When General Washington heard where the British had gone, he marched through New Jersey, in order to reach Philadelphia first. The Marquis de LaFayette arrived in that city soon afterward. He joined the army as a volunteer, but asked no pay for his services. Congress soon gave him the appointment of Major-General. He and General Washington became firm friends.

**8. The Battle of Chad's Ford.**—In order to interrupt the march of the British from Maryland, the American army moved from Philadelphia, southward. Sept. 11, 1777. Howe reached Brandywine Creek, at Chad's Ford, where Washington had selected a strong position. The attack was made in the front of the American lines, while Clinton marched quietly around to the rear. In the battle fought at this place, the Americans were defeated with heavy loss. LaFayette and Count Pulaski were wounded.\*

**9. The Fall of Philadelphia.**—Seeing that Philadelphia could no longer be protected, Congress removed to York, beyond the Susquehanna, in Pennsylvania, and, as the military stores at Reading were in danger, the army withdrew to Pottsgrove, on the Schuylkill, about eight miles above the city. The British marched into Philadelphia, September 26.

#### BURGOYNE'S INVASION.

**10. Danger from Another Source.**—During the spring of this year, General Burgoyne brought over seven thousand British regulars, and landed in Canada. By enlisting Indians and Canadians, he there raised the number to ten thousand, and marched his army to Lake Champlain. It had been arranged that General Clinton, who had been left in command at New York city, should move up the Hudson and meet him. In that way, a former plan, which the Americans had tried to prevent, would be carried out—that of separating New England from the other colonies.

**11. Burgoyne's Advance.**—After reaching Crown Point, which was then in the hands of the British, July 2. General Burgoyne advanced to Ticonderoga, and

\* Count Pulaski was a Polish nobleman, who had offered the United States the aid of his sword.

besieged the fort. The American garrison, commanded by General St. Clair, surrendered, and retired to Fort Edward, on the Hudson. General Schuyler, then in command of the northern army, knew that his four thousand men could not withstand Burgoyne's ten thousand, and he retreated to the islands at the mouth of the Mohawk to wait for reinforcements. Many were discouraged at the loss of the forts along this retreat. Some men blamed General Schuyler. Arnold and Morgan, with other officers, were sent to aid him. Trees had been cut down across the road, and bridges burned by the Americans; and Burgoyne did not arrive at Fort Edward until the last of July.<sup>b</sup>

**12. Stillwater.**—In August, Congress appointed General Gates to succeed General Schuyler. After the command of the army was given to General Schuyler, he moved his headquarters from the mouth of the Mohawk to Stillwater. Soon afterward, the British left Fort Edward and marched toward this place. The two armies met at Bemis

<sup>b</sup> **The Battle of Bennington.**—At Fort Edward, all of the supplies for the British army had to be hauled through the woods from Ticonderoga. Having heard of a quantity of stores at Bennington, in Vermont, General Burgoyne sent a company of men, under Colonel Baum, to take them; but Colonel John Stark, with four hundred "Green Mountain Boys" and New Hampshire militia, drove them back. When he saw them, he called to his men, "See! There are the red-coats. We must beat to-day, or Molly Stark's a widow." The fighting continued two hours, after which the British were compelled to give way. A second expedition, which had been sent out on the same errand, arrived in a short time and renewed the attack. Fortunately, a regiment of fresh troops joined Colonel Stark about that time, and he was again victorious. The British loss was more than seven hundred, while that of the Americans was less than one hundred.

**Fort Schuyler.**—Before leaving Canada, Burgoyne had sent out an expedition under Colonel St. Leger to take Fort Schuyler, which is now the village of Rome, in New York, on the Mohawk river. After the capture of the fort, he was to rejoin the army at Albany. The expedition was a failure. Fort Schuyler was not taken and he did not reach Albany.



Heights, and a battle was fought, in which Arnold was one of the foremost in deeds of bravery. This battle gave no victory of importance to either side. The British held the ground upon which they had fought, but were prevented from advancing beyond it. This engagement is known as the first battle of Stillwater; it has also been called the battle of Bemis Heights.

**13. The Battle of Saratoga.**—For nearly three weeks  
Oct. 7. there was no advance and no retreat. General Burgoyne waited for the arrival of General Clinton with troops from New York; but, finding that he could expect no help from that direction, he determined to risk another battle. When the two armies met again, the Americans were successful, and the British were driven back with heavy loss. This battle has been called the second battle of Stillwater, or the battle of Saratoga.

**14. Burgoyne's Surrender.**—When Burgoyne began  
Oct. 17, to retreat toward Fort Edward, the Americans, by  
1777, a hurried march, surrounded his army at Saratoga.  
His provisions were nearly exhausted, and October 17, his whole force, of about six thousand, surrendered. The Americans now no longer feared an invasion from Canada, and new troops began to take the places of General Washington's missing companies.

**15. Germantown.**—In October, Washington heard that  
Oct. 4. General Howe had sent a part of his forces to the forts, on the Delaware, and he made arrangements to attack a portion of the British army, at Germantown, six miles from Philadelphia. General Washington's orders were, that the attack should be made at every point, at five o'clock. At first, the Americans had the advantage; but General Greene, who commanded a division of the army, was three quarters of an hour behind time, in reaching the place that had been assigned him, and those who had made

the first charge were driven back, although they fought with courage and determination. This was one of the most desperate battles of the war, and the United States army lost one thousand men.

**16. Forts Mifflin and Mercer.**—Although the British held Philadelphia, their ships could not reach the city to bring them supplies, because of the two forts—Mercer and Mifflin—which guarded the Delaware river, and they determined to take them. After a long and brave defence, the garrisons at these posts were compelled to surrender.

**17. Valley Forge.**—General Howe found comfortable winter quarters for his army in Philadelphia, while Washington led his soldiers to Valley Forge, twenty-one miles distant. This was a sheltered spot, among the hills, covered with trees. From these trees the soldiers cut wood for their fires, and logs for building their cabins, which took the place of tents. The men were greatly in need of comfortable clothes and blankets. Congress was unable to help them, because it had no money, except paper money, which was of very little value. Many times they were even without bread. The snows were deep on the ground before a large number of them could be provided with shoes, and their bare, torn feet left prints of blood behind them. Horses were so scarce in the camp that, for hauling wood and other articles, the soldiers made carts, which were drawn by their own hands. That winter at Valley Forge was a dreary time, but the brave men, who were suffering pain and want for the sake of liberty, did not shrink from their hard duties; and but few of them deserted their country's cause.

**18. The Conway Cabal.**—The suffering, which Washington was compelled to witness every day, and which he had no power to relieve, was a source of deep grief to him. A plot was formed in Congress, about this time, to take

from him the command of the army, because he had not been so successful in Pennsylvania as Gates had been in New York. This conspiracy was called the "Conway Cabal," in honor of its leader, Thomas Conway. Without attempting to bring reproach upon any who opposed him, General Washington justified himself, by plainly stating to Congress his reasons for all that had been done. Nothing could take from him the love of his army, nor the trust which the greater portion of the people reposed in him, and those who had tried to injure him soon repented of their unjust action.

**19. Articles of Confederation.**—In 1777, Congress  
Nov. agreed upon a set of laws which were to govern the  
1777. United States after the separation from England;  
these laws were called Articles of Confederation.

According to these articles, each colony entered the Union as a free and separate State, claiming one vote in Congress, and the right to manage its own affairs, but the union was for mutual good and protection. The control of all that belonged to the general government was given to Congress, and the powers of Congress were carefully stated in the articles adopted. All the States did not consent to adopt them until 1781.

---

## CHAPTER V.

1778.

**1. The French Alliance.**—After the news of Burgoyne's surrender reached the king of France, he  
Feb. 6, decided to acknowledge the independence of the  
1778. United States, and signed a treaty of alliance, in February, in which he promised to aid them in carrying on the war. England received this as a declaration of war

from France. In a few weeks, French fleets, with soldiers and supplies, were sent to America.

**2. A Peace Commission.**—Great Britain had learned by this time that the colonies would never submit; and the loss of Burgoyne's army, together with the interference of France, induced Parliament to make offers of peace. Lord Howe and Sir Henry Clinton sent to Congress, in June, the offer of freedom from taxation, and the privilege of sending representatives to Parliament, if they would again become obedient subjects of the king. Congress refused to listen to any proposition from England unless the army and fleets were removed from America; and declared that nothing less than independence would satisfy the people.

**3. Evacuation of Philadelphia.**—A fleet, commanded by Count D'Estaing (des-ta'ng), sailed from France for the United States. When Lord Howe received this news, he ordered the British army to leave Philadelphia, and the British vessels to sail away from the Delaware river. Both went to New York. General Washington marched his forces from Valley Forge into the city of Philadelphia.

**4. The Battle of Monmouth.**—The British were pursued, as they retreated through New Jersey, as far as Monmouth (m'on-muth). There they were overtaken by General Washington, but in the engagement at that place, his army gained nothing. The heat of the sun was so great that many sank down from exhaustion, and died by the roadside. The British army reached Sandy Hook and took ships for New York.\*

\*General Charles Lee.—General Charles Lee had been exchanged for a British general, who had been captured by the Americans, and was in command of one of the divisions of this army. It was because he retreated instead of going forward, in obedience to General Washington's

**5. The Wyoming Massacre.**—In July, a party of Indians and Tories, led by Colonel John Butler, entered the beautiful valley of Wyoming, in Pennsylvania. They spread ruin and destruction everywhere, burning houses and murdering the inhabitants. Some of the prisoners, they cruelly tortured before they put them to death. One man was held by pitchforks on burning coals until death ended his pain. Six other persons were placed near the bank of the river, and an Indian woman walked around them singing a death-song, and striking their heads with a club as she passed. She kept up this barbarous cruelty as long as there was a sign of life in them.

In November, Cherry Valley, in New York, was invaded and ruined in the same way.

**6. Count D'Estaing's Fleet.**—The French fleet reached America, in July, with four thousand troops. Washington thought it could render the greatest service by attacking the British ships in the harbors of Rhode Island. He wished to drive them out and get possession of the military stores there. Arrangements were accordingly made for General Sullivan to march with a force by land, so he could reach Newport at the same time that the fleet was expected. A storm arose while they were on the way, and some of D'Estaing's vessels were so much injured that they had to go to Boston for repairs.

**7. The Battle of Quaker Hill, or Batt's Hill.**—  
Aug. 29. The fleet, having failed to arrive, Sullivan was compelled to march back. He was followed by

commands, that this battle was not the victory that the commander-in-chief had planned it to be. Washington reproved him for his conduct, and the next day received two very insolent letters from him. Lee was afterward tried by a court-martial, that is a board of military officers, which suspended him from any command in the army for a year. He never served as a soldier again. He died before the war ended.



the enemy to the northern part of the island, but the British were obliged to retreat after a battle, in which each army lost more than two hundred men. The Americans fortified Batt's Hill. Quaker Hill was very near the battle-field; hence the engagement has been known by both names.

**8. Army Movements.**—The British marched to Sandy Hook after the battle of Monmouth, and from that place sailed to New York. General Washington returned to Middlebrook, in New Jersey, and went into winter quarters there.

**9. Georgia Invaded.**—England saw that very little had been gained during two years of war in the North, and as the year drew to a close, the Northern States were relieved, and the South became the scene of battle. The plan was that General Prevost (pre-v'o) should invade Georgia from Florida, and that Clinton should send a part of his fleet from New York, with two thousand men, commanded by Colonel Campbell, to attack Savannah.<sup>b</sup>

<sup>b</sup>The people of Florida had always been unfriendly to Georgia and South Carolina, and before these movements were begun, two bands of armed men were sent from East Florida to make raids into Georgia. One came in boats, and the other marched by land. The first reached Sunbury, near the coast of Georgia, and demanded the surrender of the fort. Colonel McIntosh replied: "Come and take it," but, instead of taking it, they landed on one of the islands near that place.

The others marched toward Savannah, and were met by General Scriven with about one hundred militia, who checked their advance by several engagements. In one of them, he was wounded, and fell from his horse, when several of the raiders came up and shot him again. He afterward died from these wounds. The party passed on toward the Ogeechee, where some of the Georgians, with the help of their slaves, were able to resist them. This and the news that the other party had failed to take Sunbury influenced them to return. They burned many houses on the way, and destroyed quantities of rice and grain, besides taking with them all the negroes, horses, cattle, and everything of value they could carry.

**10. Savannah.**—When the British fleet arrived at the mouth of the Savannah river, the troops landed Dec 29, 1778, and marched toward Savannah, which was defended by about nine hundred men. General Robert Howe commanded this small body of Americans. They could not stand before the numbers brought against them, and the capital of Georgia fell into the hands of the British, December 29, 1778. Campbell offered protection to the people on condition that they would join the king's army. Many who refused to obey his orders were sent on board prison ships, where they died of contagious diseases.

---

## CHAPTER VI.

1779.

**1. Sunbury.**—In January, a short time after the surrender of Savannah, General Prevost captured the fort at Sunbury, in Georgia. He then went to Savannah and took command of the British forces there.

**2. The War at the South.**—When D'Estaing's ships were made ready for the sea again, he sailed for the West Indies. The British fleet moved to the South.

**3. General Lincoln.**—General Lincoln, from Massachusetts, was then placed in command of the American army in the Southern States. He stationed his forces in South Carolina, and prepared to meet the British.

**4. Tories.**—General Prevost took possession of the greater part of Georgia, and established posts at Ebenezer and Augusta.\* The British had hoped to be joined by the Tories in the South. They expected by that means greatly

\***Nancy Hart.**—A story has been told of Nancy Hart, who lived in Elbert county, Ga. She was a rough, ignorant woman, but she loved the cause of liberty, and did all she could to aid the men who were fighting

to increase their strength. Agents were sent throughout the country, and several hundred Tories were collected at Ninety-six, a fort in the upper part of South Carolina. They were men of the worst character, who went about plundering and robbing the people.<sup>b</sup>

**5. Battle of Briar Creek.**—General Lincoln sent General Ashe, with two thousand men, to attack the enemy in Georgia. They were surprised and routed by General Prevost, at Briar Creek, where they lost four-fifths of their number.

**6. British Movements in the North.**—The British did nothing of importance at the North this year. General Tryon led a raiding party into Connecticut, who committed many outrages and burned several towns.<sup>c</sup> General Clinton went up the Hudson river, and

for independence. Once a party of men from the British camp at Augusta turned into the road that led to Nancy's house. One of them shot a turkey in the yard and ordered her to make them a meal of it.

Although unwilling to serve them, she concluded to begin the cooking. She sent her daughter, Sukey, a girl of twelve years, to the spring for a bucket of water. The spring was not far from the swamp, and Sukey blew the conch shell, which lay on a stump near by, to give warning to her father and others concealed there.

When Nancy placed the smoking dinner on the table, the men stacked their guns and sat down to eat. While they were busy at their dinner, Nancy managed to hand two of the guns, through a crack between the logs, to her husband. They discovered her as she was slipping the third one outside. As they sprang up to stop her, she turned and threatened to kill the first man who moved toward her. One of them stepped forward and she fired. The next instant, he had fallen dead at her feet. Her husband and his companions seized the remaining four Tories and hanged them upon a tree in the neighboring swamp.

<sup>b</sup>**Battle of Kettle Creek.**—This force of Tories was ordered to march to Savannah, but, in Wilkes county, Georgia, they were met by Colonel Pickens and Colonel Clarke, with their militia. A battle was fought at that place, February 14, 1779, in which the Tories were defeated and scattered.

<sup>c</sup>General Tryon, who had been the royal governor of Connecticut,

suffered heavily. They failed to accomplish anything, and captured the forts at Stony Point and Verplank's Point. Within a few weeks, General Wayne had retaken Stony Point,<sup>d</sup> and General Harry Lee had surprised the British at Paulus Hook,<sup>e</sup> and had established himself in command.

**7. Siege of Savannah.**—The French fleet, with six thousand French soldiers, left the West Indies, and Oct. 9, reached Savannah in September, 1779. There was 1779. an understanding between General Lincoln and Count D'Estaing that they should approach the town at the same time, from different directions. Lincoln's army marched from South Carolina, and the French force landed below Savannah. The siege had lasted a month, when Count D'Estaing sent a message to General Prevost, demanding the surrender of the town. This was refused, and an attack was made in which both French and Americans

went to Horse Shoe Neck, in this State. Besides destroying the salt works there, his soldiers damaged the place in every possible way. General Putnam was there with a small body of men; he escaped being captured by riding his horse down a steep, sloping rock, whither the enemy were afraid to follow. General Tryon made a second visit to Connecticut; he then burned a portion of New Haven and other towns.

In May, a body of two thousand British arrived at Norfolk and Portsmouth, Va. After burning houses and destroying property, they carried off three thousand hogsheads of tobacco.

<sup>d</sup>Stony Point was an important place, on the Hudson, north of New York city. General Wayne took command of an expedition for the purpose of driving away its British captors. The attack was made at midnight, July 15, with fixed bayonets and from opposite sides of the fort. Although General Wayne's men advanced against a furious fire of muskets, they succeeded in reaching the inside of the fortifications. The garrison surrendered, after a loss of 60 killed and 540 prisoners. The Americans had 15 killed and 80 wounded.

<sup>e</sup>A few days after the capture of Stony Point, Major Henry Lee, often called "Light Horse Harry Lee," undertook the task of surprising the British forces at Paulus Hook, now Jersey City. This he succeeded in doing at night, July 19, and his reward was 150 prisoners.

lost in killed and wounded nearly one thousand men; among them was the brave Count Pulaski. Sergeant Jasper, the gallant hero of Fort Moultrie, also fell while trying again to rescue the flag of South Carolina.

The French fleet sailed back to France, and General Lincoln returned to Carolina. This failure made many hearts sad in all the States, but was nowhere felt so deeply as in Georgia, where the inhabitants were completely in the power of the enemy, and where parties of armed men passed through the country, robbing and driving off cattle and slaves.

**18. Paul Jones.**—In September of this year, Paul Sept., Jones, a Scotchman, who commanded a squadron that had been prepared by the American commissioners at Paris, engaged in battle with a fleet of 1779. English merchant vessels on the coast of England, near Flamborough Head. His ship, the "Bon Homme Richard," (bo-no'm--re-sha'r) (good man Richard), met the British ship "Serapis," which sailed toward the American squadron. After fighting awhile at the distance of musket shot, the "Richard" moved to the side of the "Serapis," and Jones fastened its anchor to his own vessel, so that the large guns of the enemy might not be used against him. In this position, with their guns touching each other, the fighting continued two hours. Both ships had been on fire several times, when the "Alliance," one of the vessels belonging to his squadron, came to his assistance. The first gun had been fired about seven o'clock in the evening, and at ten the "Serapis" surrendered. Jones had only time to place his men upon the captured ship before the "Richard" sunk out of sight. The other English vessels also fell into his hands. This was one of the bloodiest battles ever fought upon the sea. Three hundred of the three hundred and seventy-five men on the "Richard" were killed or wounded.



**19. The Close of 1779.**—When the year closed, the enemy were in possession of the greater part of Georgia, but they could boast of success at no other place. Their forces had been withdrawn from Rhode Island, and they had given up Stony Point, leaving the whole North free, except a small portion of New York and a part of New England, east of the Penobscot. Still the Americans had much to discourage them. France had not helped them as they had hoped she would, although Spain had joined the alliance this year. The Continental money had fallen in value until thirty dollars equaled only one dollar in other money, and they had no credit to enable them to borrow what they needed. The army was sadly diminished, and Parliament had voted to send out eighty-five thousand seamen, and to add thirty-five thousand to the British army on land.

**20. Washington in Winter Quarters.**—General Washington selected Morristown, New Jersey, for his winter quarters. The winter began early, and was one of the coldest ever known in this country. During three months, the snow lay four feet deep on the ground. The army suffered for the want of blankets and clothing. Many times they were without meat several days at a time. They kept themselves from freezing by building large fires throughout the camp. They endured their hardships nobly and patiently, determined never to give up.

---

## CHAPTER VII.

1780.

**1. South Carolina.**—With this year, came days of trial for South Carolina. The British army spread itself from the coast over the best parts of the State, and ruin and sor-

row followed its footsteps. Fathers and brothers who would not join the royal army were killed as outlaws in their own houses, and women and children fled from their burning homes with no shelter but the forest before them. In the southern part of the State, there were more negroes than white men, and the danger from them was very great, while in the up-country were numbers of men who had been living in Carolina but a short time, and who were firmly attached to the king. These Tories and the Indians were a constant source of danger, yet General Lincoln had but a small force to bring against them while he tried to keep back the threatening foe from the sea.

**2. Charleston.**—After the French fleet left the United States, Sir Henry Clinton sailed from New York May 12, 1780, with a large force toward Charleston, South Carolina. As he had failed to take the city, in 1776, he determined to lead this attack in person. General Lincoln did everything that could be done to strengthen the fortifications of the city. Fifteen hundred reinforcements from Virginia and North Carolina came to assist him. Clinton's ships passed Fort Moultrie and his army landed on the western bank of the Ashley river. Afterward, he crossed the Ashley above Charleston, and erected lines of earth-works beyond the city between the two rivers. The city was soon completely surrounded by the enemy. General Clinton sent portions of his force in different directions to drive back any bodies of militia that might attempt to aid General Lincoln. The siege continued eight weeks. At the end of that time, there was still no hope of help, and there was not meat enough to last a week. General Lincoln then surrendered his whole army of five thousand men and the citizens of Charleston as prisoners of war.

**3. Conquest of South Carolina.**—After the surrender

of Charleston, General Clinton sent out his forces to take possession of other portions of the State. One division, under Lord Cornwallis, went towards Camden; another, under Colonel Cruger, toward Ninety-Six; and a third, under Colonel Brown, to Augusta. All the important places were soon in their possession.

**4. Clinton's Proclamation.**—Sir Henry Clinton published, to the people of Carolina, an offer of pardon to all who would place themselves under the protection of his government. Because many felt compelled to accept this offer, he thought his work as a conqueror in that State was done, and, leaving the command with Lord Cornwallis, he returned to New York.

**5. Partizan Leaders.**—Much of the warfare after this was carried on under the leadership of the partizans—Sumter,<sup>a</sup> <sup>b</sup> Marion,<sup>c</sup> Lee, and others. These small bands of woods-

<sup>a</sup> **Colonel Sumter.**—A large number of the people fled to North Carolina. Among them was Colonel Sumter, who had commanded a Continental regiment. A body of these refugees chose him for their leader and, in the summer of 1780, they returned to their native State to oppose the invaders. Their weapons were made from farm implements by country blacksmiths, and their bullets were moulded of the pewter obtained from private houses. Sometimes they went into battle when there were only three rounds of shot and powder to a man. Often some of them, unarmed, stood at a safe distance behind the others until some of the foremost were killed waiting to step into the broken ranks and take the arms of those who had fallen. Men flocked to Sumter and his number soon reached six hundred.

<sup>b</sup> **Williams' Plantation.**—One of Sumter's first engagements with the British and Tories was in the upper part of South Carolina, at Williams' Plantation, near Fishing Creek. The British were in a lane, and Colonel Sumter's force of 133 had separated and entered from opposite ends of the lane at the same time. By this sudden attack, the British were surprised and completely routed. When Sumter arrived, he had found the women of the place on their knees begging the British captain to save their children and their property.

<sup>c</sup> **General Francis Marion** (ma'r-e-on), who had been wounded during

men kept the British general annoyed by unexpected attacks upon his foraging parties, and by the capture of supplies on the way from Charleston to military posts farther inland. Sumter and Lee fought around Camden and Ninety-Six, while Marion watched the valleys of the Santee and the Pedee.

**6. General Gates**, of Virginia, was appointed by Congress to take command of the southern forces after General Lincoln's surrender. Baron DeKalb had been sent with reinforcements from Washington to Lincoln, but, hearing of the fall of Charleston, had waited at Deep river, in North Carolina, for further orders. When General Gates arrived, all of the army marched forward into South Carolina.

**7. The Battle of Sanders Creek.**—There were British  
Aug. 16, garrisons at Augusta, Georgia, and at Ninety-Six,  
1780. and Camden in South Carolina; but Camden was  
the most important place, and General Gates advanced toward that fort. Cornwallis hurried from Charleston to join Lord Rowdon at Camden, and to meet General Gates. A battle was fought at Sanders Creek, eight miles from Camden, in which General Gates was defeated, and Baron DeKalb was killed. The American army lost one thousand men,

the siege of Charleston, went to North Carolina; and, as General Gates' army moved forward toward Camden, he, with a band of sixteen men, went to the banks of the Santee. There he captured a body of British troops, and released some of the American prisoners who had been taken at Sanders Creek, and who were on their way to Charleston. The men of the country joined him as he passed on. In order to supply them with arms, he had to take the saws of saw-mills and have them made into swords. Sometimes he commanded only 70 men, and at one time he had lost all but 25. The enemy, wishing to influence his followers to leave him, burned the houses of those who were supposed to be with him. This only made the people more determined, and added many reinforcements to his ranks. For months he and his men slept in the open air, and found shelter in the swamps. From these hiding places they rode out and surprised the enemy. The British called him the "Swamp Fox."

killed, wounded and captured, with all of its artillery and two hundred wagons. The British loss in killed and wounded was about three hundred. After this defeat, General Gates withdrew to Hillsborough, in North Carolina.

**8. Sumter's Defeat.**—Just before this battle, Colonel Sumter had captured a party of British soldiers who were carrying clothing and ammunition to Camden, but hearing of General Gates' defeat, he retreated along the south side of the Wateree. Colonel Tarleton's force, sent by Lord Cornwallis, soon reached his camp. His men had been marching without provisions and without sleep, and while they were resting on the bank of the river, the British succeeded in surprising and routing them. The three hundred prisoners and the stores that he had captured were retaken, and his whole force was compelled to surrender.

**9. Proclamation by Cornwallis.**—After these disasters, the invaders supposed there would be no further resistance by the people of South Carolina, and Lord Cornwallis sent out a proclamation declaring that all who had done anything to help the rebel cause should be imprisoned and should lose all their property; and that any man who had once been in the royal army, and had afterward joined the rebels, should be hung. Many men were taken from the prisons and hanged without trial, according to this order.

**10. Battle of King's Mountain.**—Cornwallis sent Colonel Tarleton to hold the country east of the Oct. 7. Catawba river, and Major Ferguson to gather together the Tories of the mountainous districts. With eleven hundred British and Tories, Ferguson encamped on King's Mountain, near the North Carolina line, and from that safe position he believed he could not be driven. The Whigs became indignant at his cruel treatment, and enlisted



a force from the mountains of Georgia and Carolina to attack him. This force was joined by companies of militia from North Carolina and Virginia, and commanded by Colonel Campbell, of Virginia. The Americans approached from opposite sides of the mountain, and, after a short but bloody fight, captured the whole of Major Furguson's force. Ten of the prisoners, who had been noted as house-burners and murderers, were hanged.

**11. Movements of Cornwallis.**—A few weeks after the battle near Camden, Lord Cornwallis moved his army to Charlotte. He had believed that the defeat of Gates and Sumter would make the whole State submit to his arms, and that he could march victoriously through North Carolina and Virginia; but the success of the Americans at King's Mountain compelled him to change his plans, and his next movement was a retreat to Winnsboro', in South Carolina.

**12. England's Condition.**—The people of England were growing weary of this war, which had brought no fruits of success, and which was adding to the public debt every day. British cruisers had been abroad on the seas, capturing every vessel that came within their reach. No flag was respected; the commerce of every nation suffered from their depredations, but none felt it so seriously as Holland. In consequence of these losses, Holland joined the alliance with France and Spain against England. Early in 1780, Russia, Sweden, and Denmark formed a compact, called the "Armed Neutrality," in which each agreed to aid in raising a fleet for the protection of the commerce of neutral powers, against the injustice of Great Britain. This, in addition to the continued siege of Gibraltar, only multiplied trouble for England, and compelled her to divide her strength to meet the war in America on the one hand, and the war in Europe on the other.

**13. Fishdam Ferry.**—Cornwallis was so much annoyed by Sumter that he sent a body of men, under May 12, Major Wemys (wemz), to drive him back. The 1780. attack was made at Fishdam, on Broad river. Major Wemys was taken prisoner; all his command, who were not killed or captured, withdrew towards the main army.

**14. Return of the French Fleet.**—LaFayette had returned to France, and, during the winter of 1779–July, 80, which he spent there, he had used his influence 1780. with the king to have another fleet manned and fitted out for America. It arrived, in July, with six thousand men, and anchored at Newport, Rhode Island, until the movements of the army should call for its assistance.

**15. Arnold's Treason.**—General Benedict Arnold, a man so often distinguished for his bravery during the war, had been placed in command at Philadelphia after its evacuation by the British, in 1778. There he lived in an extravagant style, lost heavily by gambling, and used the public money as his own. The court-martial which tried him sentenced him to be reprov'd by the commander-in-chief of the army. Arnold's desire for money, and for revenge, led him to sell his honor and betray his country. He accordingly made his wounds an excuse for not moving with the army, but he asked General Washington for the command of the strong fort at West Point, which was of great importance to both armies. He at once began a correspondence with General Clinton, in which he promised to give the British possession of West Point. In return, he was to receive ten thousand pounds and the rank and salary of a brigadier general. To make the contract sure, he insisted that a British officer should meet him in person. Major André (a'n-dray) was sent up the Hudson in a boat with a flag of truce.

**16. André's Capture.**—André landed at night.

Sept. 23, 1780. Arnold met him and took him within the lines, to a house at a short distance from the river. Before he returned, the boat was fired upon by the Americans, and was compelled to go farther down the river. For this reason, André had to return through the country to New York. On the way, near Tarrytown, he was captured by a party of American soldiers, who searched his clothing and found papers concealed in his boots. Among them was a plan of the fortifications of West Point and a description, in Arnold's handwriting, of its surroundings, with an account of the strength of the garrison, the guns and stores. They took him and his papers to Colonel Jameson, the commandant at New Castle. André was allowed to write to Arnold and inform him of his capture. This gave Arnold time to escape to the boat that was to have carried André to New York. Washington made preparations, at once, to retain the fort, and to prevent it from falling into the hands of the British.

André was tried by a court-martial and sentenced to be hanged as a spy.

**17. Arnold's Reward.**—Arnold received the price he had asked ; but his gold and his rank brought him no happiness—no good. He was despised by the people of England, and hated by those of the United States. He died in London, in 1801, without friends and without the glory or the riches he had stooped so low to gain. His memory will always be coupled with dishonor and reproach.

**18. General Greene.**—In December, 1780, General Nathaniel Greene, a native of Rhode Island, was appointed to succeed General Gates in command of the Southern army, which had moved to Charlotte, North Carolina. The force he came to command, numbered about nineteen hundred men, and was made up of those who had passed through the battle of Camden. Congress had no money with which to

pay them, and they were without clothes at the beginning of the winter.\* The British army of regulars, that he was to fight, was large in numbers and well provided with supplies.

---

## CHAPTER VIII.

1781.

**1. General Greene in Carolina.**—General Greene sent a part of his command, under General Morgan, to the western part of South Carolina, while he marched with the main army to the north side of the Pedee, opposite Cheraw Hill. Both movements were made to thwart the plans of Cornwallis, who was preparing to move back to North Carolina.

**2. Battle of the Cowpens.**—Cornwallis sent Colonel Tarleton, with a thousand men, to drive General Morgan back and to prevent the men throughout that part of the State from joining him. Jan. 17, 1781. Tarleton reached the ground, which Morgan had chosen, January 17, and made the attack; but he was defeated with great loss. This engagement has been known as the battle of the Cowpens.\*

\*About this time, Robert Morris, a wealthy merchant of Philadelphia, was appointed by Congress as the agent for the finances, or money, of the country. His management did much toward supplying the needs of the soldiers. Congress taxed the States, and borrowed money from Europe. Societies for the relief of the men in the army were formed by the women in Philadelphia; clothing made by their own fingers were sent to the destitute regiments at Morristown.

\*In South Carolina, the grass of the forest afforded pasture for cattle nearly all the year, and they roamed through the woods, without much attention from their owners. In the fall, they were driven into large enclosures, to be kept during the winter. Then each man could claim and

**3. Greene's Retreat.**—General Morgan thought that Cornwallis would send a large force against him, and he began to move toward the northeast, so as to cross the Catawba before the enemy could arrive. Both armies marched in the same direction, and at the rate of thirty miles a day. The British followed so closely that they encamped on the bank of the Catawba in the evening, after the Americans had crossed in the morning. A heavy rain which fell during the night, raised the waters, and they could not pass over to continue the pursuit.

After some delay, the enemy reached the Yadkin; they found Morgan on the opposite side, with the boats in which he had crossed, fastened to the other bank. The Americans gained time to unite the two divisions of the army, and General Greene continued the retreat as far as the Dan river, in Virginia. Cornwallis then changed his plans, and returned to Hillsboro, North Carolina.

**4. Battle of Guilford Courthouse.**—New enlistments

and reinforcements increased Greene's army to

March 15, nearly five thousand men, and he marched back  
1781.

to North Carolina. The two armies met at Guilford Courthouse, where a desperate battle was fought, after which General Greene again retreated. Cornwallis was so much weakened that, in a few days, he moved his army to Wilmington, North Carolina. From that place he

mark his own. Morgan had encamped a short distance from the Cowpens, near the boundary of North Carolina, and from these the battle took its name.

In January, Arnold with a British force invaded Virginia. He moved up the James river and destroyed a large amount of property. He afterward fortified Portsmouth. Washington sent LaFayette with a body of men to Virginia to capture the traitor; the French fleet at Newport was also ordered southward to assist him. The British ships drove back the French fleet, and it sailed to Rhode Island. Arnold changed his position; consequently, Washington's plans were not carried out.



moved on to Petersburg to join the British forces there for the conquest of Virginia. Lord Rawdon was left in command in South Carolina. This gave General Greene possession of all of North Carolina but Wilmington, and all the upper portion of South Carolina, except that held by Lord Rawdon at Camden.

**5. Work for Marion, Sumter and Others.**—The British now held a part of South Carolina by occupying the forts at Augusta, Ninety-Six, and Camden. In the spring, General Greene sent Lee and Marion to cut off the supplies sent from Charleston to Camden. Sumter was ordered to keep the country free of British troops between Camden and Ninety-Six, while Pickens went to stop supplies from passing between Ninety-Six and Augusta. All this they accomplished before the beginning of the summer months.

**6. Battle of Hobkirk's Hill.**—General Greene moved in pursuit of Cornwallis as far as Hobkirk's Hill, April 25, which was about a mile from Camden, and Lord 1781. Rawdon attacked him there. For awhile the Americans seemed to have the advantage, but afterwards they were compelled to retreat, with a loss of two hundred in killed and wounded. The British lost about the same number.

**7. Wright's Bluff.**—Lee and Marion succeeded in taking the fort at Wright's Bluff on the Santee, April 26, the most important British post below Camden. 1781. As there could no longer be any direct communication between Camden and Charleston after the surrender of this fort, Lord Rawdon left Camden and moved to Eutaw Springs. This left but three posts in South Carolina in the hands of the British—Ninety-Six, Eutaw Springs, and Charleston.

**8. Ninety-Six.**—In May, General Greene began the

June 18, 1781. siege of the strongly-fortified post at Ninety-Six, held by Colonel Cruger. His forces had been stationed there four weeks, when General Greene heard that Lord Rawdon was coming with reinforcements, and he determined to make an attack on the place. One-third of the men who made the charge were killed, and the others were driven back. General Greene then retreated. Lord Rawdon pursued him some distance, but concluded to return to Orangeburg. A short time afterward, Ninety-Six was evacuated and the Americans took possession.

**9. Greene Among the Hills.**—After Rawdon's retreat, General Greene sent his main army to spend the sickly part of the summer among the hills of the Santee; and Lord Rawdon left his forces to be directed by Colonel Stewart, who had arrived from Charleston.

**10. Battle of Eutaw Springs.**—The early days of September found General Greene moving against Sept. 8, 1781. the enemy again. Colonel Stewart, who commanded the British, retreated to Eutaw Springs. General Greene advanced and made the attack, which was at first successful; but, after the battle had progressed for several hours, he saw that he was fighting at great disadvantage and drew off his forces. During the night after the battle, Stewart's army left Eutaw Springs, and soon afterward retreated to Charleston.

**11. Close of the Campaign in Carolina.**—This was the last battle fought in South Carolina, and it ended Greene's campaign. He had succeeded in driving the enemy

**Augusta.**—General Pickens and Colonel Clark, with a force of militia, besieged Augusta, and early in June, Colonel Brown, June 5, 1781. who was in command, surrendered the fort. Though he had recently hung thirteen American prisoners, and had encouraged the Indians to torture others, he was furnished with a guard and sent to Savannah.

from every part of North Carolina, South Carolina and Georgia, except Wilmington, Charleston and Savannah. His army encamped in the low country, near Charleston. Their clothes were worn to rags, and they were almost entirely without meat and without money. They were exposed to the burning heat of the sun all day, and to the poisonous airs of the night while they slept. Yet the greater part of them submitted to all their sufferings and privations with a "patience that was never excelled by any army in the world."

#### THE CAMPAIGN IN VIRGINIA.

**12. Cornwallis in Virginia.**—When Cornwallis reached Petersburg, he took command of all the British troops there, and Arnold was sent back to New York. Lafayette's force, which had been defending Virginia, was increased, but he could do little to oppose the large numbers of the enemy, and Cornwallis plundered the people and destroyed large amounts of property.

**13. Yorktown.**—In obedience to orders from Sir Henry Clinton, Cornwallis moved to Yorktown, on the Chesapeake Bay, and built fortifications. Clinton feared an attack from General Washington at New York; for that reason, a position on the seacoast was selected, that Cornwallis might be able to go to assist him if necessary. Washington's movements had deceived Clinton; he was really preparing to move southward.

**14. Surrender of Cornwallis.**—When every part of Oct. 19, his plan had been completed, General Washington started back to Virginia. His army and a French  
1781. force under Count Rochambeau, (ro-shong-bó), reached Yorktown about the last of September. The French fleet, which had been lying in the harbor of Newport, Rhode

Island, ready to attack New York, was sent to the Chesapeake Bay. By these movements, the British were entirely surrounded. There could be no escape through the York or James river, and their retreat by land could be cut off in any direction by the Americans and the French.

The British fleet came from New York to aid Cornwallis. Count de Grasse, the French commander, ordered his ships in line of battle, and his guns did so much injury to the English vessels that they returned to New York.

After besieging the town three weeks, with sixteen thousand French and Americans, Washington opened a cannonade from one hundred cannons. The British fortifications were soon broken, and their guns so disabled that they could not be used. Cornwallis tried to make his escape by crossing the York river to Gloucester Point (gl'os-ter), intending to fight his way through at that place. A storm scattered his boats, and compelled him to give up the attempt. After losing five hundred men, and after being convinced that there was no hope for help, Cornwallis surrendered his whole force, of more than seven thousand men, to General Washington, October 19, 1781.

**15. Close of the War.**—This victory really closed the war. The news reached Philadelphia in the night. A watchman on the street called out: "Twelve o'clock, and a cloudy morning—*Cornwallis is taken!*" This soon aroused the whole city, and the cry was repeated at every corner. The people from Maine to Georgia were happy with the hope of peace. British troops remained in New York, Charleston, and Savannah, but there were no other great battles fought.

**16. England Desires Peace.**—Some of the members of Parliament began to speak of plans for closing the war. Commissioners from England and from the United States met in Paris to

Nov.  
1782.

agree upon terms of peace. The United States sent John Adams, Benjamin Franklin, John Jay and Henry Laurens.

**17. The Treaty of Paris.**—Nearly twelve months  
Sept. 3, passed before a final settlement could be made.  
1783. The Treaty of Paris was signed September 3,  
1783. Great Britain acknowledged the independence of the United States, and it was agreed that the boundary of the new republic should extend to the great lakes on the north, and to the Mississippi on the west. Florida was returned to Spain.

**18. The Army Disbanded.**—Before the close of  
Dec. 4, the year, the army was disbanded, and the brave  
1783. men, who had been so long exposed to hardships  
and want, were allowed to go back to their homes. The British soldiers had all sailed for England. After a tender parting from his officers, General Washington went to Annapolis, where Congress was then holding its session, and resigned his commission as commander-in-chief. He then returned to his home, at Mt. Vernon, to enjoy the peace and quiet which had rewarded his labor.

**The Northwest Territory.**—The country lying northwest of the  
1786. Ohio river belonged to several of the States, because it had been included in their charters. The greater part was owned by Virginia. After the close of the war, Virginia and the other States ceded it to the government to become the common property of all. Congress organized for this region a territorial government, and named it the Northwest Territory. The Northwestern States have since been formed from this territory.



## PRINCIPAL BATTLES OF THE WAR OF THE REVOLUTION.

## COMMANDERS.

<i>Battles.</i>	<i>American.</i>	<i>English.</i>	<i>Successful Army.</i>
1775.			
Lexington .....	Parker.....	Smith, Pitcairn.....	American.
Bunker Hill.....	Prescott.....	Howe, Clinton.....	British.
1776.			
Fort Moultrie.....	Moultrie ..	Clinton and Sir Peter Parker....	American.
Long Island.....	Putnam ....	Howe, Clinton.....	British.
White Plains.....	McDougall.	Howe .....	British.
Fort Washington.	Magaw....	Howe.....	British.
Trenton.....	Washing'n.	Rahl .....	American.
1777.			
Princeton.....	Washing'n	Baum .....	American.
Bennington .....	Stark.....	Howe .....	American.
Brandywine .....	Washing'n	Burgoyne.....	British.
Stillwater.....	Gates .....	Burgoyne.....	Not decisive
Saratoga .....	Gates .....	Burgoyne.....	American.
Germantown....	Wash'ton..	Howe .....	British.
1778.			
Monmouth.....	Wash'ton..	Clinton.....	Not decisive
Savannah.....	Robt. Howe	Campbell.....	British.
1779.			
Sunbury.....	Lane.....	Prevost.....	British.
Kettle Creek.....	Pickens ...	Boyd .....	American.
Paulus Hook.....	Henry Lee.	Prevost.....	American.
Attack on Savan'ah	Lincoln....	Prevost.....	British.
1780.			
Charleston.....	Lincoln.....	Clinton.....	British.
Sanders Creek.....	Gates.....	Cornwallis.....	British.
King's Mountain..	Campbell..	Ferguson.....	American.
1781.			
Cowpens .....	Morgan.....	Tarleton.....	American.
Guilford C. H....	Greene.....	Cornwallis .....	British.
Hobkirk's Hill....	Greene.....	Rawdon.....	British.
Ninety-Six.....	Greene.....	Colonel Cruger.....	British.
Eutaw Springs.....	Greene.....	Colonel Stewart.....	Not decisive
Yorktown .....	Washi'ton,	Cornwallis.....	American.
	DeGrasse...		

## REVIEW OF IMPORTANT EVENTS.

*British King.*

## GEORGE III.

1765. The first Colonial Congress met.
1768. British troops were sent to Boston.
1770. The Boston Massacre.
1773. The Boston tea-party.
1774. The Boston Port Bill was passed.
1774. The first Continental Congress met.
1775. Battle of Bunker Hill.
1775. The second Continental Congress met.
1776. Boston was evacuated.
1776. Battle of Fort Moultrie, Charleston, S. C.
1776. Declaration of Independence signed.
1776. Battle of Long Island. Battle of White Plains.
1776. Fort Washington was taken by the British.
1776. Washington retreated through New Jersey.
1776. Washington recrossed the Delaware and attacked the British. Rhode Island was invaded.
1777. Battle of Princeton. Battle of Chad's Ford.
1777. Fall of Philadelphia. Battle of Bennington.
1777. Battle of Stillwater. Battle of Saratoga.
1777. Burgoyne's surrender. Battle of Germantown.
1777. Forts Mifflin and Mercer surrendered.
1777. Articles of Confederation were prepared.
1778. The French alliance was formed.
1778. Peace commissioners were sent from Great Britain.
1778. Philadelphia was evacuated.
1778. Battle of Monmouth. Battle of Quaker Hill.
1778. Fall of Savannah.
1779. Sunbury, Ga., was taken by the British.
1779. Battle of Kettle Creek. Battle of Briar Creek.
1779. Paulus Hook was captured.
1779. Count D'Estaing besieged Savannah.
1780. Fall of Charleston, S. C. Battle of Sanders Creek.
1780. Battle of King's Mountain.
1780. Arnold's treason. Andrés capture.
1780. General Greene was assigned to the chief command in the South.
1781. Battle of Cowpens. Battle of Guilford Courthouse.
1781. Battle of Hobkirk's Hill. Ninety-Six was evacuated.
1781. Battle of Eutaw Springs. Battle of Yorktown.
1781. Cornwallis surrendered.
1783. The Treaty of Paris closed the war.
1783. The army was disbanded.

## QUESTIONS FOR REVIEW.

1. State the causes of the Revolutionary War.
2. Give an account of the Boston Port Bill.
3. Describe the battle of Lexington and tell its effects.
4. Why was Georgia the last to send delegates to the Continental Congress?
5. Give a sketch of the life and character of General Washington.
6. Give an account of the invasion of Canada.
7. What led to the evacuation of Boston?
8. Give the history of the battle of Fort Moultrie.
9. When was the Declaration of Independence completed and signed?
10. Describe the retreat of the Americans after the battle of Long Island.
11. Give an account of the battle of Trenton.
12. State the movements of General Washington during 1777.
13. Give the history of Burgoyne's invasion and its results.
14. What assistance was given by France?
15. What was the condition of the army at Valley Forge?
16. Give the history of 1778.
17. Describe the siege of Savannah.
18. What was the situation at the close of 1779?
19. Tell the circumstances attending the conquest of South Carolina.
20. Who were the partizan leaders in South Carolina?
21. What did they accomplish?
22. What battles were fought under General Gates' direction?
23. Give the history of Arnold's treason.
24. Describe General Greene's movements, and name the principal battles he fought.

---

BOOKS OF REFERENCE—SECTION IV.

Bancroft's "History of the United States;" Botta's "History of the Revolution;" Irving's "Life of Washington;" Headley's "Washington and his Generals;" Wirt's "Life of Patrick Henry;" Longfellow's "Paul Revere's Ride;" Parton's "Life of Benjamin Franklin;" Watson's "Campfires of the Revolution;" Headley's "Life of LaFayette;" Hartley's "Life of Marion;" Graham's "Life of Morgan."

## ADVANCEMENT OF THE COLONIES.

---

**1. Differences in Religion, Etc.**—When the independence of the colonies was first established, there was a marked difference between the sections in race, religion, and customs. The stern laws of the Puritans made New England very unlike Virginia, where the Cavaliers still held to the church of England, and to many aristocratic customs of the mother country. The Quakers and the Germans of the middle colonies differed almost as widely from the Huguenots and Cavaliers in the South. Yet they had stood shoulder to shoulder through eight years of struggle for freedom, and, in spite of their differences, the common interests of the same government and the intercourse of a growing trade between the States, were gradually bringing the people to be less and less unlike.

**2. Industries.**—The majority of the men were employed in cultivating their farms. At that time, the soil was fresh and rich, and it rewarded their labors with bountiful harvests. Tobacco paid better than anything else in Virginia; every planter's fields were full of it. Georgia and the Carolinas shipped large quantities of rice, indigo, tar and pitch; wealth came in return.

In New England, the farms were small, and the work was done by the farmer, his sons and his hired men. There the stony soil, covered with snow five months in the year, produced only wheat, corn, and potatoes enough for its own people. Many of the men left the farms to fish, build ships, and become merchants. Some of them made clocks, pails, brooms, and other articles, which they peddled through the country. On the frontier, hunters and trappers collected furs and skins to be sold at the ports for foreign trade.

The Southern planter often owned hundreds of acres of land—woodlands and cleared fields. His plantation was cultivated by negro slaves, while he lived a life of ease and pleasure. Horse-racing and hunting were his favorite sports. Every gentleman kept his hounds and his horses, his fishing-rod and gun. His house was large, and he was noted for his generous hospitality and his pride of blood. In the yard back of the house stood the kitchen. There the negro cook prepared the meals at a huge fire-place in ovens, skillets and pots. Half a score of servants waited upon the family in the master's house. The head nurse for the children was called the "black mammy," who was tenderly loved and respected by her young charge. She wore her gay bandanna handkerchief tied in a fantastic manner around her head.

**3. Growth.**—In the Northern colonies, the wilderness had fallen before the axeman, and villages dotted here and there the former hunting grounds of the red men. Many log-cabins of the early settlers had been replaced by better buildings of wood or brick. But many of the manufacturing towns that now flourish along the banks of those northern streams had not then even a beginning.

In the South, the clearings were still wide apart, and the few towns lay along the seaboard, and were built up by the shipping interests of the people.

**4. Travelling.**—Roads were few, and none of them, good; only narrow streams had been bridged; the rivers had to be forded or crossed in ferry-boats. Heavy coaches were used by a few of the wealthy families. Riding on horseback was the most common means of travelling. When a lady left home, she usually rode horseback, seated upon a pillion behind her husband or brother. A few mail lines had been established; cumbersome coaches carried the passengers. Because one of these mail-coaches made the jour-



ney from New York to Philadelphia in two days, it was called a "flying-machine." Schooners were used in going from one town to another on the coast and along the rivers.

**5. Furniture.**—High-post bedsteads held high featherbeds, with long bolsters and small pillows. The sheets were of linen or cotton, woven at home, and the quilts of gay patchwork were the pride of the house-keeper of that day. Tables with large leaves, and heavy sideboards made of solid mahogany, were found in the houses of the rich. Young ladies learned to play upon the spinet and the harpsichord—popular musical instruments in those days.

Wherever fires were built, andirons were used to support the sticks of wood, and long-handled shovel and tongs were kept for handling the fire. Coal had never been seen in this country, and stoves were just beginning to be used.

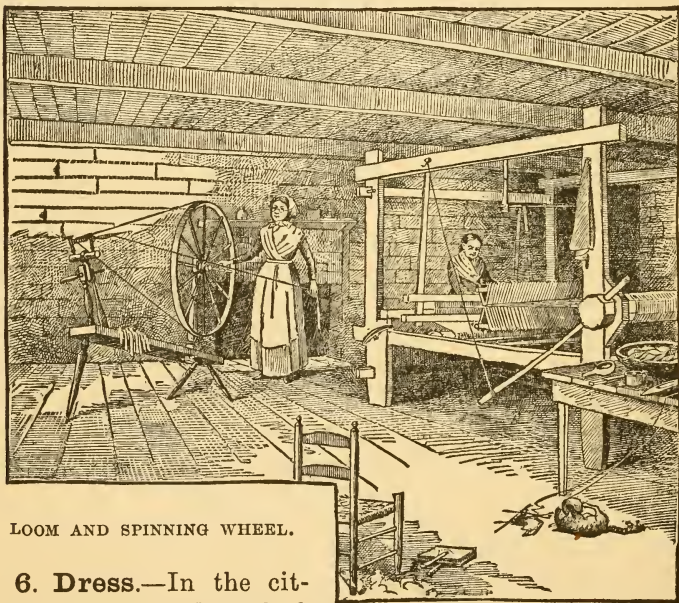
The old tinder-box was still a necessity. It was a small wooden box, divided into two parts. In one side the flint, steel, and brimstone matches were kept; in the other were the half-burned linen rags, called tinder. The sparks were struck from the steel and flint, or from the flint of a gun, and made to fall upon the tinder, which soon began to smoke and burn. The end of a brimstone match was then touched to the tinder, and a feeble flame was the result. These matches were slender pieces of wood, the ends of which had been dipped into melted brimstone.

In most houses, the coals from the wood fire were covered with ashes at night, so as to be kept until the fire was needed the next day. It was not uncommon to send as far as half a mile to a neighbor for a "chunk of fire," if the covered coals had gone out during the night.

The use of gas for lighting came slowly into favor. Many opposed it because of the supposed danger connected with it. Candles were the main dependence; they were made of tallow, moulded or dipped. The snuffers and

snuffer tray were always placed near the candle-stick; expensive ones were of solid silver. Large, branching candelabra were costly ornaments for drawing-rooms, and were used on special occasions.

Oil lamps were a slight improvement on the candles. Much care was required to keep them trimmed and filled with whale oil. For lighting streets, they remained in use many years.



LOOM AND SPINNING WHEEL.

**6. Dress.**—In the cities, the style of dress had changed very much from that of the early colonial days. The gentleman of that time wore a three-cornered, cocked hat. His hair, always in a cue, was powdered profusely when in full dress. His light-colored coat, trimmed with silver buttons, his long striped stockings, knee pants, and pointed

shoes, with their heavy buckles, made up his gay costume. He carried a gold-headed cane and a gold snuff box. The ladies who received him in their drawing-rooms were wonderfully tall, with their high heels and lofty head-dresses. Over their large hoops, they wore dresses of rich brocade and heavy satin petticoats. At receptions and parties, they danced the minuet to the music of a violin.

Linsey and cotton homespun were worn by the common people. Both kinds of cloth were made by the women of the family. The wool and cotton were first carded, and then spun into thread on the spinning wheels; the thread was woven into cloth in the heavy wooden looms, which were still in general use throughout the colonies at that time.

**7. Education.**—The church and the school-house had their places in almost every village. In some of the wealthier settlements, substantial buildings had been erected for church and school, but about the plantations there were few.

In the district schools of New England, the winter term of two months was taught by a man, and the summer term of the same length by a woman. The teacher, instead of boarding, divided the time, from house to house, among the parents of the scholars, in proportion to the number of children sent from each family. The boys and girls were taught to read, write and spell the words in "Dilworth's Speller;" they were content with as much knowledge of arithmetic as would fit them to keep accounts, make change and calculate interest. The fear of the master kept the school in working order eight hours every day.

The "old field school" had sprung up amidst the forests of the Southern colonies. Its master taught "the three R's—Reading, 'Riting and 'Rithmetic," in a low log building, where the light came in through a square opening in

the wall for a window, and through a long aperture left between the logs. Under the last, a broad plank, supported by heavy wooden pegs, served for a desk, to be used in turn by those who were learning to handle the quill-pen. The seats were benches without backs, upon which the young learners sat from early morning till the slanting rays of the evening sun reminded the teacher that his day's work was done. A stout birch rod, always in sight, enforced the master's commands. The village common schools were somewhat in advance of these, but the books used and the teaching done in them were very different from those of our own time.

Printing presses had become more numerous, and their publications cheaper. The books were mainly collections of sermons or tracts upon political questions. "The Lives of the Martyrs," Young's Night Thoughts," "Rollin's Ancient History," and Pilgrim's Progress," were read by those who cared for books.

**8. Coal.**—A discovery was made in 1791, which was of great importance to the people of America. A hunter, among the mountains of Pennsylvania, stumbled against a piece of black stone. It was unlike any he had seen before; he sent it to Philadelphia, where it was examined and pronounced to be coal. Further search disclosed an immense coal bed. Rich iron deposits were soon brought into notice; the two discoveries changed materially the principal industries of the State, and added largely to the wealth and prosperity of the people. The use of coal as fuel soon made changes necessary in the domestic arrangements of the household; grates and stoves began to take the place of the old fire-place. Dr. Franklin's stove was the only kind known for a long time.

**9. The Cotton Gin.**—Cotton had been planted only in small patches, to be used for the clothing of the family,

1792. until after 1792, when Eli Whitney invented the cotton gin, for separating the seed from the lint cotton. This made a marvelous change in the industries of the Southern country. The gin could clean as much cotton in a few minutes as dozens of hands could do in a week. The farmers had a custom of inviting their neighbors to what they called a cotton-picking. The girls came in the afternoon, the young men, at night. Each man's task was to pick his shoe full of seed. After the work was done, the rest of the evening was given to dancing and frolic by the young people.

With the cotton gin, the production of cotton began at once to increase; it soon became the great staple of Southern export.

**10. Slaves.**—The cultivation of tobacco, rice and cotton in the Southern States made slave labor very profitable, and as the Northern States turned their attention to manufacture and other branches of industry, the slaves were gradually removed from the North southward. The white man could not work in the swamps, where rice was grown, nor in the burning summer sun, which is so necessary for the growth of cotton. The negro objected to neither of these; he had left both the sun and the swamp in his home in Africa.



## SECTION V.

### CHAPTER I.

#### THE GOVERNMENT.

**1. The Constitution.**—The people of the United States saw that changes were needed in the Articles of Confederation which they had adopted, and May, 1787. representatives from each of the States met and formed a new Constitution. This Federal Constitution was adopted by all the States, though many persons objected to it.

**2. Electoral Colleges.**—The Constitution required that the president and vice-president should be elected by *Colleges of Electors*; these were men chosen by the people, upon a general ticket, making all the electors from each State belong to the same political party. The number of electors allowed to each State was the same as the number of its senators and representatives in Congress. These electors were to meet in their own States and vote by ballot; the record of these votes was to be sealed and sent to the president of the Senate, who should, “in the presence of the Senate and the House of Representatives, open all the certificates” and the votes should be counted. General Washington was elected the first president, and John Adams the vice-president.

**3. Congress** was to be divided into two houses, or divisions, and the votes of both houses were to be necessary to make any law or pass any bill. To each State was given the right to send two senators to Congress, but the representatives were to be chosen in proportion to the number

of inhabitants, "on the three-fifths basis." Five negroes were to be counted as three white men. The constitution left the States their own separate rights, and specified definitely the powers of Congress.

**4. Three Branches of Government.**—The government was divided into three branches. The legislative, or law-making power, was given to Congress. The executive power was placed in the hands of the president. The judicial power, or power to interpret the meaning of the laws, was given to the courts and judges.

**5. The President's Cabinet.**—Officers who were to assist the president were called his cabinet. They were the Secretary of State, Secretary of War, Secretary of the Treasury, and the Attorney-General. The offices of the Secretary of the Navy and Secretary of the Interior were added afterward.

---

## CHAPTER II.

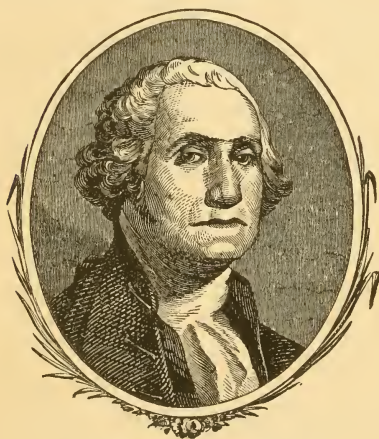
### WASHINGTON'S ADMINISTRATION—1789–1797.

**1. Inauguration.**—George Washington, who had been elected president for a term of four years, was inaugurated April 30, 1789, in the city of New York. He took an oath to perform all the duties of his office, and, because on that day he began to act as president, the ceremonies were called his inauguration.

**2. The Important Events** of his administration were: 1. Trouble with the Indians in the Northwest. 2. Difficulties with France. 3. The whisky insurrection. 4. The admission of Kentucky, Vermont, and Tennessee.

**3. Indians.**—After the close of the war, several forts in the Northwest were still in possession of the British,

although the treaty of peace required that they should be given up. The British traders made the Indians believe that the Americans would soon be ruled by Great Britain again, and they encouraged them to attack the western settlements. Washington sent General Harmar with an armed force against them. He burned several Indian towns and destroyed their crops. After dividing his troops, so as to move in different directions, he fought two battles, and was defeated in both of them.



PRESIDENT WASHINGTON.

General St. Clair was then sent out with new troops, and General Harmar was removed from the command. St. Clair was also surprised by the savages, and, in a battle with them, lost six hundred men.

**4. Federalists and Anti-Federalists.**—The public debt, which had been incurred by the war, was very heavy. Congress passed a law establishing a tariff for taxing all imported goods, and all

foreign vessels bringing the goods. A tax was also imposed upon all distilled liquors. The amount raised by these means was to be devoted to the payment of the debt. The tariff was Alexander Hamilton's plan; Thomas Jefferson opposed it. It was the beginning of a controversy which has been going on ever since that time. Hamilton and Adams wanted more power given to Congress; Jefferson thought it would be unwise for the States to surrender any of their rights. These questions of tariff and States rights divided the people into two great political parties.

Those who thought as Hamilton did were called Federalists. The friends of Jefferson were anti-Federalists or Democratic Republicans.

**5. Slavery.**—The increase of slaves in the South began  
1790. to attract the attention of the Northern States. Dr.

Franklin prepared a petition for the emancipation of slaves; this he presented to Congress, but Congress decided that it had no power to act in the matter.

**6. Kentucky.**—It was a long time before families ven-  
1791. tured to go among the Indians beyond the moun-  
tains south of the Ohio river. Daniel Boone, a brave hunter in North Carolina, was the first to go. After exploring portions of the beautiful valleys and mountain ranges which were then a wilderness, he and his brother, who had accompanied him, returned for their wives and children. About the time that the first battles of the Revolution were fought, they began to build the first town of Kentucky, at Boonsborough. Daniel Boone\* was followed by other settlers from the Carolinas. After the close of the war, it was made a separate State from Virginia, and admitted into the Union in 1791.

**7. Vermont** was added to the United States about the same time, which made the number fifteen.

\*Daniel Boone.—A few years before the Revolution, Daniel Boone and several friends, dressed in the buckskin suits worn by hunters in those days, and armed with guns and knives, left their homes, to learn something of the pathless forest which then covered the State of Kentucky. It lay between the region claimed by the Five Nations, and that belonging to the Cherokees, and was called by them Kentucky, which means "Dark and Bloody Ground." It is supposed to have received the name on account of the battles they fought there. It was then a part of Virginia. Boone was a prisoner in the hands of the Indians more than once, but he managed to escape. The savages killed nearly all of the men who accompanied him. Only he and his brother were left; and after they had remained two years in that wild country, "without bread, salt or sugar," spending the time hunting buffaloes and other wild animals, which they found in great numbers, they returned home.

**8. Whisky Insurrection.**—The tax imposed upon distilled liquors, by Congress, was not, everywhere, promptly paid. In the western part of Pennsylvania, meetings were held and threats were made against the revenue officers who were to collect the tax. The president issued a proclamation, by which he tried to induce the people to submit to the law. As the opposition continued, a force of fifteen thousand men was sent to the disorderly districts, and the insurrection came to an end without the necessity of shedding blood.

**9. Second Term.**—Washington was again elected president, and was inaugurated March 4, 1793. Mr. Adams was also re-elected vice-president.

**10. Trouble With France.**—A war, known as the French Revolution, had been raging in France; the armies of Austria and Russia had crossed the Rhine and were invading the territory of the French. The people of the United States had not forgotten LaFayette and De Grasse; many thought that America ought to do something in return to assist the French. President Washington thought differently, and he advised them to remain neutral, which meant that they should take no part in the war.

**11. Citizen Genet** (zhe-ná) was sent to the United States, as minister from France. He persuaded some of the most prominent friends of France to help him prepare vessels to sail from the United States against those who were at war with his countrymen. Washington immediately requested the French government to recall him.

**12. Indians Subdued.**—In the fall of the same year, General Wayne was sent to the Northwest to take command of the forces that had been sent against the Indians. He advanced into their country and built



several forts, after which he fought a bloody battle with them. The Indians were defeated and compelled to make peace. By their treaty, they gave up large bodies of land beyond the Ohio.

**13. Tennessee** became one of the United States in 1796.

**14. Washington Retired.**—Many of the people were  
1797. anxious for the president to continue in office, and  
they wanted to elect him for a third term, but he  
preferred to return to his quiet home at Mount Vernon.

---

### CHAPTER III.

#### ADAMS' ADMINISTRATION—1797–1800.

**1. Inauguration.**—John Adams, of Massachusetts, was inaugurated the second president of the United States March 4, 1797. Thomas Jefferson had been elected vice-president.

**2. The Principal Events** of Mr. Adams' administration were: 1. A settlement of the difficulties with France. 2. The death of General Washington. 3. The removal of the capitol to Washington city.

**3. French Trade Laws.**—In France it was thought that the people of the United States showed great ingratitude; and, to punish them, the French government passed laws of trade, which injured the commerce of the United States. American vessels, which were said to have violated these laws, were taken by the French. The United States, wishing to avoid war, if peace could be secured on honorable terms, sent three men to meet agents in Paris, from the French government; these men were to find out what was necessary to satisfy both nations. The French agents would

not agree upon any terms unless the United States would promise to pay large sums of money. These being refused, two of the Americans were ordered to leave France.

**4. Preparations for War.**—The people of the United States were very indignant when they knew of this insult to their agents. Congress determined to strengthen the defences of the principal ports, to raise an army, and to build or hire ships of war. Washington accepted the command of the army.

**5. Death of Washington.**—General Washington had almost reached the age of sixty-eight years, when, 1799. December 14, 1799, death ended his work on earth. Congress adjourned, as soon as the news was received, and did all that could be done to show honor to the noble man who had held the highest offices for his country, and whose whole life had been marked by a faithful discharge of duty and a firm adherence to the right. He was buried at Mount Vernon.

**6. A Treaty of Peace.**—The prompt action of the Americans did much to influence the French to 1800. make terms for peace. There was some fighting upon the ocean, but the war ended there. Napoleon Bonaparte, who had been placed at the head of the French government, made a treaty of peace in 1800.

**7. The Seat of Government Changed.**—Ten years before this time, Congress had decided that the capital should be removed from Philadelphia to the District of Columbia, which had been ceded to the government by Maryland and Virginia. General Washington had selected a place upon the left bank of the Potomac for the capital city, and it received his name. The next year after his death, the capital was changed.

## CHAPTER IV.

## JEFFERSON'S ADMINISTRATION—1801–1809.

**1. Inauguration.**—Thomas Jefferson, of Virginia, the third president of the United States, was inaugurated in the city of Washington March 4, 1801, and he continued in office two terms.

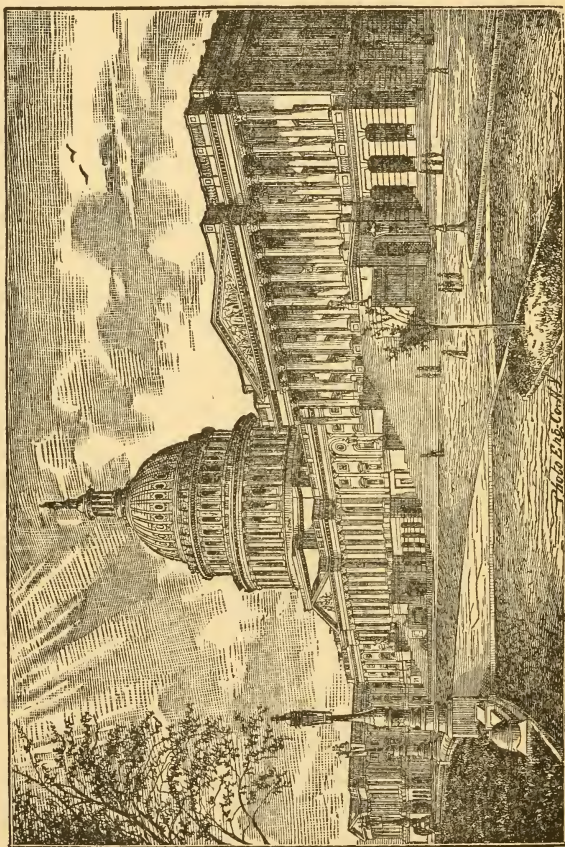
**2. The Principal Events** of his administration were: 1. The admission of Ohio. 2. The purchase of the Territory of Louisiana. 3. The war with Tripoli. 4. Troubles with England about commerce. 5. The passage of the "Embargo Act." 6. The invention of the steamboat.

**3. Ohio.**—The rich country north and west of the Ohio river had attracted many emigrants from the States, and after the Indians were driven out, the population increased rapidly. In 1802, the second year of Jefferson's term, the eastern part of this region was admitted into the Union, as the State of Ohio.

**4. The Louisiana Purchase.**—At that time, Louisiana embraced all the country from the Mississippi to the Rocky Mountains, and from the Gulf of Mexico to British America. The French had given up their claims in America to England and Spain, at the close of the French and Indian war; but, by another treaty, Spain

**Exploration of the Columbia River.**—The Territory of Oregon had first been visited, in 1792, by Captain Gray, of Boston, who sailed into the Columbia river and gave it its name. For that reason the United States claimed all the region watered by the tributaries of the Columbia. In 1804, the president sent out a party of men, commanded by Captain Lewis and Lieutenant Clark, to explore the country. They were absent two years, and in their journey across the continent, were exposed to many dangers from Indians and wild beasts. The two main branches of the Columbia were named for the leaders of the party—Lewis and Clark.

afterward gave back Louisiana to France. Napoleon, the Emperor of France, needed money to carry on the war



THE CAPITOL AT WASHINGTON.

which had begun with England, and in 1803, he sold this vast region to the United States for fifteen millions of dollars. This purchase gave the United States the right to



navigate the Mississippi river; it also added nearly one million square miles of territory.

**5. War with Tripoli.**—Pirates from Tripoli (trip-o-le),  
1801. one of the Barbary States in the north of Africa, had robbed and captured American vessels in the Mediterranean sea, and an armed fleet was sent out by the United States, under Commodore Preble, to make war with Tripoli.

**6. The "Philadelphia,"** commanded by Captain Bain-  
1803. bridge, while pursuing one of these pirate ships, ran upon a rock. It was soon surrounded by Tripolitan boats and captured. The prisoners were all carried to the land and made to work as slaves.

To keep the enemy from using the "Philadelphia," Lieutenant Decatur, one of the United States officers, determined to recapture or destroy the ship. He moved into the harbor of Tripoli at night, in a small boat, accompanied by a few daring sailors. After some trouble and delay, they reached the side of the "Philadelphia," climbed into the ship, and killed every man on board, except those who were carried back as prisoners. As they returned to their own vessel, the flames which they had started on the "Philadelphia" lit up their way; in a short time, the recaptured ship burned to the water's edge and went down into the sea.

**7. Peace.**—Afterward, the American fleet bombarded the  
1805. town of Tripoli several times. The United States also sent a force to attack Tripoli by land. The Dey then consented to terms of peace. The prisoners, who had endured the cruelty of slavery under him, were released; promises were given that American vessels should be safe from disturbance in future.

**8. Blockade.**—During the war between England and  
1806. France, the British Parliament passed an act by which the coast of Europe was declared to be in a



state of blockade. This closed the ports in that part of the world, and prevented France from obtaining help from other nations. Napoleon, in return, published an order for the blockade of the British Islands.

**9. The Right of Search.**—England also claimed the right to search American vessels and to press into the British navy any seamen, who had been born in England, and who were still considered subjects of Great Britain. Often Americans were claimed as English deserters, and taken to England in accordance with this claim.

**10. The Chesapeake.**—Many of the United States  
1807. vessels were not strong enough to battle with the British men-of-war that stopped them, and they were compelled to submit to the search. The American frigate, "Chesapeake," had started out upon a long voyage, when she was attacked by the British ship, "Leopard." Several men on board the "Chesapeake" were killed, and four others, who were accused of being deserters, were taken.

**11. New Orders.**—President Jefferson issued a proclamation declaring that no British armed vessels would be allowed to enter a port of the United States. The British government disapproved of what the officers of the "Leopard" had done; but the king afterward published an order by which all nations, not engaged in the war, were forbidden to trade with France, unless they paid a tax to England for the privilege. Napoleon, in return, threatened to capture all vessels that paid the tax, or allowed the search to be made.

**12. The Embargo Act.**—After this, Congress passed  
1807. the "Embargo Act." It required that all American trading vessels should return to the United States and remain there; it would not allow ships belonging to other nations to take cargoes from our ports. This

Act, though intended as a revenge upon England, ruined the commerce of America, and produced much dissatisfaction among the people. It was soon repealed, and a law was made in its place, which stopped the commerce with England and France.

**13. The Steamboat.**—Before this time, the movement of boats and vessels depended on sails or oars.

1807. Robert Fulton, of Pennsylvania, was the first to succeed in moving a boat rapidly over the water by the power of steam; though other men in different countries have claimed the honor of the invention of the steamboat. He had spent sometime in France having an engine made and trying experiments there. Afterward, he returned to America and continued his work. Many who heard of what he was doing, said that he was deranged, and others predicted that he would never succeed. By September, the work was finished, and he invited a party of friends to take a trip up the Hudson on board his new boat, which he had named the "Clermont." When everything else was ready, the wheels refused to move; while Fulton was looking for the cause of the trouble, the whole party waited anxiously on the deck. In a short time, the hinderance was removed, and the "Clermont" glided proudly over the water, amidst the shouts of the delighted crowds on the banks.

It traveled from New York to Albany in thirty-six hours. Other boats had taken six days and often ten days to go the same distance. Great improvements have been made since then, and splendid steamers now ply on all our large rivers.

**14. Progress.**—When Mr. Jefferson's administration closed, he left the new republic thriving and growing. The Louisiana purchase had widened her

1809. John Fitch, in Pennsylvania, and Samuel Rumsey, had also attempted to use steam for propelling boats, but had not succeeded.

domain to double its former size. Seventeen States had been enrolled as members of the Union, and the fertile lands of the West were being peopled by some of her most enterprising sons. The old debt was no longer a burden. Her exports had increased to more than one hundred millions of dollars in value; sixty-two millions pounds of cotton left her shores, as one crop, for foreign markets. The United States was beginning to be known as a power among the nations, but she was again threatened with war—a war in which a part of the fight must be made with the great navy of England.

---

## CHAPTER V.

### MADISON'S ADMINISTRATION—1809–1817.

**1. Inauguration.**—James Madison, of Virginia, was elected to succeed Mr. Jefferson as the fourth president, and was inaugurated March 4, 1809. He was in office two terms, or eight years. George Clinton, of New York, became the vice-president.

**2. Events.**—This administration was marked by several important events: 1. The battle of Tippecanoe. 2. The admission of Louisiana. 3. The war of 1812 with Great Britain. 4. The war with Algiers. 5. Admission of Indiana.

**3. Battle of Tippecanoe.**—During the second year of 1811. Mr. Madison's term, the Indians of the Northwest began to be troublesome again. British agents had been among them, making them unfriendly to the settlers. One of their bravest chiefs, Tecumseh, with his brother, who was an Indian prophet, had formed a confederacy of tribes to drive back the white men. General Harrison, the

governor of the Territory of Indiana, was sent with a body of troops against them. While he was encamped near Tippecanoe, in Indiana, the town in which the prophet lived, the chiefs met him with promises of peace, but he had so little faith in their friendship, that he ordered his men to be ready for battle at a moment's warning. The Indians, led by the prophet, made a sudden attack in the night. The battle lasted two hours, after which the Indians retreated, and Tecumseh's plans failed.

**4. Louisiana.**—In 1812, Louisiana was admitted as one of the United States. Afterward all the Louisiana Purchase, except that included in the State of Louisiana, was placed under a government like that of the other territories, and called the Missouri Territory. St. Louis was made its capital.

#### THE WAR OF 1812.

**5. Causes of the War.**—The war of 1812 was caused by the interference of England with the commerce of the United States, and the seizure of seamen on board American ships. During the war between England and France, English officers had taken as prizes about nine hundred American vessels because they had refused to submit to the laws of that government.

**6. The President's Proclamation.**—In 1810, Napoleon repealed his decrees against the commerce of neutral nations, and President Madison issued a proclamation that trade would be free with France, but unless England would change her unjust trade laws, in three months, the Non-intercourse Act of Congress would prohibit all business of that kind with Great Britain.

**7. England.**—This made the government of England more watchful and severe than it had been before, and





armed British ships were stationed near the principal ports of the United States to keep vessels from coming in or going out.

**8. The "President."**—In the spring of the next year, 1811. the United States frigate, "President," left the shores of the Chesapeake Bay, and hailed the British man-of-war, "Little Belt." The answer was a shot from the "Little Belt." A broadside from the "President" was the reply to this. A battle followed, in which the "Little Belt" lost eleven killed and twenty-two wounded, and was completely disabled.

**9. Declaration of War.**—This circumstance did much to deepen the feelings of indignation that had June 18, already been aroused against Great Britain. 1812. Although some of the members of Congress thought the difficulties might be settled in some other way, the United States declared war with Great Britain in June, 1812. Arrangements were also made for raising an army. General Henry Dearborn, from Massachusetts, was appointed commander-in-chief.

**10. The Navy.**—At the beginning of this war, the United States had only a small navy, and could not hope to do much fighting on the ocean against England's fleet, which numbered a thousand vessels.

**11. Plans.**—It was thought that England would rather comply with the demands of the United States than endanger her provinces in America; and an attack on Canada was proposed. The army was stationed along the boundary of Canada. General Dearborn commanded the eastern division, General Van Rensselaer, the middle column, and General Hull, who was then governor of Michigan, took the western forces.

**12. The First Invasion of Canada.**—After war was declared, General Hull crossed the Detroit river from Michi-

gan to take the British fort, Malden, on the Canada side of the river. Instead of going at once to the fort, he stopped at Sandwich, and the British had time to prepare for his coming. While he was waiting, the British took Fort Mackinaw, on Lake Huron, from the Americans. This was a very important place, because it was the principal defence for Michigan, and because it had become one of the noted places for trading in furs.

**13. Detroit.**—After remaining nearly a month at Sandwich, General Hull recrossed the river to Detroit without striking a single blow at the enemy. Aug.,  
1812. General Brock followed and demanded the surrender of Detroit. The Americans were confident that they could defend themselves, and were eager for a victory; but Hull raised the white flag over the fort and gave up the town and the garrison. The fall of Detroit and Fort Mackinaw left the whole Territory of Michigan without defence against the British and the Indians.

Hull was tried and condemned to be shot; but, because of his services during the Revolution, the President pardoned him and dismissed him from the army.

**14. Second Invasion of Canada.**—In the fall of the same year, another invasion was undertaken. Oct.,  
1812. General Van Rensselaer, at the eastern side of Lake Erie, sent a body of troops across the Niagara river to attack the British post at Queenstown. After some severe fighting at the landing, the Americans advanced successfully until reinforcements made the enemy too strong for them. General Van Rensselaer ordered fresh troops from the militia in his army to go and help them; but, after seeing the wounded, only one thousand would obey. The others excused themselves by saying that their general had no right to take them out of their own State. While they lingered behind, nearly all the attacking party

were killed or captured. General Van Rensselaer retired from the army; he was unwilling to command men who would shrink from their duty in the hour of necessity and danger.

**15. Naval Victories.**—Although this year was marked by failures on land, the Americans gained glorious victories on the sea. About three hundred merchant vessels and three thousand prisoners were taken from the British, besides the capture or destruction of several of their men-of-war.

**16. The "Essex."**—The first victory was gained by Aug. 13. Captain Porter, who commanded the frigate, "Essex." He captured the British ship, "Alert," the day after General Hull crossed into Canada.

**17. The "Constitution."**—Captain Hull, a nephew of Aug. 19. General Hull, in command of the "Constitution," met the "Guerriere" (gare-e-ār'e), near the Gulf of St. Lawrence. Two flags were in sight. On one was the name "Guerriere," on the other, "*Not the Little Belt*," referring to the vessel taken by the "President." The engagement lasted about forty minutes, and then the "Guerriere" surrendered. She was so badly injured that she could not be brought to land, and was blown up upon the water where she had fought.

**18. The "Wasp."**—Captain Jones, the commander of Oct. 18. the "Wasp," captured the British ship, "Frolic." After the bloody fight was over, only four men were left alive on the deck of the captured vessel. Before the "Wasp" sailed, another English ship arrived, and carried off both vessels.

**19. "The United States."**—Captain Decatur, who had Oct. 28. acted a noble part in the war with Tripoli, commanded the frigate, "United States." Near the Canary Islands, he fought an hour and a half with the

British frigate, "Macedonian," and succeeded in capturing her and bringing her to New York.

**20. The "Constitution" Again.**—The command of the "Constitution" had been given to Commodore Bainbridge. The sailors, who loved the old ship, called her "Old Ironsides." The second victory gained by the "Constitution" was the capture of the "Java." When the fighting was done, the "Java" had been shot into a wreck, and one hundred and sixty of her men had been killed or wounded.

**21. The Close of the Campaign.**—Nothing more was done until the next year. President Madison was re-elected, with Elbridge Gerry, of Massachusetts, for vice-president. Congress prepared for carrying on the war by increasing the size of the army and by building new ships of war.

---

## CHAPTER VI.

1813.

**1. Divisions of the Army.**—The plan for continuing the war, in 1813, was still that of invading Canada, and the army was again divided and stationed under three commanders. The army of the West was encamped near the western part of Lake Erie, under the command of General Harrison; the army of the Centre, near Niagara, under General Dearborn, and the army of the North, near Lake Champlain, under General Wade Hampton.

**2. Frenchtown.**—General Harrison determined to re-  
Jan. 22, capture Detroit and all of Michigan that was  
occupied by the British. In January, he sent  
1813. General Winchester to Frenchtown, near the  
river Raisin, where he routed a small British force, and

took possession of the town. A large number of British and Indians, under General Proctor, soon arrived; the Americans were overpowered, and were obliged to surrender. Proctor promised protection for the prisoners, but he marched to Fort Malden with all who could walk. The sick and wounded were left behind. The Indians burned the houses in which they lay, and scalped those who attempted to escape.

**3. Fort Meigs and Fort Stephenson.**—The British and Indians besieged Fort Meigs, on the Maumee, May 18, and Fort Stephenson, on the Sandusky, August 1, but both places were bravely defended by their garrisons. The enemy retreated without doing much damage and without gaining a foothold in the country.

**4. The Army of the Centre.**—In the spring, General Dearborn had also moved for an attack. He April 27. sent a force across Lake Ontario to Toronto, or York, (as it was then called). After the arrival of the Americans at the fort, there was a fearful explosion of gunpowder, which the British had prepared before leaving. Two hundred were killed, but the town fell into General Dearborn's possession.

**5. Fort George.**—From York, the Americans moved against Fort George, at the mouth of the Niagara river; in a short time, it was surrendered to them. The possession of this fort gave them the control of all that part of Canada bordering on the Niagara.

**6. A British Success.**—While General Dearborn remained quietly at Fort George, the British generals stationed troops along the mountain passes, so that he could

**Sackett's Harbor.**—While the Americans were at York and Fort George, the British crossed the Lake, May 29, and made an attack upon Sackett's Harbor, on the New York side. They were entirely unsuccessful.



have no communication with the country beyond them. General Dearborn sent seven hundred men to drive them from a post which they had established near Fort George. Before reaching the place, the Americans were surrounded by British and Indian troops and captured.

**7. General Wilkinson.**—Soon after this, General Dearborn resigned his commission as general, and General Wilkinson was appointed to fill his place.

**8. Captain Lawrence.**—American seamen continued the war upon the ocean. In February, the “Hornet,” commanded by Captain Lawrence, captured the British brig, “Peacock,” after an engagement of fifteen minutes. When Captain Lawrence returned to America, he was promoted to the command of the “Chesapeake.” His vessel was anchored in Boston Harbor (June 1), when the British frigate, “Shannon,” came in sight. The “Chesapeake” sailed out to meet the enemy, and a bloody battle followed. Captain Lawrence was mortally wounded. His dying words to his men were: “*Don’t give up the ship.*” These words have been remembered and repeated in times of danger and trial by many American sailors since then. Nearly all the officers of the “Chesapeake” were killed or wounded, and the British who crowded her decks, pulled down her flag and made prisoners of her crew.

**9. Perry’s Victory.**—The Americans saw that it was necessary for them to have control of Lake Erie and Lake Ontario. Ships were accordingly fitted out and placed under the command of Commodore Perry. The British vessels which opposed him were commanded by Commodore Barclay. In September, the two fleets met in the western part of Lake Erie. Perry had named his flag-ship “*Lawrence*,” in honor of the commander of the “Chesapeake.” A flag with the hero’s dying words, “*Don’t give up the ship*,” was raised upon the mast as the

battle began. All the British guns were turned toward the "*Lawrence*." It was soon disabled. Perry crossed to another vessel, in a small boat, amidst the cheers of his men and the fire from the enemy, and the battle went on. In four hours, every British soldier had surrendered. Commodore Perry wrote to General Harrison, "*We have met the enemy, and they are ours.*"

**10. The Result.**—Soon after this, the British left Detroit. The Indians were afraid to advance, and General Harrison prepared to move forward. After reinforcements reached him, he sent a part of his army across the river at Detroit, and a part in Perry's fleet to Fort Malden. They found the fort deserted. The garrison had heard of the defeat of Commodore Barclay on Lake Erie, and had retreated.

**11. Battle of the Thames.**—The Americans pursued the enemy and overtook them near the Thames Oct. 5, 1813. river. There a battle was fought, which resulted in another victory to the Americans. Besides six hundred prisoners, a number of cannons and a quantity of stores were captured. Tecumseh, who led the Indians, was killed, but the British general managed to escape. In consequence of these successes, Michigan was restored, the Indian confederacy broken, and the war in that part of the country ended.

**12. War with the Creek Indians.**—The Creek Indians, in Georgia and Alabama, had been Aug., 1813. influenced by Tecumseh to attack the whites March, 1814. in that section. In August, they suddenly attacked Fort Mimms, on the Alabama river, about forty miles from Mobile, and killed three hundred persons. The militia of Georgia and Tennessee, commanded by General Andrew Jackson, of Tennessee, marched against them. Five battles were fought, in each of which the Indians were

defeated. After these reverses, the savages gathered their remaining forces, and waited for the white men at "*The Horse-shoe Bend*," or, in their language, Tohopeka, on the Tallapoosa river. At this place, they were completely routed by General Jackson's army, and a treaty of peace was afterward made with them.

**13. The Argus.**—Captain Allen commanded the brig, Aug, 14, "*Argus*," which carried the United States minister to France. After leaving America, Captain Allen captured twenty British vessels, but before his return, he was met by the "*Pelican*," and compelled to surrender.

**14. The Enterprise.**—In September, the United States brig, "*Enterprise*," captured from the enemy the Sept. 13. "*Boxer*," near the coast of Maine.

**15. Commodore Porter.**—Commodore Porter spent the summer on the Atlantic, in command of the frigate, "*Essex*," and many an English trading vessel was compelled to give its cargo to his crew. Afterward he sailed into the Pacific, and there also became famous by taking prizes from the enemy.

**16. The British in Chesapeake Bay.**—A British fleet, under Admiral Cockburn, entered the Chesapeake Bay during the summer of this year and destroyed all the merchant vessels that could be found. Georgetown, Havre-de-Grace, and Fredericktown were burnt. Norfolk was also attacked, but the invaders were driven back from that place. After doing all the mischief he could at Hampton, Cockburn sailed away.

**17. Movements of the Army.**—After regaining Detroit, all plans and efforts were directed toward taking Montreal. The army began to move from Sackett's Harbor. At Williamsburg, on the St. Lawrence, they were attacked by the British. Both sides lost heavily, but gained nothing. There was some disagreement among the officers, and

a council of war decided to give up going to Montreal until the next season. The army went into winter quarters at French Mills, about sixty miles from Plattsburg, where they remained until February, and then went on to Plattsburg, on Lake Champlain.\*

---

## CHAPTER VII.

1814.

**1. Campaign in Canada.**—General Brown had been appointed to command the American Army of the Centre. His forces crossed the river and captured Fort Erie, on the Canada side of Lake Erie. From that point, they marched to Chippewa (chíp-pe-wah). A battle was fought (July 5), and the British were compelled to retreat.

**2. Battle of Lundy's Lane.**—The Americans pursued the enemy to Lake Ontario. Fresh British troops July 25, joined the retreating forces at Lundy's Lane, near 1814. Niagara Falls. This place was the scene of another battle, in which both armies lost heavily, but gained nothing.

**3. Fort Erie** —The Americans then returned to Fort Erie, where they were in turn besieged by the Sept. 17, British. When reinforcements from Plattsburg 1814. arrived, General Brown led out his troops and compelled the enemy to retreat. Two months later, the Americans blew up the fort and left Canada.

**4. Battle of Plattsburg.**—Commodore McDonough

\* **Buffalo.**—All the forces had been needed for the movement against Montreal, and those who guarded Fort George were withdrawn from that place. Before leaving the fort, they burned the town of Newark. The British in return invaded New York and burned Buffalo and several other towns.

Sept. 6, 1814. commanded the American vessels on Lake Champlain. They were anchored near Plattsburg, where General McComb, who had been left as the leading officer, had encamped. In September, General Prevost (pre-vó), the British governor, marched against Plattsburg. After Prevost began the battle on land, Commodore Downie brought his British fleet against McDonough. The most important part of the fighting was done on the lake. After a battle of two hours, the whole British fleet surrendered. Prevost retreated, and the war in that part of the country was ended.

**5. Washington.**—A short time before this battle, English vessels reached the Chesapeake Bay, with Aug., 1814. English troops commanded by General Ross. Nearly all the United States troops had been sent to Canada, and there had been none left to defend the capital. General Winder collected the militia at Blandensburg, below Washington, to check the approach of the enemy. The militia soon began to retreat, and General Ross went on to the city. His soldiers burned the public buildings, among them the new capitol and the president's house. After that, they returned to their ships.

**7. Baltimore.**—The fleet moved toward Baltimore, and the troops landed a few miles from the city. They were again met by a militia force, and during the engagement with them, General Ross was killed. His army did not advance upon the city; but the fleet began to bombard Fort McHenry, which defended the entrance to Baltimore.\*

\***The Star-Spangled Banner.**—Francis Key, of Baltimore, had been sent to one of the British ships upon some military business, and was compelled to remain while the bombardment of Fort McHenry lasted. He watched anxiously the United States flag floating over the fort, and while there composed the well-known poem entitled, "*The Star-spangled Banner.*"



Though the firing continued through a day and night, nothing was gained. The troops returned to their vessels and sailed for some other shore.

**8. The New England States.**—The coast of New England was also visited in the same way. Efforts were made to land at different places, without success. Stonington was bombarded, but the enemy gained no victory there.

**9. The Navy.**—Upon the ocean this year, the Americans lost two of their war ships; but they captured five from the enemy, besides a number of trading vessels. One of the American vessels lost this year was the "Essex," Commodore Porter's ship. It was captured by two British ships, near the western coast of South America.

**10. The Hartford Convention.**—The people of the New England States had been opposed to this war Dec., 1814, with Great Britain from its beginning, and as it continued, their opposition increased. In December of 1814, they sent delegates to a convention, at Hartford, to consult about their rights in the matter. The business of their meeting was transacted secretly, but they sent to Congress a statement of their reasons for objecting to the war, and a request for some change to be made in the constitution.

**11. Battle of New Orleans.**—About the middle of December, Sir Edward Packenham, with twelve thousand British troops, landed nine miles below New Orleans. General Jackson, with about half that number of volunteers and militia, prepared to defend the city. He strengthened the fortifications by throwing up a long line of breastworks. Part of it was built of cotton bales, and a deep ditch was dug in front of it. The American vessels were first attacked, and after some fighting, were compelled to surrender. The enemy then moved toward New Orleans. Many of the men in Jackson's army

were hunters, who lived in the forest beyond, and who were trained marksmen. As the British advanced, nearly every shot from the breastworks laid one of them wounded and bleeding upon the ground. General Packenham was killed, and after several attempts to pass the works, his army was compelled to retreat. They had lost about two thousand six hundred men. The American loss was only *seven killed and six wounded*.

**12. Peace.**—This was the last battle of the war, and while the people were rejoicing over the victory, the glad news was received that a treaty of peace had been signed, at Ghent, in Belgium. Feb. 17, 1815. This treaty had been made before the battle of New Orleans was fought, but the Americans had not heard of it. Its terms were agreed to by Congress February 17, 1815. The war had cost the United States about one hundred millions of dollars, and the lives of thirty thousand men.

**13. War with Algiers.**—About the time that peace was made with Great Britain, the Dey of Algiers began to allow his people to rob and capture American merchant vessels, as the pirates of Tripoli had done. War was declared against Algiers, and Commodore Decatur was sent out with a fleet to the Mediterranean to protect the commerce of the United States. 1815.

He captured two of the Algerian vessels, and compelled the Dey to return the property and prisoners he had taken, and to pay for the damage that had been done.

**14. Indiana.**—In 1816, Indiana, which had been a part of the Northwest Territory, became one of the United States. 1816. At the close of Madison's administration, there were nineteen States in the Union.

## CHAPTER VIII.

## MONROE'S ADMINISTRATION—1817-1825.

**1. Inauguration.**—James Monroe, of Virginia, was elected the fifth president, and was inaugurated March 4, 1817. Daniel D. Tompkins, of New York, became vice-president at the same time. Mr. Monroe served two terms, or eight years.

**2. The most Important Events** of this administration were: 1. The admission of Mississippi. 2. The Seminole war. 3. The admission of Illinois. 4. The completion of the first steamship. 5. The admission of Alabama. 6. The adoption of the Missouri Compromise. 7. The admission of Maine and Missouri. 8. The Florida Purchase. 9. LaFayette's visit.

**3. Mississippi.**—The Mississippi Territory, which included Alabama and Mississippi, and which had been ceded by Georgia to the general government, was divided in 1798, and the western portion was admitted into the Union, as the State of Mississippi, in 1817.

**4. The Seminole War.**—During the same year, the Seminole and Creek Indians began to plunder the settlements in Georgia, along the Florida boundary. General Jackson marched with a thousand militia toward Florida, the next spring, to drive them back. He burned several of their towns and took their crops and cattle. Believing that the Spanish officers were aiding and encouraging the savages, he marched to St. Marks and Pensacola, and, after capturing the forts at both places, sent the Spanish governor with all his forces to Havana.

**5. British Traders.**—Two British traders at St. Marks, Arburthnot and Ambrister, were accused of furnish-

ing the Indians with arms and ammunition for the war. General Jackson ordered his soldiers to arrest them, and they were tried by court-martial and condemned to die.

There were some objections made to General Jackson's course in invading the Spanish territory, but, after all the circumstances were fully known, Congress approved all that he had done.

**6. Illinois** had been first a part of the Northwest Territory, then a part of Indiana Territory, and after 1818. the admission of Indiana as a State, it had been known as the Territory of Illinois. After the war, settlers had moved there in large numbers, and in 1818, it became one of the United States.

**7. The First Ocean Steamer.**—The next year, 1819, the commerce of the world was aided and increased by May, the introduction of steam as a power to move vessels 1819. upon the ocean. The first steamer that crossed the Atlantic was the "Savannah." Though it was built in New York, it belonged to merchants in Savannah, Georgia. Its first voyage was made from the city for which it was named, to Liverpool and St. Petersburg. It was an object of wonder and interest in the various ports that it visited. Before this invention, the trade between different countries depended upon the sails and the winds which carried them. A trip from Europe to America required two or three months; now it can be accomplished in less than ten days.

**8. Alabama.**—By the close of 1819, the people of Alabama wished a State government, and were admitted 1819. into the Union.

**9. Slave States.**—At one time, negro slaves were bought and sold in all the colonies. Each State had decided for itself whether or not its people should own slaves. Those States which kept the slaves were called Slave States, and the others, Free States.

**10. The Missouri Compromise.**—When the question of receiving Missouri as a State came before Congress, it caused a very exciting debate. One party was in favor of its admission, provided it came as a free State; the other thought Congress had no right to interfere with this question, which all the other States had settled for themselves. They finally agreed to admit Maine and Missouri as all the other States had been admitted. At the same time, a bill, introduced by Mr. Clay, called the “Missouri Compromise,” was passed. This bill provided that slavery should be prohibited from any part of the Louisiana Purchase north of the parallel of thirty-six degrees and thirty minutes north latitude, except that included in the State of Missouri. This parallel is the southern boundary of Missouri.

**11. Maine,** which had been a part of Massachusetts, was admitted as a new State in 1820.

**12. Missouri** was enrolled as one of the United States in 1821, the next year, after a proclamation from Aug., the president, prescribing that her Legislature 1821. should pass no laws that would conflict with the constitution of the United States. The name of this State was taken from the great river which winds through it. The word means *Muddy Water*.

**13. Florida and Oregon.**—Trouble with Spain had been expected on account of General Jackson’s invasion of Florida; but arrangements were made Feb., 1821. by which Spain agreed to give up all claim to Florida and to the Territory of Oregon, on the Pacific. In return, the United States were to pay five millions of dollars.

**14. Re-election.**—Mr. Monroe had been elected, during the previous fall, for a second term, and was inaugurated again, March 4, 1821.



**15. The Monroe Doctrine.**—The president advised Congress to recognize the independence of Mexico and the new States of South America, that had been struggling for freedom. In his message, he said the continents of America were “*not to be considered as subjects for future colonization by any European power.*” This principle was called the “Monroe Doctrine.”

**16. LaFayette’s Visit.**—During the last year of President Monroe’s second term, General LaFayette returned to the United States. He visited each of the twenty-four States, and was received everywhere by immense crowds of delighted people.\*

---

## CHAPTER IX.

JOHN QUINCY ADAMS’ ADMINISTRATION—1825-1829.

**1. Inauguration.**—John Quincy Adams, the son of the second president, was elected to succeed Mr. Monroe ; he was inaugurated March 4, 1825. John C. Calhoun, of South Carolina, was vice-president.

**2. Prosperity.**—During the greater part of this term, the country enjoyed peace and plenty. The population had reached ten millions.

**3. The most Important Events** of this administra-

\* He was entertained by the vice-president at his home on Staten Island. A number of distinguished citizens met him there and accompanied him to New York city. The steamboats which carried the party were ornamented with the flags of different nations. At Boston, the fiftieth anniversary of the battle of Bunker Hill was celebrated, and LaFayette laid the corner stone of the monument which was then begun. Congress voted him two hundred thousand dollars and a township of land in Florida. Before leaving America, he spent a short time at Mount Vernon. The old hero wept as he stood at the grave of his friend.

tion were: 1. Trouble with the Creek Indians in Georgia. 2. The building of the first railroad. 3. The completion of the Erie canal. 4. The passage of the tariff laws.

**4. The Creeks.**—Two United States agents made a treaty with the Creek Indians, which gave the government a large extent of territory. This land had already been ceded by Georgia, and embraced the States of Alabama and Mississippi, with a part of Georgia. White men, who lived among the Indians, made them believe that they had been defrauded. These ignorant savages murdered their chief, McIntosh, and several others, because they had signed the treaty; they then asked the United States government to return all that had been given by its terms. This was agreed to, and another treaty was made the next year.

Governor Troup, of Georgia, began to take possession of the land that had been given by the first treaty. He had the boundary between Georgia and Alabama made according to that agreement, and refused to acknowledge the second treaty. Officers in Washington threatened to arrest his surveyor; he, in turn, threatened to resist if force were used, and nothing more was done to hinder him from disposing of the land.

**5. The Erie Canal.**—Before the close of the first year of this administration, the Erie canal, which connects Buffalo, on Lake Erie, with Albany, on the Hudson, was finished. De Witt Clinton, the governor

**Death of Adams and Jefferson.**—The fiftieth anniversary of our independence was celebrated July 4, 1826. The day was also made memorable by the death of John Adams and his friend, Thomas Jefferson. Each had served his country in prominent and honored positions. Each had been foreign minister, vice president and president. Both had signed the Declaration of Independence, and both had been on the committee that framed it. The whole country mourned over the loss of the two aged statesmen, who breathed their last on the same day.

of New York, had been one of the first to propose to the Legislature to cut this canal, and he showed his interest in it by digging the first spadeful of earth with his own hands. The population of the central part of New York increased so rapidly that the villages, which were built along the route of the canal, soon grew into towns.

**6. The First Railroad.**—Two years afterward, a railroad, three miles long, was built from Quincy, 1827. Massachusetts, to the granite quarries. Horses were used to move the cars on this road for two years; at the end of that time, other roads were built, and engines were introduced. The first steam engine for railroads made in America was called the "Best Friend," and was used on the South Carolina Railroad, from Charleston to Hamburg. Before the trial was made, many objections were urged against the use of engines. Some men thought the wheels would spin around upon the track without being able to move the train; others believed that the wool of sheep would be blackened and ruined by the smoke.

**7. The Tariff.**—During the war with England, the people of the United States were unable to buy foreign goods, and they began to manufacture for themselves. At first, they used only coarse homespun. Then machinery began to be used in America. Factories multiplied to supply the wants of the people. They were built mostly in New England, on the banks of the rivers, where the waters rushed rapidly down to the sea. After the treaty of peace, English goods were brought into the country and sold much cheaper than they could be made in America, because there were a great many cotton mills in England and because the workmen there received lower wages. The manufacturers sought help from Congress. Congress passed an act increasing the duties on imported goods. This was done to encourage and protect American manufactures, by

making imported goods sell higher than those made in the United States. This tariff was called a protective tariff, because it protected home manufacture.

The new tariff divided more widely the two great political parties; it was also making a bitter division between two sections of the Union. The Northern States, being more extensively engaged in manufacturing, received most of the advantage from this new law; but the Southern States were nearly altogether agricultural States, and they objected to it because it compelled them to pay higher for their goods. The South thought the tariff bill was unconstitutional, because it bestowed benefits upon one section of the country, while it was injurious to the other.\*

---

## CHAPTER X.

### JACKSON'S ADMINISTRATION—1829-1837.

**1. Inauguration.**—General Andrew Jackson, of Tennessee, who made himself famous in the battle of New Orleans, was inaugurated the seventh president, March 4, 1829. John C. Calhoun, of South Carolina, had been elected the vice-president.

**2. The most Important Events** of this administration were: 1. The Black Hawk War. 2. Resentment in South Carolina against the Tariff Bill. 3. The removal of

\*The feeling against the Tariff Bill was explained by a Southern Senator in this way: A Northern farmer sends one hundred bales of wool to a mill in New England, to be made into cloth, and a Southern planter sends one hundred bales of cotton "to Old England, to be made into calicos." They both bring their cloth and calicos to Charleston the same day. The Northern man is allowed to land his goods free of duty, but the Southern man must leave forty of his bales in the custom house to pay for the privilege of landing his remaining sixty.

the Indians westward. 4. The Florida war. 5. The admission of Arkansas and Michigan.

**3. Black Hawk War.**—The Sacs and Foxes had begun 1832. to give trouble in the Northwest Territory by making attacks upon the white settlers, who were living on the land which these Indians had sold to the United States government. They were led by their chief, "Black Hawk." General Scott commanded the troops that were sent out to drive them back. After two battles, in which the Indians suffered defeat, they were driven to a reservation which had been given them, in what is now the State of Iowa. "Black Hawk" was captured, and the fighting ceased. This warlike chief afterwards made a visit to some of the eastern cities of the United States. This trip taught him that it was useless for the red men to contend with their more powerful white brothers.

**4. Nullification.**—The people of South Carolina 1832. thought each State had the right to decide for itself whether or not it would submit to the new law about taxing imported goods. A convention of delegates met in that State, and passed a resolution called the "*Nullification Ordinance*." It declared that the Tariff Act was a violation of the constitution, because it was intended to protect manufactures, and not to raise a revenue for the general government; for the same reason, the act was pronounced null and void. The resolution also declared that the duties would not be paid in that State.

A proclamation from the president informed the people of South Carolina that they would be compelled to observe the tariff law. South Carolina answered that if the tariff were forced upon her, the State would secede from the Union.

**5. The Compromise.**—Henry Clay offered a resolution



1833. in Congress for the gradual reduction of the tariff. Mr. Calhoun, who had resigned the office of vice-president, and who had been re-elected to the Senate, accepted the compromise as satisfactory to the people of South Carolina. The resolution was adopted by Congress and quiet was restored.

**6. Calhoun,<sup>a</sup> Clay,<sup>b</sup> and Webster,<sup>c</sup>** three eminent statesmen, had entered Congress during Mr. Madison's administration; they spent many years as members of that body. Each engaged in the spirited debates on tariffs and nullification.

<sup>a</sup>**John Caldwell Calhoun** was born in 1782. He was a native of South Carolina; and was at one time a member of the Legislature of that State. Afterward he was elected to a seat in the United States Senate, where his genius and his eloquence made his name a familiar one in every part of the Union. He was a strong advocate of State's rights, and the active part which he took against the tariff question, won for him the name of the "great nullifier." At one time, he held the office of secretary of war. He was also vice-president during part of one term. He is still remembered as one of the greatest statesmen the country has produced. He was a member of the Senate at the time of his death, which occurred in 1850.

<sup>b</sup>**Henry Clay**, the senator who offered the Compromise Bill, was also the pride of the American people. He was born in Virginia, in 1777, but his father removed to Lexington, Kentucky, when he was quite a child. After he had been chosen as a candidate for the presidency, he was told that his Compromise Bill would probably keep him from being elected. He answered, "I would rather be *right* than be president." He died in 1852.

<sup>c</sup>The parents of Daniel Webster lived in Massachusetts, where he was born in 1782; though they were poor, they felt the importance of educating their children. After he left college, he studied law. He was sent to Congress from his native State, and became a prominent leader in the debates that were engaging the attention of the people. He and Mr. Calhoun differed about some questions of "State's Rights," and "Federal Government," and their famous speeches upon these subjects are still read with interest. He also died in 1852, four months after the death of Mr. Clay.

**7. The National Bank.**—A bill for re-chartering 1833. the United States Bank passed both houses of

Congress; but the president refused to sign the bill because he thought it was unconstitutional. Before the charter expired, in 1833, he had all the public money removed from the bank. Many disapproved this act, and were very bitter in their opposition to him. The people soon became divided into two parties. Those who opposed President Jackson called themselves *Whigs*, and those who favored him were the *Democrats*. The democrats held to some of the beliefs of the old republican party. The whigs succeeded the federalists.

**8. Removal of the Indians Westward.**—During the first year of this term, a bill was passed in Congress for moving all of the Indian tribes to a region west of the Mississippi, where they could not endanger the settlements along the frontier, and where they could live in a way that suited the habits of their wild life. The Indian Territory was afterward organized, and a portion given to the Cherokees of Georgia. Still later, the task of removing them was assigned to General Scott.

**9. The Florida War.**—Although a treaty had been 1835. made in Florida with the Seminole Indians, in which they had promised to leave their old homes and hunting grounds, there were some who refused to go. The attempt to compel them to leave Florida brought on war. General Scott commanded the military force sent against them. The first warlike act was the murder of the United States agent, who had put their chief,

**The Cold Saturday.**—One of the most severe winters ever known in this country was that of 1834-5. The entire surface of the Chesapeake Bay was frozen over. February 7 is remembered all through the South as the "*Cold Saturday*." As far south as Augusta, the Savannah river was covered with ice, and at St. Augustine, Fla., the orange trees were killed.

Osceola, in prison, because of his unwillingness to obey the terms of the treaty.

**10. Major Dade.**—About one hundred United States troops, commanded by Major Dade, were marching toward a fort near the Withlacoochee, when they were surprised by a body of Seminoles in ambush. Major Dade and his whole command were killed. Only one man escaped.

Afterward, several battles were fought with Osceola's forces near the Withlacoochee river. The whole country along the borders of Florida was exposed to the horrors of the Indian war. Slaves were captured, many houses were robbed and burned, and their inmates compelled to flee to the forts for safety.

**11. Arkansas** became one of the United States in 1836, and the next year, Michigan was admitted.

---

## CHAPTER XI.

### VAN BUREN'S ADMINISTRATION—1837-1841.

**1. Inauguration.**—Martin Van Buren, of New York, was inaugurated the eighth president, March 4, 1837. He rode to the capital with ex-President Jackson, in a beautiful phaeton made from the wood of the old ship "Constitution."

**2. The Principal Events** of this administration were :  
1. The panic of 1837. 2. The Canadian rebellion. 3. The continuation of the Florida war. 4. The passage of the Sub-Treasury Bill. 5. The beginning of the discussions on the subject of slavery.

**3. The Panic.**—Before the opening of this presidential term, the inhabitants of the United States were in 1837. a very prosperous condition. The war debt had

been paid, and there were nearly forty millions of dollars left in the treasury. This money was loaned among the different States. A great many banks were established throughout the country. They circulated more paper money than they could pay for in gold and silver. A great part of the business was done on credit, and large speculations were made. This state of things had continued two or three years, when failures began among the merchants. The failures in New York city amounted to more than one hundred millions of dollars. The banks suspended specie payments, which means that they were not able to redeem their money. The loss was felt throughout the whole land. Large sums of money which had been borrowed from foreign countries, to pay for the building of railroads and other public works, could not be paid because the revenue was not large enough for all the expenses of the government.

A petition from merchants and bankers was sent to the president, asking him to give a longer time for the payment of the duties for which they had given bonds, and to change the orders which required the duties to be paid in gold or silver.

**4. Congress Called.**—He extended the time for collecting the duties, and called an extra session of Congress to make further arrangements for their relief. At this meeting, an act was passed for issuing ten millions of dollars in treasury notes—that is, paper money. This relieved the people in a degree, but industry and time were required to bring back the prosperity of other days.

**5. The Sub-Treasury Bill.**—President Van Buren brought before Congress a plan by which the revenues should be paid in gold and silver, and by which the public money, instead of being deposited in banks, should be placed in the keeping of officers, to be appointed

in different cities, called sub-treasurers. This was at first opposed in Congress, but finally passed under the name of the Sub-Treasury Bill.

**6. The Canadian Rebellion.**—Some of the people of Canada became dissatisfied with the government of Great Britain, and determined to assert their independence as the United States had done. There were persons in New York, living near the Canada boundary, who sympathized with the Canadians, and went to help them. As the United States was then at peace with Great Britain, a proclamation from the president called them home, and ordered them to have nothing to do with the affairs of Canada. The rebellion was soon crushed, after which the citizens became quiet.

**7. The Florida War** had not yet been brought to a close, and General Jessup was appointed to command the United States forces. Osceola was captured and sent to Fort Moultrie, where he was kept until his death.

**8. The Battle of Okeechobee.**—Colonel Zachary Taylor fought a desperate battle with the Indians, on Christmas day. The Seminoles were on an island in Lake Okeechobee, and Colonel Taylor's men had to pass several hundred yards through water breast deep to reach them. Many of his soldiers were killed, but the Indians were defeated. After this battle, the savages fled to the Everglades. The fighting did not cease until 1842. By that time, so many of the Seminoles had been killed that they were not able longer to resist.

**9. The Abolition of Slavery.**—The question of abolishing the custom of owning negro slaves was discussed in Congress for the first time during this administration. Attention was called to the subject by Ex-President John Quincy Adams, who was then in Congress. He first offered a petition for abolishing slavery in



the District of Columbia, but afterwards his petition embraced the States. Mr. Calhoun prepared a set of resolutions, which showed Mr. Adams' petition to be unconstitutional, and Congress decided the question by adopting Mr. Calhoun's resolutions.

---

## CHAPTER XI.

### THE ADMINISTRATIONS OF HARRISON AND TYLER—1841—1845.

**Inauguration.**—William Henry Harrison, of Ohio, who had commanded the army of the West during the late war with England, was inaugurated March 4, 1841, as the ninth president. John Tyler, of Virginia, was the vice-president. The Whigs had been opposed to the Sub-Treasury Bill, and, although Mr. Van Buren was again a candidate for president, they would not vote for him.

**2. The President's Death.**—President Harrison had filled his office just one month, when a severe attack of pneumonia suddenly ended his life.

**3. Tyler's Inauguration.**—According to the constitution, Mr. Tyler succeeded President Harrison, and was inaugurated the tenth president.

**4. Events.**—The most important events of this administration were: 1. The settlement of the northeastern boundary with Great Britain. 2. The completion of the first line of telegraph. 3. The admission of Iowa and Florida. 4. Diplomatic intercourse with China. 5. The admission of Texas.

**5. The North-Eastern Boundary.**—There had been some difficulties between Maine and New Brunswick about the territory claimed by both governments. The matter was finally settled by a treaty

Aug.,  
1842.

with Great Britain, which decided exactly the line of division between the United States and the provinces belonging to Great Britain on the northeast.

**6. The Telegraph.**—The first line of telegraph was completed between Washington City and Baltimore 1844. in 1844, by Professor Morse, who was the inventor. Congress gave him thirty thousand dollars for the expenses that his work required, and the use of a room in the capitol, while he was getting the wires in working order. His invention proved to be a wonderful success. The first dispatch sent was the announcement that Mr. Polk had been nominated by the Democratic convention for president.

**7. Iowa and Florida** were admitted as States by Congress the next year, (1845.)

**8. China.**—During this administration, agents from the United States government were received in China. This was the first time that people had allowed any intercourse with other nations.

**9. Texas.**—This province had been for a long time a part of Mexico. A large number of the inhabitants were from the United States, and they had become discontented under the government of Mexico. They made a declaration of independence about this time, and prepared to fight for their rights. Henry Smith was elected governor, and General Sam. Houston (héws-ton) commander-in-chief of the army. The soldiers marched under a flag “with a single star,” which had been chosen as an emblem for the new province.

**10. Battles in Texas.**—Fighting began soon after the declaration of independence. In the battle of Gonzales (gon-zah-les), the Texans were victorious. 1835. After the retreat of the Mexicans, Santa Anna, their general, returned and took *Fort Alamo*. Every Texan at the fort was killed. General Houston fell back to San Jacinto. Santa

Anna followed and attacked him. The Mexican army was completely routed, and Santa Anna made a prisoner. He then agreed to acknowledge the independence of Texas.

**11. Annexation of Texas.**—Texas embraced an area one-third the size of the “original thirteen” colonies, and was quite an important acquisition for the United States. After some spirited discussions as to the terms upon which Texas should be admitted to the Union, the matter was decided by a joint resolution of Congress, three days before Mr. Tyler’s term of office expired. The “Lone Star State” then became a member of the Union.

---

## CHAPTER XIII.

### POLK’S ADMINISTRATION—1845–1849.

**1. Inauguration.**—James K. Polk, of Tennessee, was elected the eleventh president, and was inaugurated March 4, 1845. His vice-president was George M. Dallas, of Pennsylvania.

**2. The most Important Events** of his administration were: 1. The settlement of the northwestern boundary and the occupation of Oregon. 2. The war with Mexico. 3. The conquest of California and the discovery of gold. 4. The admission of Wisconsin. 5. The discussion in Congress of the question of slavery in the new territories.

**3. The North-Western Boundary.**—The United States claimed all the country watered by the Columbia river, and the British government claimed the northern part of America along the Pacific coast. They agreed that Oregon should be occupied by the traders of both countries, jointly, for a certain number of years. In 1846, a treaty was made by which the country was divided. This made the 49th parallel the boundary of the United

States. Two years afterward, Oregon was organized into a Territory, from which have since been made the State of Oregon and the Territories of Washington and Idaho.

#### THE MEXICAN WAR—1846—1848.

**4. Causes.**—The war with Mexico was brought about by the annexation of Texas to the United States. The Mexicans still claimed that Texas belonged to them, and they determined to hold it by force of arms.

**5. General Taylor.**—President Polk sent General Zachery Taylor to resist an invasion from Mexico. As Texas had made the Rio Grande river her southwestern boundary, General Taylor marched early the next spring to defend the border. He built Fort Brown on its eastern bank, opposite to the city of Matamoras. The Mexicans crossed the river and he fought with them at Palo Alto. Although their army largely outnumbered General Taylor's, this battle was a victory for the Texans.

**6. Battle of Rasaca de la Palma.**—The enemy retreated to a place near Resaca de la Palma (ra-sáh-May 8, kah-da-lah-pah'l-máh), not more than three miles 1846. from Fort Brown. There General Taylor found them in the afternoon of the next day, and at that place he fought another battle. The Mexicans were again defeated. They retreated at once to the western side of the Rio Grande. General Taylor crossed the river soon afterward and occupied the town of Matamoras.

**7. Plans.**—The plans for carrying on the war were to attack in three different places, for which reason the army was separated into three divisions. General Taylor's command was to march from Matamoras; General Kearney's through New Mexico to California; and General Wool with his division was to march into the northern provinces of Mexico.

**8. Monterey.**—Reinforcements increased General Taylor's army to six thousand five hundred men Sept. 21-24. before he advanced to Monterey (mon-tā-ráy), where nine thousand Mexicans waited to oppose him. There were strong forts in different parts of the town defended by heavy cannon. General Taylor led the attack on one side, while one of his generals advanced through the mountains upon it from another direction. At the end of four days, the place was surrendered to him.

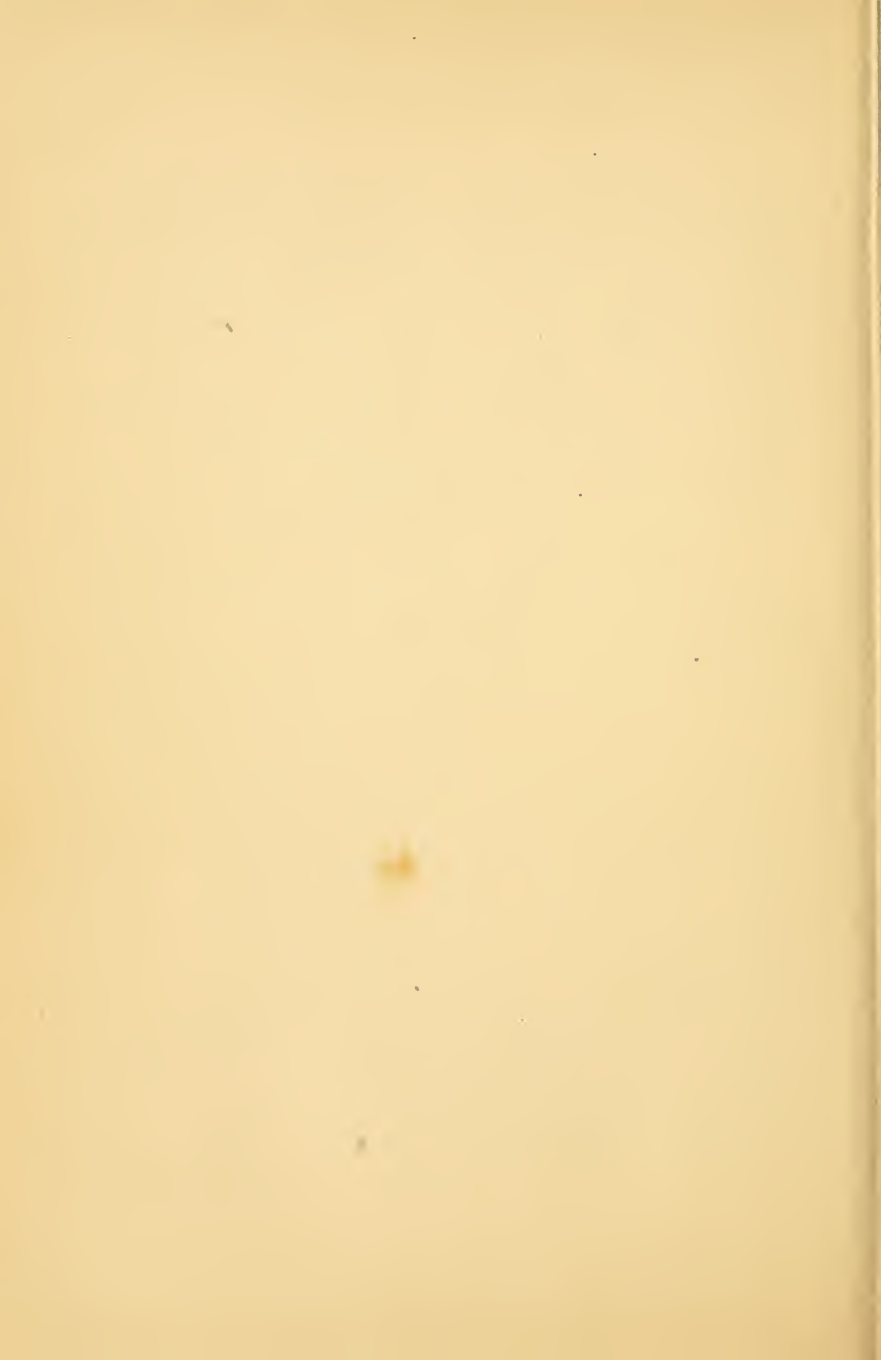
A few weeks later, Saltillo (sahl-téel-yo) was taken by General Taylor's forces, and afterward Tampico fell into the hands of Commodore Perry, who approached with his fleet from the Gulf.

**9. General Kearney** (kár-ne) began his march at Fort Leavenworth, and as he moved forward he Nov., 1846. found but little difficulty in obtaining possession of New Mexico. At Santa Fé, he established a new government. After that was accomplished, he marched on to California.

**10. California.**—John C. Fremont had been sent out before the war to survey the country between the Rocky Mountains and the Pacific Ocean. After arriving in California, which was then a part of Mexico, he obtained permission to spend the winter there; but, in a short time, he was ordered to leave the country. While the governor was preparing to drive him out, he built a fort on the top of a mountain, upon which he hoisted the United States flag. Because of the difficulty of obtaining supplies, he returned to the Pacific coast, and the settlers joined him. Commodore Stockton, of the United States navy, reached Monterey, in California, about that time, and, with his assistance, Fremont soon succeeded in forcing the Mexicans into the southern part of the country. Soon after this, California declared itself an independent State.







1847.

**11. Another Campaign.**—The United States generals knew that the capture of Vera Cruz, on the Gulf of Mexico, would be an important victory for them; they also believed that the possession of the capital of Mexico would close the war. General Scott was sent with an army against Vera Cruz, with instructions to proceed from that place to the city of Mexico. A large part of General Taylor's force was ordered to reinforce him. After this change, General Scott was given the chief command in Mexico.

**12. Buena Vista.**—Santa Anna, who was again in command of the Mexican forces, brought an army of twenty thousand men to attack General Taylor at Saltillo. After reinforcing General Scott, General Taylor was very much weakened, but he stationed his troops in a narrow pass in the mountains at Buena Vista (bw'ā-nah ve'es-tah), eleven miles from Saltillo, and waited for the enemy. Colonel Jefferson Davis commanded a Mississippi regiment and took a prominent part in the battle fought there. His regiment, with the help of Bragg's and Sherman's artillery, at last compelled the enemy to retreat. Just before the close of the battle, General Taylor encouraged the men by calling to their commander, "*Give them a little more grape, Captain Bragg!*" The victory of Buena Vista so broke the strength of the Mexicans, that General Scott was able to move all his army against Vera Cruz and the City of Mexico.

**13. Vera Cruz.**—General Scott landed twelve thousand men near Vera Cruz, which was defended by the strongest castle in Mexico. When his preparations were completed, he began a destructive fire upon the city from the batteries which he had erected upon the land and from his fleet in the harbor.

This was continued nearly nine days. At the end of that time, the Mexicans consented to surrender to him the town and the castle.

**14. Cerro Gordo.**—General Scott's next movement was toward the city of Mexico. On the way, he  
April 18. found Santa Anna's army of twelve thousand men strongly fortified in a rocky gap in the mountains. The United States engineers, *R. E. Lee* and *Gustave Beauregard*, opened a road through the mountains, by which their forces were led beyond the enemy. The Mexicans were surprised, and a great victory was gained. Many of them fled. Santa Anna, in his haste, left his wooden leg, which was brought to the United States, and dressed in a handsome boot for exhibition.

**15. The City of Mexico** was defended by forts and castles along the roads that led to it, and at some of  
Sept. 12. them General Scott found the enemy in large numbers. Battles were fought at Cherubusco, at the Molino del Rey, and at Chapultepec. September 12, General Scott's army fought all day very near the capital. When night came, the Mexican soldiers left the city, and the next morning his army marched in and took possession.

**16. The Treaty of Guadalupe Hidalgo.**—The war  
February 2, soon came to an end after these victories, and  
1848. a treaty of peace was made, which is known as the treaty of Guadalupe Hidalgo (*gwa-dah-lôô-pa he-dah'l-go*), from the place at which it was made. It gave New Mexico and California to the United States, which with Texas amounted to more than six hundred and thirty thousand square miles. By its terms, our government paid fifteen millions of dollars, and became responsible for all the debts which Mexico owed to citizens of the United States—the amount of the debts being about three millions.

This war cost the United States about twenty-five thousand men and one hundred and sixty millions of dollars.

**17. Gold in California.**—About the time that the war in Mexico closed, gold was discovered on the 1848. Sacramento river in California. While at work, building a sawmill, a man by the name of Mercer noticed in the sand below the dam a shining substance which he found to be gold. He and the owner of the mill tried to keep the discovery a secret, but the news spread rapidly through California, and then eastwardly to the Atlantic States. Crowds of men, everywhere, left their homes to dig gold in California. Two years after this discovery, the population of San Francisco had increased to one hundred thousand. Immense fortunes were made, and it has been estimated that, by the year 1870, one thousand millions of dollars in gold were taken from the mines of California.

**18. The Wilmot Proviso.**—A short time after war was declared between Mexico and the United States, August, 1846. the president, in a message to Congress, asked for an appropriation of three millions of dollars, that he might make a treaty with Mexico for a portion of territory which did not then belong to Texas. While a bill for granting this money was before Congress, Mr. Wilmot, of Pennsylvania, added an amendment, which excluded slavery from any Territory that should in future be annexed to the United States. This amendment was called the "*Wilmot Proviso*." It produced great excitement in Congress, and among the people everywhere. The Senate voted against it and it was lost. Those who favored this Proviso were called "*Free Soilers*."

**19. Wisconsin.**—During the excited discussions on this subject, Wisconsin was admitted as the thirtieth 1848. State of the Union.



## CHAPTER XIV.

## ADMINISTRATIONS OF TAYLOR AND FILLMORE—1849–1853.

**1. Inauguration.**—General Zachary Taylor, who had become so distinguished in the Mexican war, was elected as the Whig candidate, and was inaugurated the twelfth president, Monday, March 5, 1849. He was a native of Virginia, but he was at that time a citizen of Louisiana. Millard Fillmore, of New York, was elected vice-president.

**2. The Most Important Events** of this term were: 1. The introduction of Mr. Clay's Compromise. 2. The admission of California.

**3. California.**—The wonderful discoveries of gold made the Territories along the Pacific grow in value and importance. A part of California lay south of the parallel  $36^{\circ} 30'$ , which had been agreed upon as the dividing line between the free Territories and the slave States. The Northern States wanted slavery excluded from the gold region, and the Southerners thought they ought to have the right to take their slaves with them to the mines. Congress was the scene of long and exciting debates upon this question between the North and South. The subject became one of intense interest to all classes. The press of both sections kept it before the people. The population of the mining region had increased so rapidly that, in 1849, California asked to be admitted as a State. Before sending this petition to Congress, the people there had adopted a constitution which would not allow slavery.

**4. The Five Bleeding Wounds.**—"The Great Trio," Calhoun, Clay and Webster, were again members of Congress, in 1850, and each took a prominent part in the debates that were then interesting the people.

The trouble about the admission of California had not been ended, when New Mexico and Utah sent a request to become members of the Union. At the same time, Texas set up a claim to a part of New Mexico. A movement had also been made to abolish the slave trade in the District of Columbia. The slave-holders were asking the right to arrest and bring back their slaves who ran away to the free States. Mr. Clay called these questions, which were then before Congress, "*the five bleeding wounds.*"

**5. The Compromise or Omnibus Bill.** Mr. Clay offered a set of resolutions by which he hoped each of these "bleeding wounds" could be healed. It was called the "*Omnibus Bill*" because it finally came before Congress in the shape of one bill to cover all the difficulties under discussion. It provided: first, that California should be admitted according to her constitution; second, that New Mexico and Utah should be organized into Territories and left to decide the question of slavery for themselves; third, that Texas should be paid ten millions of dollars for its claim on New Mexico, and a boundary be made; fourth, that the slave trade should be abolished in the District of Columbia; fifth, that slaves who had left their masters should be arrested in the free States and returned to their owners. This last law was called the "*Fugitive Slave Law.*"

**6. Objections.**—Each party found something to oppose in this Bill. The South contended that Congress ought to have nothing to do with slavery in the Territories, and that when States were admitted, the question should be left for them to decide. The people of the slave States said they were willing to divide the public land with the North, but they were not willing to give up all right to it, because they had done equally as much as any other section to gain its possession, both by enlisting men in the army and by contributing money.

**7. Death of Mr. Calhoun.**—During this session of March 31, Congress, Mr. Calhoun's health had become so feeble that he was unable to deliver his speech on the Compromise. It was read by one of the 1850. Senators from Virginia. His death occurred a few weeks afterward.

**8. Death of President Taylor.**—In July of this year, July 9, President Taylor died in Washington, after a short illness. He was succeeded by the vice-president, 1850. Millard Fillmore.

**9. The Compromise Bill Passed.**—Continued and bitter debates in Congress claimed the attention of 1850. both sections. At last, Mr. Clay's Bill was changed so that Utah could be admitted to the Union "with or without slavery," as its people should prefer. The other parts of the bill were afterward adopted separately.

**10. California.**—After the settlement of the question of 1850. slavery in the Territories, California was received as one of the States of the Union, in 1850.

**11. Death of Clay and Webster.**—Near the close of this administration, another sorrow and another 1852. heavy loss came to the people of America in the death of two of their greatest statesmen—Clay and Webster.

---

## CHAPTER XV.

PIERCE'S ADMINISTRATION—1853–1857.

**1. Inauguration.**—Franklin Pierce, of New Hampshire, was elected as the Democratic candidate, and was inaugurated the fourteenth president, March 4, 1853. William R. King, of Alabama, was elected vice-president.

**2. The Principal Events** of this administration were:

1. The settlement of the boundary of Texas and the purchase of Arizona. 2. The resistance of the Fugitive Slave Law. 3. The passage of the Kansas and Nebraska Bill.

**3. The Gadsden Purchase.**—A short time after the beginning of this term, a treaty was made with Mexico, by which the boundary of the western side was extended much farther south. Twenty millions of dollars were paid to Mexico, and Arizona became the property of the United States. This was called the "*Gadsden Purchase*." Besides gaining new territory in this way, the disputed question of boundary with Mexico was decided.

**4. The Fugitive Slave Law** was the cause of further trouble in some of the Northern States. A slave was taken by force from the government officers in Syracuse, New York. Two others were taken in the same way in Boston, Massachusetts, where the military had to be called out to assist the officers. The Legislatures of some of the States passed laws called "*Personal Liberty Bills*," which required a trial by jury before a slave could be returned to his owner. The Southerners found that it cost more money and trouble to recover fugitive slaves than they were worth, because they were of comparatively little value as laborers after they returned.

**5. The Kansas and Nebraska Bill.**—Senator Douglas, of Illinois, introduced a bill in Congress for organizing the Territory of Nebraska, which allowed the people of that Territory to decide the question of slavery for themselves. It was afterward changed so as to embrace both Kansas and Nebraska. These Territories were within the region purchased from Louisiana and north of latitude  $36^{\circ} 30'$ . If Kansas and Nebraska were made slave States, the South would gain four Senators in Congress, that is, two from each State, and also their representatives, which

would add greatly to its power. The North, too, saw the advantage if slavery were banished from these Territories. Each section began to work for its own interests. Intense excitement was again aroused everywhere. After much opposition from the anti-slavery party, the bill was finally passed according to the decision made in 1850, that Congress should not interfere in the matter of slavery.

**6. Emigrant-Aid Societies.**—In order to make these new Territories free States, the anti-slavery party saw that they must be settled by persons who opposed slavery, and they organized societies in the North for raising money to help emigrants who would go to Kansas and Nebraska. Some of the people of the South moved to Kansas with their slaves.

**7. Kansas War.**—When the first settlements were made, the emigrants from the two sections, North and South, began to hate each other. This ill-will soon led to fighting and bloodshed. The trouble grew to such proportions that it has been called the “Kansas War.” Arms were provided by the Northern societies for the emigrants they had sent. In Missouri, “Blue Lodges” were organized, and farther west, the “Jayhawkers” carried their guns to fight for the slaveholders. The feeling became so bitter that, at one time, each party had its own constitution and its own capital.

**8. Know-nothings.**—About this time, a new party was secretly organized under the name of the American Party, which had many members all over the country. Its object was to keep foreigners and Roman Catholics from holding office in the government. On account of their secrecy, they were called “Know-nothings.”

**9. Three Parties.**—There were now three political parties in the United States—the Democrats, the Americans, and the Anti-slavery men or Republicans. The Democrats declared themselves in favor of allowing Congress to have



nothing to do with slavery in the Territories, and the election of their candidate, James Buchanan, showed that the majority of the people were satisfied with that decision.

**10. Negotiations with Japan.**—The people of Japan had always kept the vessels of foreign nations away from their shores; but before the close of this administration, Commodore Perry, who had been sent out for that purpose, succeeded in making a treaty with that nation, by which its ports were opened to strangers. This treaty, and that made with China about ten years before, opened to the influences of Christianity and civilization an immense territory, which had lain for ages under the darkness of heathenism.

---

## CHAPTER XVI.

### BUCHANAN'S ADMINISTRATION—1857–1861.

**1. Inauguration.**—James Buchanan, of Pennsylvania, was inaugurated the fifteenth president, March 4, 1857. John C. Breckinridge, of Kentucky, had been elected vice-president.

**2. The Principal Events** of this term were: 1. Trouble in Utah and Kansas; 2. The decision of the Supreme Court in the Dred Scott case; 3. The admission of Minnesota; 4. The completion of the Ocean Telegraph; 5. The admission of Oregon; 6. John Brown's raid; 7. The secession of the Southern States; 8. The formation of the Southern Confederacy; 9. The admission of Kansas.

**3. The Mormons** were the first white settlers in Utah. Joseph Smith, of Vermont, was the founder of the sect. He pretended to have seen an angel who told him that God had something to tell him, that it had been written out for

him, and that it could be found by digging in the earth in a certain place. He afterward declared that he had dug up from the earth plates of gold, upon which were written the laws of his religion. He called it the *Book of Mormons*. According to the laws of this book, a man might have as many wives as he wished. Brigham Young became the prophet after Smith's death, and he was made governor. Some difficulties between Brigham Young and officers sent out by the United States induced the president to send General Albert Sidney Johnston with troops to Utah to keep order. He soon succeeded in putting an end to the trouble, (1857.)

**4. The Dred Scott Case.**—Two negroes, Dred Scott and his wife, were taken by their masters to Illinois, and then to Missouri. They claimed their freedom, because their owner had taken them north of the "*Compromise Line*," 36° 30'. The case was taken before the Supreme Court of the United States. The court decided that, as Congress had no right to make such a law, it could not be enforced; and that the constitution allowed any citizen to go into any Territory with his slaves or any other property, with the promise of protection.

**5. Minnesota** became one of the States in 1858.

**6. The Atlantic Cable** was landed in America the same year. The first messages sent were from 1858. Queen Victoria and President Buchanan.

**7. Oregon** was enrolled as one of the United States the next year, (1859.)

**8. John Brown's Raid.**—John Brown, an old man who had taken a prominent part in the war Oct. 17, 1859, in Kansas, began, in October, 1859, to carry out his plans for freeing the slaves. He collected a party of men, who had been armed for the purpose, and led them to Harper's Ferry in Virginia. There he took

possession of the arsenal, intending to arm the slaves for an insurrection in Virginia. His intention was to carry it onward through the South. The negroes did not join him as he expected they would. The government sent a body of troops, commanded by Colonel R. E. Lee, against him. Several of John Brown's men in the arsenal were killed, and others wounded before they would consent to surrender. With the exception of a few who escaped, all were captured. He and six of the men with him were afterward tried, condemned, and hung, as violators of the laws of Virginia.

**9. Four Parties and Four Candidates.**—The country had become divided into four political parties, and each party nominated its own candidate for president. John C. Breckinridge, of Kentucky, was brought forward by the Southern Democrats; Stephen A. Douglas, of Illinois, by the Democrats of the North; John Bell, of Tennessee, by the Americans or Know-nothings; and Abraham Lincoln, of Illinois, by the Republicans.

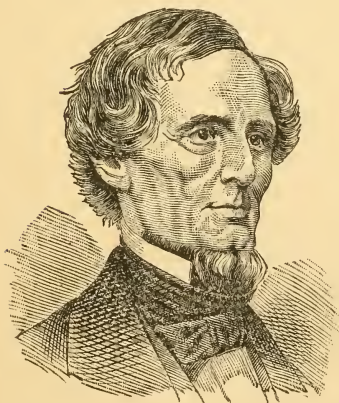
**10. Abraham Lincoln** was elected, though none of the Southern States had voted for him; their votes had been divided among the other candidates.\*

\*Abraham Lincoln was born in Kentucky, in 1809, but before he was old enough to remember much about his home there, his father moved to the frontiers of Indiana. His parents were plain, uneducated people, and he grew up as a farmer boy, ploughing corn and splitting rails. His mother taught him to read and write. When he was twenty-one, he began work for himself—splitting wood by the month, hiring as a laborer on a flat boat, as a clerk in a country store, as postmaster, or engaging in any other kind of employment that he could find. He managed to study law by borrowing books from a lawyer at night, and returning them in the morning. After he was admitted to the bar, he showed a taste for politics. First, he became a member of the Legislature of Illinois, then he was elected to Congress, and, finally, he received the nomination for president. The most noted event of his administration was the Emancipation Proclamation. He won the hearts of the people among whom he lived, and many honors have been paid to his memory. He is remembered as the "Martyred President."

**11. Secession.**—A convention was called by the people of South Carolina, in which a resolution was passed known as the Ordinance of Secession. This ordinance declared “the Union between the State of South Carolina and the other States united with her under the compact, entitled the Constitution of the United States,” dissolved.

**12. Six Other States.**—By the first of February, six other States had followed South Carolina’s example. Mississippi, Alabama, Georgia, Louisiana, and Texas had declared themselves no longer members of the Union.

**13. The Southern Confederacy.**—Delegates were immediately elected and sent by these States to Montgomery, Alabama, where another Union, under another Constitution, was formed. To



JEFFERSON DAVIS.

this new Union was given the name of “*The Confederate States of America*.” The constitution was very much like that of the United States. A provisional government was organized for one year, until all of its laws could be submitted to the people. Jefferson Davis,<sup>b</sup> of Mississippi, was elected president, and Alexander H. Stephens,<sup>c</sup> of Georgia, vice-president.

**14. Inauguration.**—Jef-

<sup>b</sup>Jefferson Davis was born in what is now Todd county, Kentucky, June 3, 1808. A few years after his birth, his father removed to the Territory of Mississippi, and the boy grew up a citizen of that State. At the age of sixteen, he entered the Military Academy at West Point. After his graduation, he entered service with the United States troops in the

person Davis was inaugurated president, in Montgomery, Alabama, February 18, 1861, for a term of one year.

**15. Kansas**, which had been the cause and the scene of so much trouble, entered the Union as a State, in 1861.

**16. The Peace Congress.**—There were many who loved the Union, and who would have been glad to find some honorable way for the return of the seceded States. Virginia proposed that a Peace Con-

West, where the Indians had become unfriendly and troublesome. Nearly five years had been passed upon the frontier, when he resigned his commission and returned home. There he married a daughter of Colonel Zachary Taylor, and engaged in the cultivation of cotton.

Ten years later, he was elected to Congress as a representative from Mississippi. When a call was made for volunteers in the war with Mexico, he resigned his seat in Congress and offered his sword for his country's service. He went as Colonel of the First Mississippi Regiment, and won distinction as a brave officer under General Taylor's leadership.

After his return from Mexico, he was elected to the United States Senate, where he became an able champion of State's Rights. When the Southern States seceded from the Union, he was chosen president of the Confederacy, which office he continued to fill until the close of the war.

°Alexander Hamilton Stephens was born September 11, 1812, near Crawfordville, Ga. His early education was obtained by attending, at irregular intervals, the "old field school," taught in the neighborhood of his home. After his father's death, a wealthy gentleman, who had noticed his studious habits, proposed to send him to a larger school in the town of Washington, Wilkes county. This was done with the intention of preparing him for the ministry, though nothing was said to him of the plan until after he had consented to the arrangement. His remarkable progress in study was soon reported by his teacher, and he was continued in school under the care of the Georgia Educational Society.

From Washington, he went to the State University, in Athens, Ga., where he remained until his graduation. Of his life there, he has said: "I was never absent from roll-call without a good cause; was never fined; and to the best of my knowledge, never had a demerit against me." He had begun to feel less and less inclined to enter the work of the ministry, and, after two years spent in college, he decided to return the money



gress of delegates from all the States should meet in Washington. Seven Southern States were represented and thirteen Northern States; the delegates met, according to this call, in February, but nothing could be done.

**17. Peace Commissioners.**—The Confederate government sent three commissioners to Washington to make a settlement with the United States government, to offer to pay off its part of the public debt, and to demand its share of the public property. President Buchanan would not receive them.

Before this, the Confederate government had taken possession of all the forts and arsenals within its boundaries, except Fort Sumter, at Charleston, South Carolina, Fort Pickens, on Santa Rosa Island, near Pensacola, Florida, and the forts on the islands near the southern coast of Florida. No effort had been made to retake them.

which had been expended upon his education and pay his own way for the rest of the time. This his uncle, who was the guardian of his small property, allowed him to do. He had grown up a frail, slender boy, "his dark, brilliant eyes glowing from a pale face that had never known and never would know the hue of health."

His public life began with his election to the Georgia Legislature, in 1836. Previous to that time, he had been admitted to the bar, and was engaged in the practice of law. At the age of thirty-one, he went to Congress as a representative from Georgia. He continued to take a prominent part in the debates which occupied the attention of that body, until 1858. He served as vice-president of the Confederacy from the beginning until the close of the war. After the surrender of the Southern armies, Mr. Stephens was captured in his home by Federal soldiers and sent as a prisoner to Fort Warren, in Boston harbor. He was released on parole after an imprisonment of five months. When he returned to Georgia, he wrote his "History of the War between the States," and "History of the United States." In 1873, he was again elected a representative in Congress. He was governor of Georgia at the time of his death, in 1883.

REVIEW OF IMPORTANT EVENTS FROM 1789.

WASHINGTON'S ADMINISTRATION.

- 1789 General Washington was inaugurated president.
- 1790 Trouble began with the Indians of the Northwest.
- 1792 The Whiskey Insurrection was suppressed.
- 1793 Trouble began with France.

ADAMS' ADMINISTRATION.

- 1799 General Washington died.
- 1800 The difficulties with France were ended by treaty.  
The Capital was changed to Washington City.

JEFFERSON'S ADMINISTRATION.

- 1801 War began with Tripoli.
- 1803 The Louisiana Purchase was made.
- 1804 The Columbia River was explored.
- 1805 The war with Tripoli ended.
- 1806 England began to exercise the right of search.
- 1807 The battle between the "Chesapeake" and the "Leopard."  
Congress passed the Embargo Act.  
Robert Fulton completed the first steamboat.

TOPICS FOR REVIEW.

1. State the important events of Washington's administration.
2. Give the early history of Kentucky.
3. Give an account of the difficulties with France.
4. What were the principal events of Adams' administration?
5. What foreign troubles arose during this term?
6. What events marked Mr. Jefferson's administration?
7. State the facts in relation to the Louisiana purchase.
8. Write the history of the war with Tripoli.
9. Give an account of the invention of the steamboat.

MADISON'S ADMINISTRATION—1809.

- 1811 The Battle of Tippecanoe.  
The Battle between the "President" and the "Little Belt."  
The United States declared war with Great Britain.
- 1812 General Hull invaded Canada, returned and surrendered Detroit.  
Naval victories were gained by the "Essex," the "Constitution," the "Wasp" and the "United States."
- 1813 Frenchtown was captured and surrendered by General Harrison.  
General Dearborn's forces captured Toronto and Fort George.  
Captain Lawrence captured the "Peacock" and was killed on board the "Chesapeake."  
Commodore Perry gained a victory on Lake Erie.

- 1813 The Battle of the Thames.  
 War began with the Creek Indians in Georgia and Alabama.  
 The "Argus" was captured by the British.  
 Georgetown, Havre de Grace and Fredericktown were burned  
 by the British.
- 1814 The Battle of Lundy's Lane.  
 The Battle of Plattsburg.  
 General Ross burned the public buildings in Washington.  
 Fort McHenry, near Baltimore, was bombarded.
- 1815 The Hartford Convention met.  
 The Battle of New Orleans.  
 The treaty of peace was signed.  
 War with Algiers began.

## TOPICS FOR REVIEW.

1. What were the principal events of Madison's administration?
2. Name the causes of the War of 1812.
3. Give the history of this war during 1812.
4. Give an account of the naval battles in 1812.
5. What was accomplished by the armies in 1813?
6. What occurred upon the water during the same year?
7. Describe the campaign of 1814.
8. Give an account of the Hartford Convention.
9. Describe the Battle of New Orleans.
10. Tell what you know of the war with Algiers.

## MONROE'S ADMINISTRATION—1817.

- 1818 The Seminole War began in Florida.  
 1819 The first steamship was completed.  
 1820 Congress passed the Missouri Compromise Bill.  
 1821 Florida and Oregon were ceded by Spain.  
 1824 General LaFayette visited the United States.

## JOHN QUINCY ADAMS' ADMINISTRATION—1825.

- 1825 The Creek Indians made trouble about their treaty.  
 The Erie Canal was finished.  
 1826 John Adams and Thomas Jefferson died.  
 1827 The first railroad was built.

## JACKSON'S ADMINISTRATION—1829.

- 1832 The Black Hawk War began.  
 South Carolina passed the Ordinance of Nullification.  
 1833 A compromise was made by reducing the Tariff.  
 President Jackson vetoed the bill for re-chartering the national  
 bank.  
 1835 Fighting began in Texas.

## TOPICS FOR REVIEW.

1. Name the important events of Monroe's administration.
2. Give the history of the Seminole War.
3. Give an account of the first steamship.
4. Why were the Southern States slave States?
5. Explain the "Missouri Compromise."
6. What made Florida and Oregon the property of the United States?
7. Give an account of General LaFayette's visit to the United States.
8. What were the important events of John Quincy Adams' administration?
9. Where were the first railroads built in this country?
10. Explain the Tariff Law.
11. State the principal events of Jackson's administration.
12. Give the history of Nullification in South Carolina.
13. Write a sketch of the life of Calhoun, of Clay, and of Webster.

## MARTIN VAN BUREN'S ADMINISTRATION—1837.

- |      |  |
|------|--|
| 1837 | A financial panic began.<br>The question of abolishing slavery was discussed in Congress.<br>The Battle of Okeechobee, in Florida.   |
| 1840 | Congress passed the Sub-Treasury Bill.   |
| 1841 | President Harrison died.   |
| 1842 | The northeastern boundary was settled.   |
| 1844 | The first line of telegraph was completed.   |
| 1845 | Communications were begun with China.  |
| 1846 | The northwestern boundary between the United States and Great Britain was settled.<br>The Mexican War began.<br>The Wilmot Proviso was passed by Congress.<br>The battles of Palo Alto, Resaca de la Palma and Monterey.<br>The conquest of California was effected. |
| 1847 | The battle of Buena Vista and the bombardment of Vera Cruz.<br>The battle of Cerro Gordo, and the capture of the city of Mexico.   |
| 1848 | The war closed by a treaty of peace.<br>Gold was discovered in California.   |

## TOPICS FOR REVIEW.

1. What were the chief events of Van Buren's administration?
2. Give an account of the panic of 1837.
3. Name the principal events of the administrations of Harrison and Tyler.
4. In what way was the northeastern boundary settled?
5. What is the history of the telegraph?
6. Give the important events of Polk's administration.
7. How was the northwestern boundary settled?

8. State the causes of the Mexican War.
9. Name the battles and marches of 1846.
10. Write the history of this war during the next year.
11. What was the "Wilmot Proviso?"

## TAYLOR'S ADMINISTRATION—1849.

- 1850 Mr. Calhoun and President Taylor died.  
 Mr. Clay's Compromise or Omnibus Bill was passed.
- 1852 Mr. Clay and Mr. Webster died.

## PIERCE'S ADMINISTRATION—1853.

- 1853 Personal Liberty Bills were passed in some of the Northern States.
- 1854 The Kansas and Nebraska Bill was passed by Congress.  
 Emigrant-Aid Societies were organized in the North.  
 The Kansas War began.  
 Negotiations were opened with Japan.

## BUCHANAN'S ADMINISTRATION—1857.

- 1857 Troops were sent to keep order among the Mormons.
- 1858 The Atlantic telegraph cable was landed in America.
- 1859 John Brown attempted to raise an insurrection in Virginia.
- 1860 Abraham Lincoln was elected president.  
 South Carolina passed the Ordinance of Secession.  
 Other States seceded.
- 1861 The Southern Confederacy was formed.  
 Jefferson Davis was inaugurated president.  
 A Peace Congress met in Washington.

## TOPICS FOR REVIEW.

1. Name the most important events of the administrations of Taylor and Fillmore.
2. Give the history of California.
3. State the important events of Pierce's administration.
4. What were Fugitive Slave Laws and Personal Liberty Bills?
5. Tell the object of the Emigrant-Aid Societies.
6. Tell something of the Kansas War.
7. What were the events of Buchanan's administration?
8. Give an account of the John Brown Raid.
9. Name the four candidates for president in 1860.
10. What was the object of the Peace Congress?

## BOOKS OF REFERENCE.

Allen's "Account of Lewis and Clarke's Expedition;" Irving's "Astoria;" Lives of Jefferson, Adams and Madison; Parton's "Life of Aaron Burr" and "Life of Andrew Jackson;" Cooper's "History of the United States Navy;" Mackenzie's "Life of Commodore Perry;" Mansfield's "Mexican War," and "Life and Services of Lieutenant-General Scott;" Benton's "Thirty Years View;" Lives of Clay, Calhoun, and Webster.



SECTION VI.  
THE WAR BETWEEN THE STATES.  
CHAPTER I.

LINCOLN'S ADMINISTRATION—1861-1865.

**1. Inauguration.**—Abraham Lincoln, of Illinois, was inaugurated the sixteenth president March 4, 1861. Hannibal Hamlin had been elected the vice-president. In his address, at that time, the president declared that his principal object would be to preserve the *Union*, and that he would continue to collect the public revenues at the ports of the seceded States, also that he would "hold, occupy and possess" the forts and all the United States property in those States.



ABRAHAM LINCOLN.

**2. Fort Sumter.**—Governor Pickens, of South Carolina, received notice April 8, that an armed fleet was on its way to "strengthen and provision" 1861. Fort Sumter. This was considered "a declaration of war against the Confederate States." Major Anderson then commanded a garrison of eighty men at the fort.

**3. General Beauregard.**—About six thousand men,

who had volunteered to defend Charleston, had been placed under the command of General Gustave Beauregard (bo'-regard). He received orders from the authorities at Montgomery "to demand at once the evacuation" of Fort Sumter, "and if this should be refused, to proceed immediately to reduce it." When this demand was made, Major Anderson replied, in writing, that he would not leave the fort.

**4. The Bombardment.**—The fleet was nearing Charleston, and General Beauregard's forces would soon be exposed to firing from the fleet and from Sumter. He informed Major Anderson of the hour at which the bombardment would begin. At half-past four on the morning of April 12, the firing from Charleston commenced, and the guns from Sumter answered. Although the fleet was in sight, it did nothing.

**5. The Fall of Sumter.**—After the bombardment had continued thirty-two hours, Major Anderson consented to surrender. The whole garrison was allowed to march out from the fort; each man took with him all that he claimed as his own. Not a single life had been lost in this engagement, although the terrible firing had lasted so long.

**6. The Result.**—When Sumter fell, the news spread quickly all over the country, and the wildest excitement followed it. At the North, large numbers of the Democrats and of the American party united with the Republicans in a determination to preserve the Union. The United States flag, with its stars and stripes, was raised above private dwellings as well as public buildings, and cockades of the national colors were placed upon children to show the love of the people for the Union. Mr. Lincoln immediately published a proclamation, calling for seventy-five thousand volunteers to crush the rebellion, and for an extra session of Congress to meet in July.

**7. Four Other States Secede.**—Four other States, Virginia, Arkansas, North Carolina and Tennessee, decided, at once, when Mr. Lincoln made this call for troops, to leave the Union and join the Confederacy.

---

## CHAPTER II.

### THE FIRST YEAR OF THE CIVIL WAR—1861.

**1. Causes of the War South.**—The people of the South felt that they had been unjustly treated about the settlement of the Territories. When their negroes ran away into the free States, they found it almost impossible to obtain possession of them again, although the fugitive slave laws passed by Congress made it their privilege to reclaim them. A president had been elected who had not received a single vote in the Southern States, but had been put in office by the Republicans, who wanted to destroy slavery, an institution which the South believed the constitution allowed. They feared that other rights would be no longer respected, that it would all end in giving the whole power of the government to Congress, and in taking from the States their separate rights. These fears led them to believe that their only safety was in separating from the United States. They had voluntarily entered the Union as separate colonies; and, as States, they felt that they had the right to withdraw. The attempt to keep them in the Union by force brought on the war.

**2. Causes of the War North.**—Many of the people of the North thought it was a cruel and a sinful thing to own slaves, and they wanted to put a stop to negro slavery in the South. They said the States had no right to withdraw from the Union, and, when the citizens of the seceded

States took up arms to prevent being compelled to accept these measures, they were called *rebels*. The Northern army was called the Union or Federal army, because it fought for the preservation of the Union.

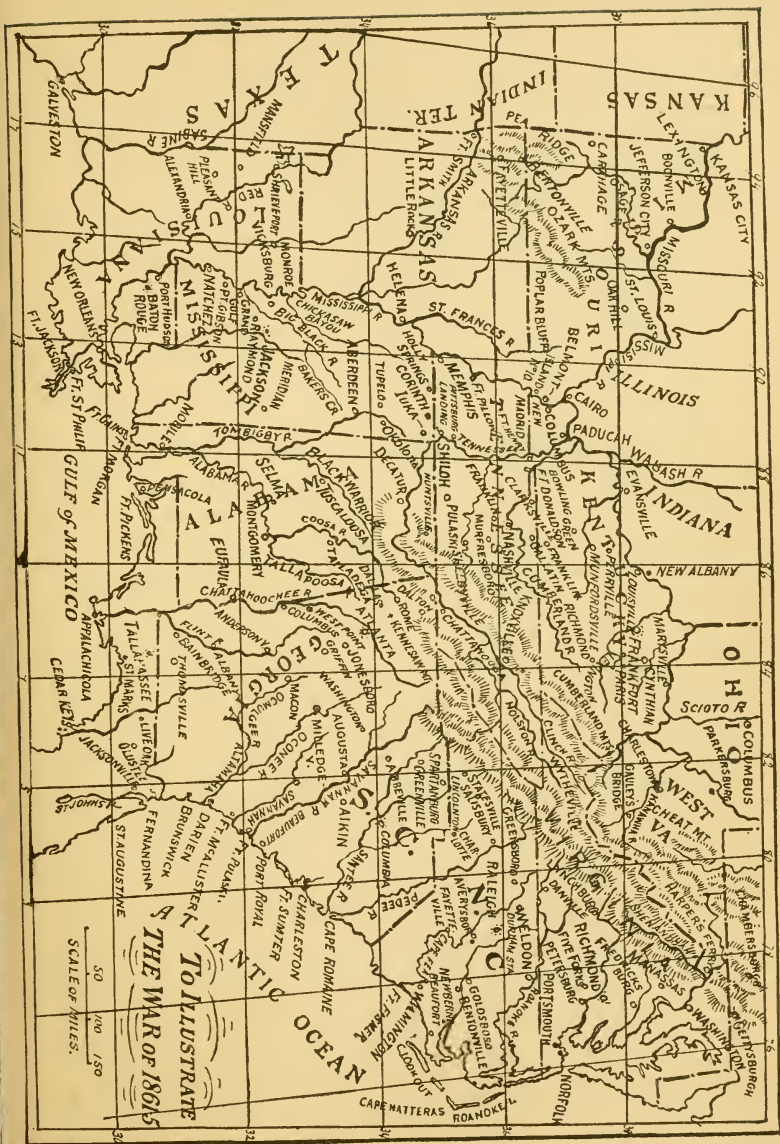
**3. Confederate Troops.**—Feeling that the attempt to take Fort Sumter, which had been built to protect a city in South Carolina, was an act of war, President Davis also made a call for troops. This call was answered from every part of the Confederacy, and preparations for fighting were begun in earnest.

**4. Lincoln's Proclamation.**—At this time, a proclamation from Mr. Lincoln ordered that all the ports of the Confederate States should be placed in a state of blockade; that is, that no vessel should come in or go out from any of these ports. Ships, manned with soldiers and mounted with heavy guns, were immediately fitted out and sent to guard the Southern coast. Another proclamation followed, calling for seventy-five thousand men to enlist in the Federal army and crush the rebellion.\*

**5. The Capital Changed.**—Soon after the secession of Virginia, the capital of the Confederacy was removed from Montgomery to Richmond, Virginia, and efforts were soon begun by the Federals to gain possession of that city. The first battles were fought in the border States—in Virginia in the east, and in Missouri and Kentucky in the west.

**6. The Federals in Virginia.**—General Scott commanded the army that had been collected at Washington. General Patterson was stationed a short distance from Har-

\*The Baltimore Riot.—The Northern States sent large numbers of men to Washington. While a regiment from Massachusetts was passing through Baltimore, April 19, 1861, on its way to the capital, it was attacked by a mob of citizens. Three soldiers and several citizens were killed. These were the first lives lost in the war.





per's Ferry. Fortress Monroe, on the Yorktown peninsular, fell into the hands of General Butler. General George B. McClellan crossed the Ohio, into northwestern Virginia, with a large force.<sup>b</sup>

**7. The Confederates in Virginia.**—General Beauregard was put in command of a large part of the Confederate army at Manassas Junction. General Joseph E. Johnston's troops were in the Shenandoah Valley, at Winchester, watching the movements of General Patterson. General John B. Magruder was sent to Yorktown and Big Bethel on the peninsular to oppose an advance of General Butler.

**8. Northwestern Virginia.**—The first battle was fought at Philippi, in western Virginia (June 3,) where the Confederates were surprised and defeated by General McClellan's forces. McClellan was also successful in three engagements that followed—at Rich Mountain, Laurel Hill, Carrick's Ford and Beverly. Each time he compelled the Southern troops to retreat. After he was removed from that section to the command of another division of the army, his successor also succeeded in marching forward against the small forces before him; and by the close of the year a large portion of western Virginia was occupied by the Federals.

**9. Big Bethel.**—A few days after the battle at Philippi, troops were sent by General Butler from Fortress Monroe. These were driven back by the Confederates at Big Bethel.

June 10,  
1861.

**10. On to Richmond.**—About the middle of July, Gen-

<sup>b</sup>A regiment of Federals was sent across the Potomac from Washington, by General Scott, to take possession of Alexandria. Colonel Elsworth, the commander of the regiment, was killed at the Marshall House (April 24, 1861), by J. W. Jackson, who was himself immediately shot by the soldiers. Arlington Heights, the home of General Lee, was also taken.

June 18, 1861. eral McDowell marched an army of sixty thousand men from Washington toward Manassas Junction, and met the Confederates under General Beauregard. After fighting nearly three hours, McDowell retreated to Centreville.

**11. The Great Battle of Manassas.**—Three days after this retreat, General McDowell advanced July 21, 1861. again, intending to fight his way to Richmond and end the war. He found General Beauregard's army on the southern bank of a stream called Bull Run, where he made another attack. General Johnston had been informed of this movement, and had hastened to Manassas. The fighting was desperate and bloody. It continued until late in the day. Sometimes it seemed that the Federals would succeed, but, about 4 o'clock in the afternoon, General Kirby Smith, with reinforcements from General Johnston's division, arrived from Winchester, and a great victory was gained. McDowell's troops became panic-stricken and fled in the wildest confusion, scattering their guns, clothing and articles of all kinds in the way as they went. The entire Federal loss in this battle was more than five thousand. That of the Confederates was a little more than one-third of that number. Beauregard and Johnston together commanded about thirty thousand men. McDowell had advanced with thirty-five thousand.

**12. Results.**—This battle stopped the invasion of Virginia for a time, and saved the capital. Besides making the people everywhere believe that war had really begun, it caused both armies to increase rapidly. Mr. Lincoln called for half a million of men.

**13. General McClellan.**<sup>o</sup>—General Scott had become

<sup>o</sup> General George B. McClellan spent the early part of his life in Philadelphia. He was born in that city December 3, 1826. His education was finished at West Point Military Academy, where he graduated

too old and feeble to march with the army, and at his request, he was allowed to resign. General George B. McClellan's successes in western Virginia had made him a favorite with the Northern people, consequently, after the defeat at Manassas, he was made the commander of the Federal army in Virginia.

**14. The West.**—During this time, the people west of the Mississippi had not been idle. Though Missouri had not joined the Confederacy, many of the men of that State had entered the Southern army. General Sterling Price commanded the forces from Missouri, and General McCullough those from Texas. These troops gained several victories over the Union forces in that section—first, at Carthage (July 5), then, at Oak Hill (August 10). A month later, General Price captured three thousand prisoners at Lexington, and took possession of the place.<sup>a</sup>

**15. Presidential Election.**—Before the close of the year with honor. His first experience as a soldier was in the Mexican war under General Scott. He was twice promoted for gallant conduct on the battle-field. In 1855, he was sent by the government, in company with two other officers, to study the progress of the Crimean war in Europe, and his report of the condition of the European armies was published by order of Congress. After his return, he made his home in Chicago, where he became engaged in important railroad interests. At the beginning of the war of '61, he was appointed major-general of the Ohio troops by the governor of that State.

The command of the Federal army in Virginia was given to him after the first battle of Manassas; but the results of both of his campaigns in eastern Virginia were so unsatisfactory to his government that he was relieved of his command, and he did no further service as a soldier during the war.

<sup>a</sup>November 7, 1861, General U. S. Grant went down the Mississippi from Cairo to Belmont, and destroyed a Confederate camp there. A force from Columbus, just across the river, was sent against him, and he was compelled to return to his gunboats. He then went back to Cairo.

Nov. 6. year, the people of the Confederate States elected a president and vice-president, according to the constitution which they had adopted. Mr. Davis and Mr. Stephens were chosen to fill the offices for six years.\*

**16. The Confederate Navy.**—At the time of their secession, the Confederate States had no navy. A number of small vessels were armed and sent out by private citizens to do service for the government. Their officers received commissions from the Confederate authorities, and the vessels were called privateers. They did great damage to the commerce of the North. In a short time, twenty vessels were taken as prizes, and brought to the Southern ports.†

**17. The Trent Affair.**—The Confederate government sent out two commissioners to England and France—James M. Mason and John Slidell. After they had succeeded in passing the blockading steamers, they went to Havana, where they took passage on the *Trent*, a mail steamer belonging to Great Britain. The next day, they were seized by Captain Wilkes, who commanded the *San Jacinto*, of the United States navy, and carried as prisoners to Fort Warren, near Boston. This seizure of passengers on board a British vessel would have

\*Port Royal, South Carolina, was captured November 7, of this year. General Lee was then sent to command the forces on the coast of South Carolina and Georgia. In three months, he finished the fortifications which protected all that portion of the country, for years, from any advance from the coast. This section did much toward furnishing supplies for the army, and the loss of it would have been keenly felt by the entire South.

†Two steamers, the "Sumter" and the "Nashville," were sent out by the Confederate government, under the command of officers who had resigned from the United States navy. The "Sumter" succeeded in running the blockade at the mouth of the Mississippi. The "Nashville" reached the open sea from Charleston. Cargoes, which amounted to millions of dollars in value, were captured by these vessels, and the injury done to foreign trade was seriously felt throughout the Northern States.

brought on a war with England had not the authorities at Washington disapproved the act of Captain Wilkes and returned the commissioners.

**18. The Situation.**—At the close of this year, the Confederates were very hopeful of success. They had gained several important victories, and had captured a large number of prisoners. Mr. Davis made several attempts to have an exchange of prisoners, but the government at Washington refused all the terms which he offered.

---

### CHAPTER III.

#### THE SECOND YEAR OF THE WAR—1862.

**1. Plans for the New Year.**—The Federals had decided to send a part of their forces “on to Richmond,” while the others were to move from the Ohio and Mississippi toward the Gulf States. The Federals were doing all in their power to get their boats on the lower Mississippi so as to use it as a means of communication, and the Confederates were making every effort to keep it.

**2. The Armies.**—The troops that were to move upon Richmond were commanded by General George B. McClellan, those in the West by General Halleck. The Confederates placed General Joseph E. Johnston at the head of the army in Virginia, which had been re-organized and called the Army of Northern Virginia. General Albert Sidney Johnston took command of the Southern forces raised in the West. He stationed his army along a line through Kentucky, reaching from Columbus on the Mississippi to the Cumberland Mountain. All that could be spared from de-



fending the long stretch of sea-coast, besides a small army beyond the Mississippi, were sent to these two generals.\*

**3. Forts Henry and Donaldson.**—Federal gunboats, Feb. 6, 16. commanded by Commodore Foote, were sent up the Tennessee and Cumberland rivers to attack the forts that had been built to defend the passage of these streams. General Grant was ready with his forces on land and joined in the attack. Both forts were taken, although the Confederates defended them bravely. At Fort Donaldson, they fought four days amidst the ice and snow. The capture of Fort Henry and Fort Donaldson was a heavy blow to the Southern cause. The losses at both places amounted to about nine thousand men. General Sidney Johnston was forced to retreat into Tennessee because he could no longer prevent the Union gunboats from running on these rivers.

**4. President Davis Inaugurated.**—About a week Feb. 22, after the fall of Fort Donaldson, Mr. Davis was 1862. inaugurated to serve six years as the president of the Southern Confederacy.

**5. Nashville.**—The Federals moved farther southward, Feb. 23, and took possession of Nashville. A large 1862. amount of stores fell into their hands at that place.

**6. West of the Mississippi.**—The command of the army west of the Mississippi had been given to General Earl Van Dorn. He was prevented from sending any assistance to General Johnston, because he was expecting an attack from a strong Federal force. This attack was made

\*The first military movements were made in the West. At Fishing Creek, or Mill Spring, the Confederates were attacked January 19, 1862, by General Thomas, with a portion of General Halleck's troops. The Southern forces were driven back, and General Zollicoffer, who commanded them, was killed.

early in March. The Confederates, under Generals Price and McCulloch, had fortified a place on Pea Ridge, in the northwestern part of Arkansas, and there, with twenty thousand men, fought three days the attacking columns of General Curtis, which numbered twenty-five thousand; but at last, having exhausted their ammunition, they were compelled to retreat. This battle was called the battle of Elkhorn or Pea Ridge, and it was here that General McCulloch was killed.

**7. General Johnston's Retreat.**—After the retreat from Columbus and Nashville, a Confederate force was moved to Island No. 10 in the Mississippi, and to New Madrid on the western bank. Batteries were erected at both places to prevent the Federals from navigating the river. Commodore Foote with his gunboats moved down to Island No. 10, and General Pope's troops assisted in the attack. After a bombardment of ten days, the Confederates left New Madrid. Island No. 10 was captured, but not until it had withstood, through a whole month, a dreadful storm of shot and shell from the water and the land. General Pope had crossed the river and was close in their rear when the men from No. 10 began to retreat. Valuable guns and several thousand prisoners were taken on the island.

**8. The Monitor and the Virginia.**—When the United States naval commander left Norfolk, Virginia, at the beginning of the war, he destroyed and sunk most of the vessels in that harbor. The Confederates raised and repaired one of these vessels, the "Merrimac," and named it the "Virginia." Besides covering it with railroad iron and strong beams of wood, they fixed a steel bow in its front. This curiously built ship attacked the Union fleet in Hampton Roads. They fired upon her, but their balls glanced from her sides without inflicting the

slightest injury. The work done in one day by this iron-clad ram was fearful. Three of the wooden vessels were wrecked. The "Cumberland," with her crew, was sunk; the "Congress" was burned, and the "Minnesota" lay helpless on the shore.

**9. The "Monitor."**—During the night, a strange looking iron-clad warship arrived from New York, March 9. called the "Monitor." Those who first saw it said that "it looked like a cheese box on a raft." The next day witnessed a fight between the "Monitor" and the "Virginia." The battle lasted two hours, and though both vessels carried heavier guns than had ever been used at sea before, no damage was done to either, until a shell from the "Monitor" fell into a port-hole of the "Virginia." She then retreated to the shore. The building of these two vessels made a complete change in the navies of the world. Every nation saw the advantage iron vessels had over wooden, and iron-clads were soon built instead.

**10. Other Exploits.**—During the same month, a Federal fleet succeeded in taking Roanoke Island and Newbern, North Carolina. In April, Fort Pulaski, near Savannah, was also taken by the Federals. March 14.

**11. Battles of Shiloh.**—General Grant moved as far south as Pittsburg Landing, on the Tennessee river, intending to go on to Corinth, Mississippi, where General Sidney Johnston and General Beauregard, who had been sent to the West, had collected their forces. General Johnston's army encamped along the road toward Corinth and near a little log church, called Shiloh church, from which the battle there took its name. While the Federals waited for General Buell to arrive with reinforcements, they were surprised by an attack made upon them by the Southern army. The fighting was desperate and lasted throughout the day; the Federals were driven April 6,  
1862.

to the river to seek the protection of their gunboats. General Sidney Johnston was killed just as he was about to win the great victory for which he had planned. General Beauregard succeeded him in command.

**12. The Second Day.**—General Buell, having arrived April 7, with fresh Union troops, another bloody battle was fought the next day. Nothing of importance was gained by either side, except that the Federals re-occupied the ground that had been taken from them the previous day. The Confederates returned to their first position at Corinth. Both armies had lost heavily. In killed, wounded and missing, the Confederate loss was ten thousand. The accounts given by the Federals place theirs at an even greater number. The Confederates who fought in these battles numbered, according to official reports, about forty thousand. Those commanded by Generals Grant and Buell, from the best sources of information, were twice as many.

**13. Retreating.**—General Beauregard remained at Corinth for several weeks before he removed to Tupelo, Mississippi. After some reverses, the Confederate boats were compelled to move down the Mississippi river from Fort Pillow. This fort was given up soon afterward (June 4), and the city of Memphis fell into the hands of the Federals.

**14. General Bragg.**—General Beauregard's health failed, and his position was given to General Braxton Bragg. His army was afterward known as the *Army of Tennessee*.

**15. The Fall of New Orleans.**—Captain Farragut commanded a fleet of armed vessels, which were April 25, sent out to accomplish the capture of New Orleans. That city was defended by two forts—  
1862. Fort Jackson and Fort St. Philips, which had been built on

opposite sides of the river, seventy miles below the city. After the attack was begun, an incessant firing was kept up between the fleet and the forts, during six days—the fleet sometimes firing “ten shells a minute.” Boats were placed in a line across the river at the forts. These boats were fastened together by chains and ropes, but an opening was left next to the bank on each side. A fleet of ten armed vessels, with several smaller boats, were sent down from New Orleans to aid the forts. At three o’clock on the morning of April 24, a steamer was seen coming up the river. The guns of the Southern fleet were turned upon her. Others followed her, and amidst the smoke and the firing, the Federal gunboats passed on between the banks and the boat obstructions, and turned their firing backward. The fire from the front and rear soon destroyed the Confederate fleet. Thirteen of Farragut’s boats ran past the forts, and, on the morning of the next day, he took possession of the city. The forts surrendered three days later; General B. F. Butler, with a land force, marched into New Orleans and took command.

---

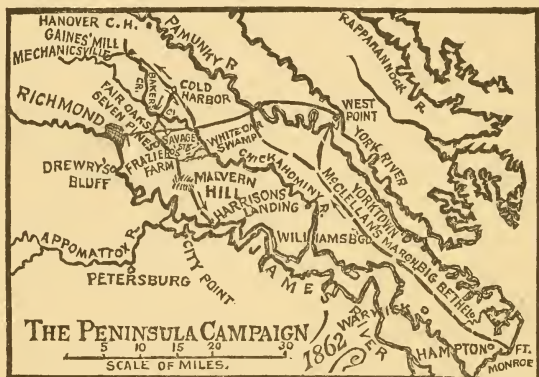
## CHAPTER IV.

### THE SECOND YEAR OF THE WAR—1862—CONTINUED.

**1. The Armies of Virginia.**—In accordance with the Federal plans for 1862, General McClellan had been busy during the winter organizing his new army of one hundred and twenty thousand men, in preparation for another advance upon Richmond. Early in March, General Johnston moved his army south of the Rappahannock, that he might be ready to oppose a movement either by way of Manassas or Fredericksburg, or to march more easily toward Fortress Monroe, should General McClellan select that route.



**2. The Peninsular Campaign.**—In April, General McClellan moved his troops by steamers down the Potomac from Washington to Fortress Monroe. From that place, he marched toward Richmond, along the peninsular, between the York and James rivers, using these rivers as a means of conveying his supplies.



General John B. Magruder was then stationed on the peninsular with eleven thousand Confederates, and while General Johnston rapidly gathered his forces from other points to Yorktown he managed to hold in check the great Federal army.

**Battle of Williamsburg.**—There was some fighting as General McClellan advanced. At Williamsburg May 5, 1862, a battle was fought, which engaged portions of both armies, and in which the Confederates had the advantage. The fighting ceased hours before dark, but the Southern troops held the ground until the next morning. When they began their march, they were not pursued.

**4. Drewry's Bluff.**—After the "Monitor" succeeded in crippling the iron-clad, "Virginia," a fleet of United

May 15, 1862. States gunboats took possession of the James river. They bombarded the Confederate defenses at Drewry's Bluff, which had been built as a protection against an advance upon Richmond from that direction. Although they did not succeed in passing these works, General Johnston thought it best to withdraw his army to a place nearer Richmond.

**5. Battle of Seven Pines.**—General McClellan continued to advance. General Johnston skillfully retreated before his immense numbers. The Federal army reached the Chickahominy late in May, and, on the last day of the month, another battle was fought at *Seven Pines* or *Seven Oaks*. The day before the battle, a heavy rain caused a sudden rise in the Chickahominy, which separated a portion of General McClellan's army from their communications. While in this condition, they were attacked and driven from the position they had taken. Night closed the battle. General Johnston was wounded. The news caused some confusion among his soldiers and nothing of importance was gained. The losses in killed, wounded and missing were very heavy.

**6. General Lee in Command.**—When General Johnston's wound compelled him to leave the army, June 1, 1862. General Robert E. Lee<sup>a</sup> was made the commander-in-chief of all the Confederate forces in

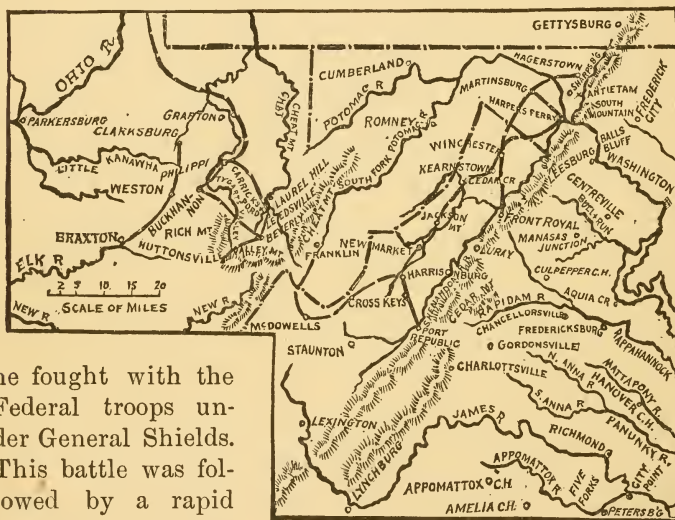
<sup>a</sup>General Robert E. Lee, a son of General "Light Horse Harry" Lee, was born at Stratford, in Westmoreland county, Virginia, in 1807. He was sent to the United States Military Academy at West Point, and graduated with honor. It has been said of him that, "during his stay at West Point, he was never reprimanded nor marked with a demerit." He served through the Mexican war with General Scott, who always spoke of him in the highest terms of praise. Three times during that war, he was promoted for the valuable services he rendered the army of the United States. When Virginia seceded, he felt that his duty called him to defend his native State; and although it cost him his beautiful home and

Virginia. General McClellan waited for General McDowell to join him from Fredericksburg.

**7. Jackson's Valley Campaign.**—General Thomas J.

March–June,  
1862.

Jackson<sup>b</sup> had been sent into the Shenandoah valley to oppose the Federal forces there. The campaign in this valley began with the battle of Kearntown (March 23, 1862), which



MAP OF THE VALLEY CAMPAIGN.

he fought with the Federal troops under General Shields. This battle was followed by a rapid succession of victo-

his fortune, he resigned his commission in the United States army and returned to Virginia. There he was appointed by the governor to the command of the Virginia troops. He began at once the task of drilling and preparing the volunteers for their work in the war. Afterward, the Confederate government sent him to western Virginia, where he was unable to accomplish anything of advantage. His reputation as a general was won after he accepted the command of the armies in eastern Virginia.

<sup>b</sup>General Thomas J. Jackson, or "Stonewall Jackson," as he was more generally called, was one of the most famous leaders in the Southern army. He was "the poor orphan boy that walked to Washington

ries through the months of May and June. At McDowell, he met and routed General Milroy (May 8). At Winchester, General Banks retreated before him (May 25); at Cross Keys, he defeated General Fremont's forces (June 8), and the next day, at Port Republic, Shields again retired. He had prevented General McDowell from joining McClellan, and had caused such alarm for the safety of Washington, that the four Generals who opposed him—Milroy, Banks, Fremont and Shields—had hurried to that place. He had "within forty days" marched his little army of fifteen thousand, over four hundred miles; "he had sent three thousand five hundred prisoners of war to the rear; he had left as many more of the Federals killed or disabled on the field; and he had defeated four separate armies, amounting in the aggregate to at least three times his own numbers."



ROBERT E. LEE.

**8. Jackson Joins Lee.**—While everything was quiet in the valley, and before McClellan could be strengthened by reinforcements, General Lee ordered General Jackson to

from Lewis county, Virginia, and appeared before John Tyler in his plain homespun suit, with leathern saddlebags upon his shoulders, "asking for a cadetship at the United States Military Academy at West Point." He was "the awkward, ungainly youth who wrote in his private book of maxims, 'You may be whatever you resolve to be.'"

It was in the first battle of Manassas that the name of "Stonewall" was given to him and his brigade. When a portion of the Confederate lines were giving way before the Federal advance, General Bee called to his men, "*Look, there is Jackson standing like a stonewall.*"

move his army quickly and secretly to Mechanicsville, beyond McClellan's right wing and between his army and McDowell's. Three weeks after the battle of Port Republic, General Jackson had obeyed this order.

**9. The Six Days' Battles.**—General Lee then crossed the Chickahominy, and six days of bloody battle and of victory to the Southern arms followed. June 26 to July 1. First, at Mechanicsville and then at Beaver Dam Creek (June 26), at Gains' Mill (27). After the battle of Gains' Mill, General McClellan could no longer use the York river, but was obliged to change his base to the James, where he could be nearer his gunboats. General Lee pursued him, and there were three more days of fighting—at Savage Station (June 29), Frazier's Farm, White Oak Swamp (June 30), and Malvern Hill (July 1). McClellan's army found safety in retreat to the shelter of his gunboats, at Harrison's Landing, on the James.

General Lee had faced McClellan's well disciplined and immense army with about eighty thousand men. McClellan commanded one hundred and five thousand. The losses were more than fifteen thousand on each side. The Confederates captured over ten thousand prisoners, besides quantities of small arms and many pieces of artillery.

**10. General Pope.**—After this series of disasters, Mr. Lincoln called for three hundred thousand men. A new army was organized and General John Pope was made its commander. The new general determined to make another movement against Richmond. The forces of McClellan still remained on the James river, and much of Lee's strength would be required to hold them in check. Knowing the anxiety that was felt by the people of Washington for the safety of their capital, General Lee decided to try the experiment of making a movement which would threaten that place, in order to draw away the forces on the James, which he had not been able to drive out.



**11. The Battle of Cedar Run.**—He sent General Stonewall Jackson, with a part of the army, August 9, 1862, to watch General Pope, expecting to follow with the remaining part. As General Lee had anticipated, troops from the James were soon removed to Washington. General Pope's army lay along the Rappahannock and Rapidan rivers, and reached as far as the Shenandoah valley. General Jackson found General Banks, who was in command of the western portion at Cedar Run, where he attacked him; after the fight, General Banks retreated.

**12. The Second Battle of Manassas.**—General Lee gathered all the troops that could be brought August 30, 1862, together, and joined General Jackson, at once. Together, with a force of about forty-nine thousand, they moved forward to Manassas Junction against General Pope's army of fifty thousand men. Again the plains of Manassas were the scenes of blood and death. Where the first battle had been fought, a year before, another victory was recorded for the Confederate cause. General Pope retreated to the fortifications of Washington, having lost heavily in men, artillery and small arms. After this defeat, General McClellan was again put in command of the Federal army.

**13. Lee's Invasion of Maryland.**—A short time after the second battle of Manassas, General Lee crossed the Potomac and entered Maryland. He divided his army into two divisions, giving each division its special work. To General Jackson was assigned the capture of Harper's Ferry, which had been seized by the Federals; the other commanders remained with Lee to keep back the army under McClellan.

**14. South Mountain.**—The forces left to guard the Sept. 14. mountain passes fought bravely at Boonsboro, or South Mountain, but lost heavily.

**15. Harper's Ferry.**—The next day, General Jackson  
Sept. 15. regained possession of Harper's Ferry. At that place, he captured eleven thousand prisoners, with over seventy pieces of artillery and thirteen thousand stands of small arms.

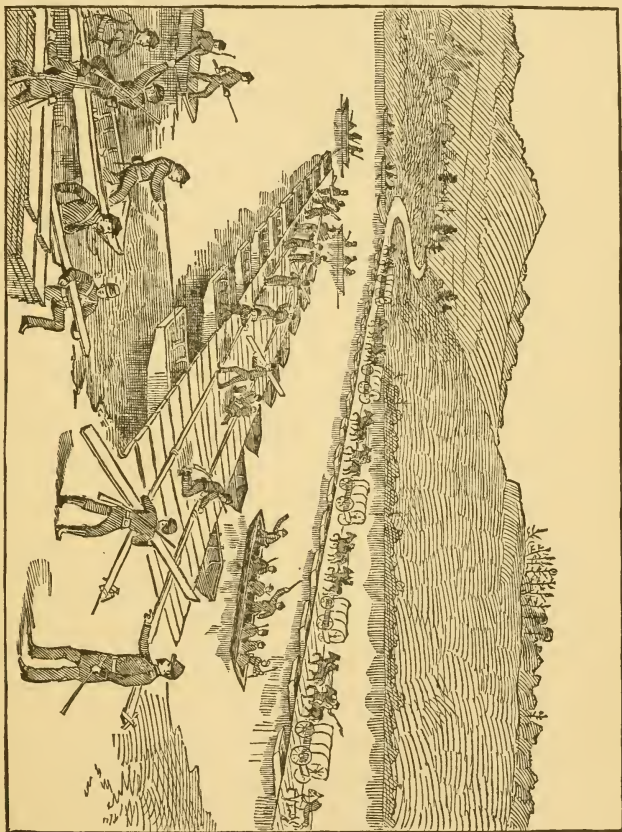
**16. Sharpsburg.**—By rapid marches, General Jackson  
Sept. 17. rejoined General Lee two days afterward, at Sharpsburg. Many of his men had been left, "foot-sore and weary," along the road from Harper's Ferry, and he went into the battle with thinned regiments. General McClellan ordered an attack to be made on the left of the Confederate army; there the troops of both generals fought stubbornly for hours. This engagement has been called, "the drawn battle of Sharpsburg or Antietam." General Lee's forces amounted to about thirty-five thousand, and General McClellan's official report says that he brought eighty-seven thousand into this battle. The Confederates had held their ground against double their numbers. The next day passed in comparative quiet, and during the night, General Lee re-crossed the Potomac into Virginia.

**17. General Burnside.**—Before the close of the year,  
Nov. 5. General McClellan was again removed from his position, and General Ambrose E. Burnside was made commander of the "Army of the Potomac." This name had been given to the Federal army in Virginia.

**18. The Battle of Fredericksburg.**—This change of  
Dec. 31, officers brought about a new plan of attack upon  
1862. Richmond, from Fredericksburg. When General Burnside reached Fredericksburg, he found General Lee ready to meet him, though with a much smaller army than his. He crossed the Rappahannock on pontoon bridges, with one hundred thousand men, and attacked General Lee, who fought behind hastily constructed works with seventy-eight thousand. This battle was a great victory for Lee, and completely checked Burnside's advance.

General Burnside re-crossed the river, and the two armies remained encamped on opposite sides of the Rappahannock during the rest of the year.

BUILDING PONTON BRIDGES.



**19. The West—General Bragg in Kentucky.—**

While Lee and Jackson were invading Maryland, Aug., 1862. General Bragg was busy recruiting the "Army of Tennessee." General Grant's army was stationed

along the country between Memphis and Huntsville. General Buell was sent to take Chattanooga; but, in August, General Bragg marched through Tennessee, toward the Ohio river, hoping to regain possession of Tennessee and Kentucky, and Buell could do nothing but retreat to Louisville.

**20. General Kirby Smith.**—About the same time, General Kirby Smith moved his troops from Knoxville, Tennessee, into Kentucky, where he joined General Bragg. They remained two months in the central part of the State, expecting that the people would enlist for the Confederate cause and enlarge their army. Disappointed in this hope, they returned to Chattanooga, after having collected large quantities of supplies.

**21. Battle of Richmond and Perryville.**—On the retreat they were pursued by General Buell, Sept.—Oct. 8, 1862, and at Richmond, Kentucky, General Kirby Smith's arms were victorious over the Federals. The two opposing armies were again thrown together at Perryville and a battle followed, after which General Bragg retreated to Chattanooga.

**22. Battle of Murfreesboro.**—Very little had been gained on either side by this campaign. General Dec. 31, 1862, Rosecrans was placed in command of the Federal army instead of General Buell, about the last of October. He strengthened the fortifications at Nashville, Tennessee, and General Bragg moved again to Murfreesboro. Rosecrans began preparations for driving him back. Each general commanded about forty thousand men, and on the last day of 1862, they met in battle at Murfreesboro. The fighting was kept up bravely on both sides for two days. Fourteen thousand Federals were killed and wounded and ten thousand Confederates. This battle has also been called a drawn battle.

**24. New Ships.**—During the summer of this year, two new armed ships, the “Florida” and the “Alabama,” which had been built in England, were brought out and put upon the sea. They did much damage to the commerce of the North.

**25. Soldiers’ Aid Societies** had been organized by the patriotic women of the country, everywhere, north and south, and their work was now appreciated more fully than ever before. Blankets and bedding from their own homes were cheerfully given up to supply the brave men who needed them at the seat of war. Socks were knitted and clothing made by their own fingers, and every delicacy that love could suggest was prepared and sent to the sick and wounded in the hospitals. And there their untiring and tender attentions at the bedside of the suffering, soothed the last hours of many a dying soldier.

---

## CHAPTER XX.

### THE THIRD YEAR OF THE WAR—1863.

**1. Emancipation Proclamation.**—President Lincoln issued a proclamation on the first day of the year, 1863, declaring all the slaves in the Confederacy to be free.

**2. Federal Plans.**—The Federal leaders planned the campaign for this year with reference to two main objects—the capture of Richmond and the opening of the Mississippi. Port Hudson and Vicksburg were in the hands of the Confederates, and the Federal boats were still kept from passing up and down the river.

**3. General Hooker.**—About the last of January, the command of the “Army of the Potomac” was taken from General Burnside and given to General Joseph Hooker.



His army was stationed on the north side of the Rappahannock, where it had remained since the battle of Fredericksburg. Reinforcements had increased its number to one hundred and thirty-two thousand men. All of them had been carefully drilled and well equipped, and it was thought to be the best army that any general had ever commanded in this country.

**4. Chancellorsville.**—General Lee still held Fredericksburg, which he had fortified. He could only  
May 2, 3, 1863. muster fifty-seven thousand soldiers to confront the hosts that Hooker was bringing against him.

About the last of April, Hooker crossed the Rappahannock above Fredericksburg and marched to Chancellorsville, about ten miles west of Fredericksburg. There he occupied a strong position, "surrounded on all sides by a dense forest filled with a tangled undergrowth, in the midst of which breastworks of logs had been constructed, with trees felled in front." General Lee thought it unwise to attack that strong position, defended by such numbers, and he determined to divide his army, and send General Jackson around to the rear, while he held the front. A long, tire-some march took Jackson's force around Chancellorsville. At 6 p. m., he attacked the rear of the Federal army. The surprise was so complete that, after a few efforts to resist, Hooker's forces began to fly in disorder. The battle continued through the next day. Hooker's advance was completely checked and his grand army forced to recross the river.

**5. Stonewall Jackson Wounded.**—In the evening of  
May 2. the first day of this battle, General Jackson ordered General Hill's troops to move forward and relieve those who, after a long march, had been for hours in the hottest of the fight. As Hill's men came on, they met General Jackson with several officers returning from the

front. In the darkness, Hill's men mistook them for Federals and fired. General Jackson fell mortally wounded.

His command was given to General Stuart, an honored officer, and worthy of the position, but the death of Stonewall Jackson was a loss that could not be repaired. General Lee said, speaking of the misfortune, "I have lost my right hand."<sup>a</sup>



STONEWALL JACKSON.

**6. The West.**—Beside the army under General Rosecrans, who had fought General Bragg at Murfreesboro, there was another Federal army in the West commanded by General Grant. It occupied the country between Memphis and Corinth. The Confederates, under General Pemberton, opposed these forces and defended the northern part of Mississippi.

**7. Vicksburg.**—In the early part of this year, General Grant began the task of opening the Mississippi from Vicksburg to Port Hudson. During the months of February and March, he made several attempts to take Vicksburg, from different directions, but failed. After that, he sent his army down, on the west side of the Mississippi,

<sup>a</sup>**Jackson's Death.**—General Jackson died May 10, 1863, one week after receiving these wounds. He trusted fully in the love of his Saviour. During his last moments, while in a state of feverish sleep, the friends watching by his bed side, heard him say, "*Let us pass over the river and rest under the shade of the trees.*" These were his last words. The duties he had fulfilled so faithfully were all done, and he was about to pass beyond the noise of battle into eternal rest. The rejoicings of the people over the great victory, which he had done so much to win, were soon hushed into silence and sorrow over the death of their great leader.

below Vicksburg to Grand Gulf, intending to run his gun-boats past Vicksburg and down to the same place. His boats passed the batteries at Vicksburg in the night (April 22), and were ready to move the army across the river. When they had crossed to the eastern side, they marched toward Vicksburg. Several battles were fought on the way with the Confederate forces—at Port Gibson, Raymond and Baker's Creek, near the Big Black river. After the battle of Baker's Creek, General Pemberton retreated to the fortifications of Vicksburg.

**8. The Siege.**—General Sherman joined General Grant, and they began the siege of Vicksburg. General Pemberton held the town with about thirty thousand men. The siege continued more than six weeks. Firing from the batteries on the land or from the boats on the river against the town was kept up the greater part of the time. Grant's whole force, including that on the river, has been estimated at one hundred and fifty thousand.

**9. West Virginia.**—The majority of the people living in the northwestern part of Virginia were Union men; that is, they were opposed to secession and the war. In the spring of 1863, they adopted a form of government for themselves, and were admitted as a separate State, under the name of West Virginia. Mr. Lincoln issued a proclamation which completed all the arrangements for making the new State.

**10. The Pennsylvania Campaign.**—After the battle of Chancellorsville, General Hooker's army returned to the heights opposite Fredericksburg. Rather than attack him in this strong position, General Lee determined to draw him away, by marching his own army northward, through Maryland, into Pennsylvania. Early in June, he sent a part of his forces to meet the Federals in the valley of Virginia. These Confederates recaptured Winchester and Mar-

tinsburg, and took a large number of guns and prisoners. General Lee joined them with the rest of the army; the whole command, numbering about sixty thousand, then crossed the Potomac, and moved on through Maryland, through York and Chambersburg to Carlisle, threatening Washington and Harrisburg.

**11. General Meade.**—About this time, General Hooker was relieved of his command and General George B. Meade was made the commander of the "Army of the Potomac."

**12. General Lee's Reasons.**—General Lee thought his march beyond the Potomac would hinder the movements of the Federal commanders, so that their plans for the summer could not be carried out. He needed supplies, and he went into the country where everything was raised in abundance. He hoped, too, that after a victory in one of the Union States, many of the friends of the Confederacy in Maryland would join his army.

**13. Gettysburg.**—When the news of this advance reached General Meade, he moved his army beyond the July 1. Potomac, where it could defend Washington. A part of General Lee's army met a part of General Meade's forces at Gettysburg, July 1. The Federals were driven back through the town and five thousand prisoners taken.

**14. The Battle.**—General Lee at once ordered his troops from Carlisle and Chambersburg back to Gettys- July 2. burg. The men were weary from their long marches through the heat of those summer days, but they obeyed, and a portion of the army reached the neighborhood of Gettysburg at night, ready for the battle the next day. Owing to some delays, General Lee's plan of beginning the attack early the next morning was not carried out. The battle was not begun until late in the afternoon, by which time General Meade's whole army of one hundred and five thousand had arrived. Thousands of men at

work had strengthened his position on the hills southeast of the town. In some places, the Federals were driven from their lines and their guns taken by the desperate charges of the Confederates; but the men in gray were, in turn, also compelled to retire, and to leave hundreds dead or dying behind them.

**15.** General Lee hoped that a united attack, the next day, would win what had seemed so nearly within  
July 3, his reach on the morning of the 2nd, but another  
1863. delay robbed the third day's battle of its victory.

For two hours the terrific cannonade went on from all the cannon in both armies; the blue smoke from the muskets hid the Confederates as they moved forward. Again there was a dreadful struggle on the hillside, but it was impossible to get possession of the strong Federal position. All that were left of Lee's men returned to the Confederate lines. Meade held his position; and, after a day of rest, Lee returned to Culpepper Courthouse, in Virginia. With the exception of several cavalry engagements, there were no battles on the way. General Lee's loss in this campaign was nineteen thousand. Nearly seven thousand prisoners were captured from the Federals.

**16. A Season of Quiet.**—Meade followed Lee across the Potomac and the Rappahannock. By August,  
August, the Confederates were once more on the southern  
1863. bank of the Rapidan, and General Meade's army took its position opposite to them on the north side of that river. The rest of the season was one of quiet. The Federal plans seemed entirely broken up, and no further advances were made.

**17. The West—The Surrender of Vicksburg.**—

The day before General Lee began his retreat  
July 4, from Gettysburg, Vicksburg was occupied by  
1863. General Grant. The garrison had almost ex-



hausted its store of provisions, and could do nothing but surrender. Four hundred guns had to be given up, and, by the terms of the surrender, thirty thousand prisoners were paroled. This was another severe blow to the South. The two heavy losses coming together greatly depressed the people throughout the Confederacy.

**18. Port Hudson.**—The only place on the Mississippi held by the Confederates was Port Hudson, in July 9. Louisiana, some distance below Vicksburg. After the fall of Vicksburg, they could no longer hold this point, and it, too, was surrendered in a short time. These successes gave the Federals the entire use of the Mississippi river, which was of immense advantage to them. It gave them a new route for bringing supplies to their armies; and, by cutting off all that part of the Confederacy beyond the Mississippi, confined the Confederates within narrow limits, besides separating them from a country which had sent them quantities of provisions and numbers of men.

**19. Bragg and Rosecrans.**—After the battle of Murfreesboro, General Bragg had fallen back to Tullahoma, but General Rosecrans did not make any June. advance until the next June. As he moved forward, General Bragg continued to retreat through Tennessee to Georgia.

**20. The Battle of Chickamauga.**—Large numbers of re-inforcements were sent out to General Sept. 19, 20, Rosecrans, and General Lee sent five thousand from the Rapidan to aid General Bragg. 1863. In September, Rosecrans followed Bragg to the Chickamauga,<sup>a</sup> a small stream running through a portion of North Georgia into the Tennessee. There a terrible battle was fought. It continued through two days and resulted in a victory for the Confederates. The number of Federals engaged in this

<sup>a</sup>An Indian name, which means "River of Death."

battle was fifty-five thousand. Bragg's force numbered forty thousand. The Federal loss was twenty thousand, among whom were eight thousand prisoners. The Confederates lost not less than ten thousand men.

**21. Chattanooga.**—From Chickamauga, Rosecrans moved back to the fortifications of Chattanooga. General Bragg strengthened his defences on Missionary Ridge, where he remained for some time. He managed to keep Rosecrans shut up in Chattanooga until November, and nearly starved the Federal army there. At length, General Sherman brought troops from Vicksburg and General Hooker brought others from Virginia. General Grant was given the chief command of the western armies about this time, and he went to Chattanooga.

**22. Knoxville.**—General Bragg sent a part of his forces to make an attack upon the Federals at Knoxville. Nothing was gained by that expedition, except that Burnside was kept besieged in that town for a time.

**23. Battle of Missionary Ridge.**—While this portion of General Bragg's troops was away, General Grant prepared for an advance. On November 25th, his army, led by General Thomas, fought in the battle of Missionary Ridge, in which he gained a victory over the Confederates and drove them back into Georgia.

**24. General Joseph E. Johnston.**—After this battle, General Bragg asked to be relieved of his command, and he was succeeded by General Joseph E. Johnston.

**25. Naval Operations.**—Although the United States navy had been greatly increased, the principal work done by it during this year was to keep up the blockade. In April, an attempt was made to capture Fort Sumter, at Charleston, S. C., but the Federal fleet was so much injured in the attempt that it was compelled to retreat. After-

ward, another fleet, aided by a land force, made a second attack upon the fortifications of Charleston. Both withdrew without taking the city. Still later, Fort Sumter was bombarded by an iron-clad fleet, whose heavy shot "made holes two and a half feet deep in the walls." It was battered into ruins but left in the hands of the Confederates.

The Confederate vessels did great damage to the commerce of the United States; but the prizes they captured could not be made of use, because they had no port in which to leave them.

---

## CHAPTER VI.

### THE FOURTH YEAR OF THE WAR—1864.

**1. The Situation.**—At the beginning of this year, the Federals were in possession of the States of Tennessee, Kentucky, Arkansas, Missouri, and parts of Florida, Louisiana and Mississippi, besides having entire control of the Mississippi river.

**2. Battle of Olustee or Ocean Pond.**—Military movements began in February. A Federal force  
Feb. 20, 1864, marched toward the interior of Florida from Jacksonville. Generals Colquitt and Finnegan met this force at Olustee, or Ocean Pond, where a battle was fought in which the Confederates were victorious. The Federal loss was two thousand five hundred in killed and prisoners, and five large guns with a number of small arms. The Confederates lost two hundred. The invading forces retreated and Florida was saved.

**3. The Meridian Campaign.**—General Sherman had returned to Vicksburg after the battle of Missionary Ridge and had been busily preparing to move an army to Meri-

dian, Miss., and on to Selma, Ala. The object of this movement was to destroy the railroads in Mississippi and Alabama, to cripple the Confederates and keep them at a distance from the Mississippi, so that twenty thousand Federals might be spared from guarding the fortifications along its banks, and aid in the invasion of Georgia in the spring.

**4. Battle of Okolona**—General Forrest, a famous Southern general, gained a decided victory over the Federal cavalry which had been sent forward to Okolona, Mississippi, and drove them back. Feb. 22, 1864. Sherman, who had then gone as far as Meridian, stopped his advance, and returned to Vicksburg.

**5. The Red River Campaign.**—Early in March, General Banks started from New Orleans, intending to conquer Louisiana, and then to push onward through Texas. The route selected was along the Red River to Shreveport. He was assisted by a detachment from Sherman's force at Vicksburg, together with Admiral Porter's fleet of nineteen gunboats. General Steele also joined him with seven thousand men from Arkansas. March 12, 1864.

**6. Battle of Mansfield.**—General Banks moved to Mansfield with twenty-five thousand men, where April 8. he was attacked by a force of nearly nine thousand and under General Richard Taylor, who commanded the Confederates in Louisiana. At Mansfield, the victory was on the Confederate side. General Banks retreated, leaving two thousand five hundred prisoners behind, with thousands of small arms and two hundred wagons.

**7. Battle of Pleasant Hill.**—General Taylor followed the retreating Federals, and, late in the afternoon of the next day, another battle was begun, April 9. which ended as night came on. Both armies

held their ground, but General Banks retreated during the night.

**8. Return of the Fleet**—During the march of the army into Louisiana, the water in the river had fallen May 13. so low that it was impossible to move the fleet back over the falls at Alexandria, until a dam was built across the Red River. The Confederate force was too small to prevent the escape of the fleet, and the boats passed beyond their reach just one month after they had entered Red River. The campaign had been a failure.

**9. Changes.**—General Grant's success in the West had made him a great favorite throughout the North. March, 1864. At this time, he was promoted to the rank of lieutenant-general. It had not been given to any man since the death of General Scott. According to the constitution, the president was commander-in-chief of the army. Grant left Sherman in command of the army at Chattanooga, and removed his headquarters to Virginia, where General Meade still held his position, subject to the order of General Grant.

**10. Plans.**—It had been decided that preparations should be made for two grand movements of the Federal armies. One was to be made under the special direction of General Grant, toward Richmond,<sup>a</sup> which was still defended by General Lee; the other toward Atlanta, Ga., against General Johnston's forces. Atlanta was considered an im-

<sup>a</sup>**Raid.**—Two Federal officers—General Kilpatrick and Colonel Dahlgren—undertook to lead a cavalry expedition against Richmond. They intended to release the Federal prisoners there, and help them to kill the president and his cabinet. They chose different routes. Kilpatrick arrived in the neighborhood of Richmond first, but he found the Confederates ready to meet him, and he retreated toward York river. Dahlgren was received in the same way. He was killed by a company of home guards as he passed back through the country. The expedition was called the Kilpatrick and Dahlgren raid.



portant place, because of the railroads centering there, and because of its large workshops and large collection of supplies. The strength of both governments was directed toward these two movements.

**11. Grant in Command.**—About the first of May, the new Federal commander began his movements. May 1, He sent a body of six thousand up the Kanaw-  
1864. ha river, and ten thousand under General Sigel from Winchester, with orders to move to Staunton and Lynchburg, to cut off General Lee's supplies from the south. He also sent General Butler up the James river against Petersburg. About the same time, General Grant marched the "Army of the Potomac," numbering one hundred and fifty thousand, "on to Richmond," from the north. Having left more than fifty thousand to be used as reinforcements, if necessary, he crossed the Rapidan.

**12. Lee Meets Grant.**—The force with which General Lee was to meet and keep back this immense army numbered sixty thousand. With these men he fought a succession of battles, which began soon after General Grant's advance, and did not end until nearly the middle of June.

**13. Battle of the Wilderness.**—The first of these battles is known as the battle of the Wilderness. It May 5, 6, began the next day after Grant crossed the Rap-  
1864. idan, and lasted through two days. The losses were terrible.

**14. Spottsylvania.**—General Grant's next move was an attempt to get his army between General May 8-12. Lee and Richmond by a flank movement, but Lee hurried his troops to Spottsylvania Court-house, and placed them behind the earthworks there. Grant tried in vain to drive them from that position.

**15. North Anna.**—After desperate fighting at Spottsylvania, General Grant, having been largely reinforced

from Washington, began another flank movement, but he found General Lee at the North Anna ready to meet him again.

**16. Cold Harbor.**—Another effort at flanking General Lee brought General Grant to Cold Harbor, June 3. nearer to Richmond. The Confederates fought behind earthworks, and every charge made upon them was repulsed. The ground in front of the works was covered with the dead and the wounded. This battle proved to General Grant that he could not drive General Lee from his fortifications on the north side of Richmond, and he changed his base to the James, where he took his position about the middle of June. He had lost sixty thousand men—as many in number as General Lee's whole army.

**17. Beauregard.**—About the same time that the fighting in the Wilderness was going on, by rapid and skillful marching, General Beauregard succeeded May 6, 1864. in reaching Petersburg in time to prevent General Butler's advance upon the town.

**18. General Breckinridge** met Sigel's expedition and routed him at New Market, May 15.

**19. General Early.**—General Hunter then took General Sigel's command, and, gathering all the scattered Federal forces, marched to Lynchburg. General Early had been sent by General Lee to Lynchburg, and he succeeded in routing Hunter's force also. He followed them, overtook them at Salem, and forced them to retreat to the Ohio.

**20. The Siege of Petersburg.**—General Grant hoped June 15. by crossing the James river to be able to capture Petersburg, twenty miles south of Richmond, before it was strongly fortified; but Lee sent a part of his army to reinforce Beauregard at that place, and although Grant struggled four days for the possession of the city, he made another failure. He then encamped his army south of

the Appomattox river. All active movements were then at an end. Heavy earthworks were thrown up by the Federals in preparation for the siege of Petersburg and Richmond. The siege lasted ten months, and though there was some fighting during the time, there was no general engagement.

**21. Early's Invasion.**—General Lee, wishing to induce Grant to remove a part of his force from Petersburg, and supposing that but few troops had been left at Washington, sent General Early with twelve thousand men into Maryland, northwest of Washington. He marched more than two hundred miles through the Shenandoah valley. Ruins and ashes marked the route that General Hunter had taken. Early met a body of Federal troops at Monocacy river, which, after a fight of several hours, retreated before him. He then moved on toward the capital. Fears were at once excited for the safety of Washington and Baltimore, frightened citizens having reported his force to be four or five times its real strength. He found the fortifications of Washington too strong to be taken by a small army, and after remaining in the neighborhood of the capital long enough for his march to produce its desired effect, he returned to Virginia.

**22. Chambersburg.**—Near the close of July, he sent his cavalry to Chambersburg, Pennsylvania. July, 1864. Before leaving, they set fire to the town. Having collected a large amount of supplies, he then retreated to Winchester.

**23. General Phil. Sheridan,** who had superseded General Hunter, was sent in pursuit. He Septembr 19. attacked General Early at Winchester, and compelled him to retreat. Just one month after this defeat, Early sent General John B. Gordon to attack Sheridan's army at Cedar Creek. He marched at night, along a narrow road between the river and the mountains, reached

the rear of the Federal camp a little before daylight (October 19), and wakened the soldiers with the noise of his muskets. At the same time, General Early appeared in front. The surprise was so complete, that Sheridan's army was soon flying panic stricken on its way back to Winchester. The commander, who had been absent at the time of the attack, met his routed army and, after restoring order, returned. The Confederates, not expecting him, were in turn defeated and driven back. Sheridan then marched into the rich valley of Virginia to finish the work of destruction which Hunter had begun. His object was to keep General Lee from receiving supplies from that section. After the close of his campaign, he said, "A crow in traversing the valley, would be obliged to carry his rations."<sup>b</sup>

**24. Undermining the Confederate Works.**—One of

July 30, the generals in Grant's army proposed to dig a  
1864. tunnel under ground to one of the Confederate  
forts, so that it might be blown up with gunpowder. General Grant had determined to leave nothing untried, and a regiment of Pennsylvania miners, were put to work with picks and shovels. After a month of labor, the mine was finished. Eight thousand pounds of powder were placed under the fort. When it exploded, a mass of earth and smoke burst up into the air and fell backward with a tremendous noise. A chasm 30 feet deep, 135 feet long, 97 feet wide, was left where the fort had been. Sudden death had come to two hundred and fifty-six Confederate soldiers. Re-inforcements were at once sent to that part of the line. They charged upon the Federals, advancing through the opening, and drove them back, killing and wounding five thousand.

<sup>b</sup>According to Sheridan's official report, he burned 2,000 barns filled with wheat and hay, 70 mills stored with flour and grain, and drove off or killed 7,000 head of cattle and sheep, besides a large number of horses.

## CHAPTER VII.

## THE FOURTH YEAR OF THE WAR—1864—CONTINUED.

1. **Sherman in Georgia.**—About the same time that General Grant crossed the Rapidan in his advance on Richmond, General Sherman, with one hundred thousand men, began to move toward Atlanta. General Joseph E. Johnston opposed him with an army of forty-five thousand, stationed at Dalton, Ga. With these, he managed to check Sherman's advance, and to keep him seventy days on the march of one hundred miles between Dalton and Atlanta. Sherman's marches were flank movements, similar to those of Grant's against Lee in Virginia. He kept a part of his army in front, and sent the rest around through the country to move behind the Confederates. Johnston's army was so small that he was compelled to retreat before every such movement, yet he made ready for battle, and fought whenever he saw any hope of success.

2. **Dalton and Resaca.**—The Confederate army had been stationed at Dalton during the winter. May 10,  
1864. Sherman began his advance early in May, and there was some fighting along the front to make Johnston believe that a direct attack would be made upon Dalton. At the same time, the principal part of the Federal army marched behind the mountains west of Dalton, around Johnston's left, and south to Resaca. At Resaca, a battle was fought, but Sherman found the place strongly fortified and well defended, and did not succeed in capturing the position. He then moved to the left again, and Johnston retreated to New Hope Church and Dallas.

3. **New Hope Church.**—The fighting continued through three days at New Hope Church, after which, to



May 26-27, 1864. defend his line of communications, Johnston moved southward again to Kennesaw mountain.

**4. Kennesaw.**—Johnston fortified this strong position and held it a month.<sup>a</sup> Sherman's attacks June 27. were repulsed with great slaughter. Finding that he could not drive the Confederates back, he moved his army around Kennesaw mountain, and threatened to cut Johnston off from his supplies.

**5. Atlanta.**—This compelled General Johnston to cross the Chattahoochee and retreat to Atlanta. About July 9. five thousand of the reserve militia of Georgia were then sent to Atlanta by Governor Brown<sup>b</sup> to aid Gen-

<sup>a</sup>General Johnston, with a party of officers, among whom was General Polk, rode to the front to examine his fortifications June 14, 1864. Just as they were ready to return, a Federal battery directed its fire toward them. The third shot was fatal to General Polk. His death made many sad hearts among the men who had fought with him in the battles of Tennessee and Kentucky.

<sup>b</sup>2. **Joseph Emerson Brown** was born in Pickens district, South Carolina, April 15, 1821. His life has been a remarkable one, and he has been for years prominently connected with the politics of his section. His parents removed to the northern portion of Georgia while he was still a child. His school-days were passed in the log school-house near his mountain home. There he was taught to read and write.

This beginning to learn only made him more anxious to obtain knowledge. He had heard something of the Calhoun Academy in Anderson, S. C., and he determined to become a student there. Although the journey was a long one, for those days, that did not discourage him. He owned a yoke of oxen, which his younger brother helped him to drive more than one hundred miles of the way. The sale of his oxen and the amount which he received for teaching a country school, during the vacation months, paid his expenses for the first year. He was allowed to continue his studies two years longer on his "promise to pay;" this he did by taking charge of a flourishing school in Canton, Ga.

All of his spare moments were given to the study of law, and he was admitted to the bar at the age of twenty-four. This man of brilliant mind and determined will did not remain long in private life. He was

eral Johnston. They were commanded by General G. W. Smith and General Robert Toombs. On the retreat from Dalton, Johnston had lost nearly ten thousand men. Sherman's losses were sixty thousand—as great as Grant's had been in his battles from the Wilderness to the James.

**6. General Hood.**—A short time after arriving at Atlanta, General Johnston was removed from the command of the army, and General John B. Hood was appointed his successor.

**7. Battles of Atlanta.**—General Hood did not fight behind his breastworks as Johnston had done. July 21, 22. He made Sherman believe that Atlanta had been evacuated, and then went outside to attack him, on the north and east of the city. Soon after taking command, he fought the great battles near Atlanta, in which he lost eight thousand men.

**8. The Fall of Atlanta.**—About one week afterward, Sherman moved quickly around Atlanta and Sept. 3, separated from Hood a part of his army, which 1864. was then at Jonesboro. General Hood then retreated toward Newnan, and Sherman marched triumphantly into the city, September 3.

**9. Hood's Campaign in Tennessee.**—All the supplies for Sherman's army were brought over the railroad from Chattanooga to Atlanta, and General Hood formed the

elected judge of the superior court, in 1855. and afterward to the Senate of Georgia. In 1857, he was made Governor of the State; he held that office, during the war, until 1865.

He encouraged the growth of railroads by recommending State aid in building them wherever they were necessary to develop the natural resources of the country. His opposition to the use of intoxicating liquors and tobacco, and his strictly temperate habits exerted a strong influence for good.

Since then, he has held a conspicuous place in the Senate of the United States. He was always in favor of common schools, and he has been, since the organization of public schools in the city of Atlanta, Ga., the president of the Board of Education.

plan of moving his army behind General Sherman and destroying this railroad. This he accomplished and then marched on toward Nashville, Tennessee. All the forces he could collect made his army about thirty-five thousand strong. Sherman did not retreat as Hood expected he would, but remained in Atlanta.

**10. Franklin.**—General Hood found a Federal force at Franklin, Tennessee, which he attacked. They  
Nov. 30, fought behind fortifications and his losses were  
1864. frightful. At night, after the battle, the Federals retreated to Nashville.

**11. Battles of Nashville.**—General Thomas, who had been left in command at Nashville, collected  
Dec. 15, 16, from Chattanooga, Murfreesboro and other  
1864. places, about forty-five thousand men, with which he organized a new army. General Hood pressed on to Nashville, where he waited two weeks without giving battle. The Federals were alarmed at the prospect of his marching to the Ohio, and they moved out to attack him. He fought there two days, amidst sleet and snow, for the possession of the city, but his desperate struggle accomplished nothing. It left his army defeated and scattered, and he had no choice but retreat.

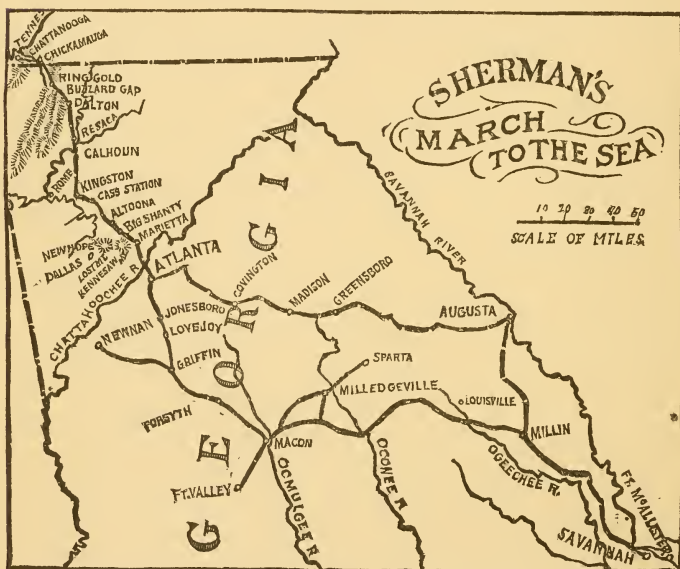
**12. General Taylor.**—After re-crossing the Tennessee river, General Hood asked to be relieved of his command, and General Richard Taylor, who had been a prominent officer in Louisiana, was commissioned to fill his place.

**13. Burning Atlanta.**—While General Hood was in Tennessee, General Sherman warned the citizens to leave Atlanta, and gave them their choice to go either north or south. He said he wanted to make the place "a pure military garrison with no civil population to influence military measures." When petitioned by the mayor and councilmen of the city "to reconsider the order," he positively re-

fused. Afterward, directions for burning the city were given to the Federal soldiers, and the torch destroyed what cannon balls and shells had left.

**14. The March to the Sea.**—Sherman then started with his army of sixty-five thousand men on his march to the sea. He left behind him a track of desolation thirty miles wide, all the way

Nov. 15,  
1864.



from Atlanta to Savannah. There was no force to oppose him and he fed his army along the route by what he found in the country. In his report, he says: "I estimate the damage done to the State of Georgia at one hundred millions of dollars." When he reached the neighborhood of Savannah, which was defended by General Hardee, he began preparations for its capture.

**15. Evacuation of Savannah.**—A few days after his arrival, General Sherman demanded the surrender of Savannah, but General Hardee refused. Dec. 19. Two busy days passed in the city, and then Hardee's little army secretly crossed the Savannah river on pontoon bridges, during the night, into South Carolina. Sherman was disappointed to find that these troops had escaped capture and that they had taken with them forty-nine pieces of artillery. He entered and took possession of Savannah four days before Christmas day. There he was at once placed in communication with the Federal fleet, Fort McAllister having already surrendered a short time before. Besides military stores, thousands of bales of cotton were captured.

**16. Naval Operations.**—The Confederates lost several valuable war vessels this year. The "Alabama" was sunk in a battle with the United States steamer, "Ke-ar-sage," near the coast of France. The "Albermarle" was lost near Plymouth, North Carolina, by the explosion of a Federal torpedo. The "Florida" was captured off the coast of Brazil.

**17. Mobile.**—During the summer, a large force was sent to take possession of Mobile, Alabama. It August, 1864. was made up of a fleet of twenty-eight ships under the command of Admiral Farragut. The Confederate iron-clad, "Tennessee," which Farragut found near Mobile, fought until it was compelled to surrender. The three forts which defended the city were taken before the end of the month. One had been evacuated and blown up. The Federals had gained control of Mobile Bay, but the city was not surrendered until the next spring.

**18. Wilmington.**—There was now but one port left by which the Confederates could evade the blockade, or hope for intercourse with the world beyond them. Dec. 24. The harbor, at Wilmington, N. C., was de-



fended by Fort Fisher. A fleet of fifty war ships and iron-clads was sent under Admiral Porter against it in the fall. The fleet was aided by a land force commanded by General Butler. The fort was bombarded by the fleet during two days, but it refused to surrender. A ship torpedo, which contained two hundred and fifty tons of gunpower, was also exploded, but nothing was gained by it.

**19. Nevada.**—This year witnessed the admission of Nevada as one of the States of the Union. The name  
1864. means snow-clad.

**20. The Election.**—In November, an election was held for president and Mr. Lincoln was elected for a second term, with Andrew Johnson, of Tennessee, for vice-president.  
Nov.,  
1864.

---

## CHAPTER VIII.

### THE LAST YEAR OF THE WAR—1865.

**1. The Situation.**—New Year's day, in 1865, brought but little to make the Confederates hopeful or happy. The Federals had obtained possession of the greater part of the Confederacy, and had increased their army to more than a million of men. All of the Southern troops in the field did not number more than one hundred and fifty thousand; their supplies were nearly all exhausted, and they had but little hope of obtaining more.

**2. Fort Fisher.**—The same fleet which had attempted the capture of Fort Fisher was sent against it  
Jan. 15,  
1865. again, in January, aided by a stronger land force than before. The fort was the scene of another terrific bombardment, after which its garrison surrendered. The other defences of Wilmington fell into the hands of the Federals within a few weeks, and then the city was taken.

**3. Johnston in North Carolina.**—While Sherman held possession of Savannah, it was important that a military force should be placed between him and General Lee's army at Petersburg, and all the troops that could be spared from other places were sent to General Joseph E. Johnston, who had been appointed to command them in North Carolina. General Bragg at Augusta, Georgia, and General Hardee who had retreated from Savannah were ordered to reinforce General Johnston, and the "Army of the Tennessee," which had been encamped in the neighborhood of Meridian, Mississippi, was sent by railroad through the central part of Georgia and South Carolina.

**4. Sherman in the Carolinas.**—In February, Sherman  
Feb. 1, marched from Savannah through South Carolina,  
1865. destroying everything as he passed along. Columbia, he captured and burned. Charleston was evacuated and the Federals took possession. Sherman left his path smoking in ruins behind him, and crossed the Cape Fear river, at Fayetteville.

**5. Averysboro and Bentonville.**—At Fayetteville,  
March General Sherman divided his army, and the  
16-19. two divisions marched toward Goldsboro, on  
roads ten or twelve miles apart. General Johnston attempted to oppose this march, and fought two battles with the left wing—at Averysboro and at Bentonville. He could accomplish nothing more than a short delay of the Federal advance. At Goldsboro, Sherman was joined by reinforcements and Johnston moved to Raleigh.

**6. Virginia.**—The siege of Petersburg and Richmond had been continued through the fall and through the winter of 1864-5. Several attempts had been made to move around the right of General Lee's army and take possession of the South Side Railroad so as to cut off his supplies from the south, but without success.

**7. Sheridan.**—While Sherman was on his march through Carolina, Sheridan, with a cavalry force, moved toward Staunton. General Early's army had become so small that he was obliged to retreat and Sheridan, finding nothing in his way, moved on to Petersburg where he had been ordered to join General Grant. In addition to the ruin which he had already accomplished, he "destroyed the canal and tore up the railroads" by which a part of the supplies were sent to Richmond.

**8. Lee's Condition.**—At this time, General Lee commanded an army of less than forty thousand. With this force, he defended a line thirty-five miles long around Richmond and Petersburg against Grant's immense host of nearly two hundred thousand.

**9. Five Forks.**—General Grant ordered the movement of a heavy force against General Lee's right at April 1, Five Forks. Every man that could be spared 1865. was sent to this place, and the Confederate line, which was so thin that "in some places it consisted of but one man to every seven yards," had to be stretched out still farther.

**10. Richmond Evacuated.**—The next day, a general April 2, attack was made along the lines near Petersburg, and they were broken. The troops defended 1865. their position as long as it was possible, and then withdrew to a line nearer the city where they remained until darkness covered their movements. During the night, they marched out. The siege, kept up through long months, by four times their number, was ended. Grant's army took possession of Richmond in the morning.

**11. The Surrender.**—General Lee then moved his April 9, thinned ranks westward, hoping to reach Johnston in North Carolina. General Grant pursued 1865. him and several bloody engagements followed,

but the retreat went on for seven days. At last, at Appomattox Court House, he met the Federal cavalry in his front. He had been overpowered by numbers and there was nothing left for him to do but to surrender.

When General Lee returned from his interview with General Grant, the officers gathered around him to express the sympathy they felt for their loved commander, but few words were spoken—their lips quivered with a sorrow too deep for words. Eight thousand men at Appomattox—twenty-six thousand in all—were paroled. They were all that were left of Lee's army.

**12. The Sherman-Johnston Convention.**—After April 18, the news of General Lee's surrender, General Johnston and General Sherman met at a house 1865. near Durham's Station, not far from Raleigh, North Carolina, to make terms for the surrender of Johnston's army. The agreement signed by these two generals was that all the Confederate armies should be disbanded and sent to the different States to which they belonged, with orders to place their arms in the State arsenals and to promise "to cease from acts of war;" that each of the seceded States should take its former place in the Union as soon as its government officers should take the oath of allegiance to the United States; and that the rights of the people under the Constitution should be protected.

**13. Johnston's Surrender.**—The Federal authorities objected to these terms, and Johnston surrendered April 26. as Lee had done, without any reference to political questions. By the last of May, all the other Confederate generals had surrendered, and the great civil war was over.

**14. President Lincoln Killed.**—While Generals Sherman and Johnston were planning for the close April 14, of the war, and the people of the North were 1865. rejoicing over their success, they were shocked

to hear that President Lincoln had been assassinated. He was shot while seated in a theatre in Washington, by John Wilkes Booth, one of the actors. Booth escaped, but was afterward caught. He was killed by one of the men who captured him.

**15. Capture of President Davis.**—The president's family had left Richmond some time before the surrender, in order to influence other families to leave the city, because of the scarcity of supplies. President Davis and his cabinet left when Richmond was evacuated, on the passenger train to Danville, and then went on to Greensboro, N. C. From that place, his party traveled in ambulances and wagons through the country, intending to go to some place beyond the Mississippi river. Near Washington, Georgia, he was captured and sent a prisoner to Fortress Monroe, where he remained more than two years. He had been accused of treason, but was released without trial.

**16. Federals and Confederates.**—At the beginning of the war, the North contained a population of more than twenty-two millions; that of the South was less than ten millions, and four millions of that number were negro slaves, who took no part in the war. The whole number of Federal troops enlisted in the army and navy together, amounted to two million six hundred thousand; and the whole number of Confederates was a little more than six hundred thousand. When the Federal army was disbanded, over one million men were sent home; the whole number of paroled Confederate soldiers was one hundred and fifty thousand.

**17. Losses.**—It has been estimated that the number of men killed, together with those who died from wounds or disease, during the war, on both sides amounted to one million men.

**18. Debts.**—An immense amount of paper money was



issued by both governments in order to bear the expense of a vast army and navy, and a heavy burden of debt was brought upon both. Just before the close of the war, one dollar in gold was worth one hundred dollars in Confederate money. The Federal war-debt amounted to two thousand seven hundred millions.

## REVIEW OF IMPORTANT EVENTS.

## 1861.

March.	Abraham Lincoln was inaugurated president.
April.	The bombardment of Fort Sumter.
May.	The Confederate capital was changed to Richmond, Virginia.
June 3.	The battle at Philippi.
July 5.	The battle at Carthage, Mo.
July 21.	The first battle of Manassas.
Aug. 10.	The battle of Oak Hill, Mo.
Nov. 8.	The Confederate commissioners were seized on board the "Trent."

## 1862.

February.	The surrender of Forts Henry and Donaldson.
"	President Davis inaugurated the second time.
"	The fall of Nashville, Tennessee.
March.	The battle between the "Monitor" and the "Virginia."
March.	The battle of Elkhorn, or Pea Ridge.
March to June 9.	The battles in the Valley of Virginia.
April.	The battles of Shiloh.
"	The surrender of Island No. 10.
"	The fall of New Orleans.
May.	The battle of Williamsburg.
"	The battle of Seven Pines.
June.	General R. E. Lee made commander in Virginia.
June to July 1.	The six days' battles around Richmond.
August.	The battle of Cedar Run.
"	The second battle of Manassas.
September.	General Lee invaded Maryland.
"	The battle of South Mountain.
"	Harper's Ferry captured by General Jackson.
September.	The battle of Sharpsburg.
"	The battle of Richmond, Ky.
October.	The battle of Perryville, Ky.
December.	The battle of Fredericksburg.
"	The battle of Murfreesboro, Tenn.

## 1863.

April.	West Virginia admitted to the Union.
"	Fort Sumter attacked.
May.	The battle of Chancellorsville.
"	The death of General Thomas J. Jackson.
"	The battle of Baker's Creek, Miss.
"	The siege of Vicksburg begun.
June.	General Lee invaded Pennsylvania.
July.	The battle of Gettysburg.
"	General Lee returned to Virginia.
"	Vicksburg surrendered.
"	Port Hudson surrendered.
September.	The battles of Chickamauga.
"	General Rosecrans retreated to Chattanooga.
November.	The battle of Missionary Ridge.
"	General J. E. Johnston put in command of the "Army of Tennessee."

## 1864.

February.	The battle of Olustee, or Ocean Pond, Fla.
"	The Meridian campaign begun.
"	The battle of Okolona.
March.	General Grant made lieutenant-general.
"	The Red River campaign begun.
April.	The battle of Mansfield, La.
"	The battle of Pleasant Hill.
May.	The Federal fleet escaped over the falls in Red River.
"	The battles of the Wilderness and Spottsylvania.
"	General Sherman began his march toward At- lanta.
"	General Beauregard drove back Butler's forces from Petersburg.
"	The battles of Dalton, Resaca, and New Hope Church.
"	General Sigel routed at New Market, Va.
June.	The battle of Cold Harbor.
"	The siege of Petersburg begun.
"	The battle of Kennesaw Mountain.
July.	General Early invaded Maryland.
"	The Confederate works at Petersburg were un- dermined.
"	General Johnston retreated to Atlanta.
"	General Hood was placed in command.
"	The battles of Atlanta.

August.	The forts of Mobile were attacked.
September.	The fall of Atlanta.
October.	General Hood began his march to Nashville.
"	Nevada was admitted as a State.
November.	The battle of Franklin, Tennessee.
"	Sherman began his march to the sea.
December.	The battles of Nashville.
"	The fall of Savannah.
"	General Taylor in command of the "Army of Tennessee."

## 1865.

January.	Fort Fisher, North Carolina, was captured.
"	General Johnston was put in command of troops to meet Sherman in North Carolina.
February	General Sherman began his march through the Carolinas.
April.	The battle of Five Forks.
"	Richmond was evacuated.
"	General Lee surrendered.
"	The Sherman-Johnston Convention.
"	General Johnston surrendered.
"	President Lincoln was killed.
"	President Davis was captured.

## TOPICS FOR REVIEW OF THE CIVIL WAR—1861.

1. State the cause of the civil war of 1861.
2. Give an account of the bombardment of Fort Sumter, and tell its results.
3. What were the positions of the Federal and Confederate armies in Virginia in the summer of 1861?
4. What movements were made?
5. Describe the battle of Manassas.
6. What movements were made in the West at the same time?
7. Tell the condition of the Confederate navy.
8. Tell what you know of the Trent affair.
9. What was the condition of the South at the close of 1861?

## 1862.

1. State the Federal plans for 1862, and name the commanders of both armies.
2. Name the battles and Confederate movements in the West before the battle of Shiloh.

3. Give the history of the "Virginia" and its battle with the "Monitor."
4. Give an account of the battle of Shiloh.
5. What circumstances attended the fall of New Orleans?
6. Give the history of the Peninsular campaign.
7. Write a sketch of the life and character of General R. E. Lee.
8. Write a sketch of the life and character of General G. B. McClellan.
9. Write a sketch of the life and character of General Thomas J. Jackson.
10. Describe Stonewall Jackson's Valley campaign.
11. Describe General McClellan's next attempt to reach Richmond, and name the battles fought.
12. Give the history of events while General Pope commanded the Federal army.
13. Write an account of General Lee's invasion of Maryland.
14. What transpired in the West while General Lee was fighting Generals McClellan and Burnside?

## 1863.

1. What were the plans for carrying on the war in 1863?
2. Give the history of General Hooker's "On to Richmond."
3. Tell all you know of the efforts to take Vicksburg.
4. Give the principal events of General Lee's Pennsylvania campaign.
5. What were the movements of Generals Bragg and Rosecrans after the fall of Vicksburg?
6. What were some of the naval operations of 1863?

## 1864.

1. What was the condition of the Confederate States at the beginning of 1864?
2. What victory saved Florida from invasion?
3. Give a sketch of the Meridian campaign.
4. Give a history of the Red river campaign.
5. Give an account of General Grant's advance on Richmond.
6. Tell the history of the expedition sent to meet Butler, Sigel, and Hunter.
7. Write a sketch of General Early's invasion of Maryland.
8. Describe Sherman's advance on Atlanta.
9. Write the history of the movements of General Hood's army.
10. Give an account of Sherman's "march to the sea."

## 1865.

1. What was the situation of the Confederates in 1865?
2. What events marked General Sherman's march through the Carolinas?

3. Give the history of the siege of Petersburg and General Lee's surrender.
4. Tell the circumstances of General Johnston's surrender.
5. Give an account of the death of President Lincoln.
6. Relate the history of the capture of President Davis.
7. Give a statement of the strength and resources of the North and the South for carrying on the war.
8. State the loss on both sides and the debt incurred.

---

BOOKS OF REFERENCE.

Stephens' "War Between the States;" Johnston's "Narrative;" Taylor's "Four Years with Lee;" Semmes' "Memoirs of Service Afloat," and "The Cruise of the Alabama;" Roman's "Military Operation of Beauregard;" Davis' "Rise and Fall of the Confederacy;" Hood's "Advance and Retreat;" Taylor's "Destruction and Reconstruction;" Early's "Last Year of the War;" Jordan and Pryor's "Campaigns of Lieutenant-General Forrest;" Stoddard's "Life of Abraham Lincoln;" Hulbert's "General McClellan;" Johnston and Browne's "Life of A. H. Stephens;" Alfriend's "Life of Jefferson Davis;" Craven's "Prison Life of Jefferson Davis;" Cooke's "Life of Stonewall Jackson," and "Life of R. E. Lee."



## SECTION VII.

### RECONSTRUCTION.

#### CHAPTER I.

JOHNSON'S ADMINISTRATION—1865–1869.

**1. Inauguration.**—On the same day that Mr. Lincoln died, April 15, 1865, the vice-president, Andrew Johnson, of Tennessee, was inaugurated the seventeenth president of the United States.

**2. The most Important Events** of this term were: 1. The reconstruction of the seceded States; 2. The abolition of slavery; 3. The adoption of the Fourteenth Amendment; 4. The impeachment of the president; 5. The admission of Nebraska; 6. The acquisition of Alaska.

**3. Reconstruction.**—The first subject that engaged the attention of the United States government was the conditions on which the seceded States should return to the Union. The president issued several proclamations, offering pardon to all the citizens of these States, except a few who had been leaders in the Confederacy. He also appointed provisional governors for these States.

**4. The Abolition of Slavery.**—An amendment to the constitution which would keep slavery forever from the United States was proposed in Congress. Three-fourths of the States adopted it, and it became a part of the constitution. The new governors in the Southern States had called conventions to form new constitutions in order to assure their re-admission to the Union. The people submitted to the results of the war, the amendments to the constitution were adopted, and their former agreements

with the United States were renewed. At the same time, members to Congress were elected.

**5. The Fourteenth Amendment.**—While these ten States were still out of the Union, another amendment to the constitution was proposed in Congress, by which the negroes would be allowed to vote, and by which some of the white people in the South would be prevented from voting. As the Southern States were unwilling to agree to this, they were declared by Congress to be in a state of rebellion. They were then divided into five military districts and a military ruler placed over each. This brought the whole South under military law, and the Fourteenth Amendment was adopted.

**6. Impeachment.**—The president would not approve these acts of Congress, and, after vetoing several of them, a quarrel followed between him and Congress. Congress impeached the president (that is, accused him of "high crimes and misdemeanors"). He was tried before the Senate, but was not convicted.

**7. Memorial Day.**—The beautiful custom of decorating the soldiers' graves began in Columbus, April 26, Georgia. Mrs. Mary A. Williams was the first 1866. to bring her floral offering; others soon followed her example. Her husband, Colonel C. J. Williams, colonel of the First Georgia Regulars, died in Virginia and was buried in the cemetery at Columbus. Mrs. Williams and her little daughter made frequent visits to the grave of their loved one, and often indulged in the sad pleasure of

**Negroes.**—Generally, the kindest feelings existed between the slave and his master. During the four years of war, while in some sections nearly all the white men were away in the army, their families, left on the plantations with the negroes, dwelt in safety. There were no attempts at insurrection. Freedom came to them as one of the results of the war. They were hired as servants and laborers by the white people.

wreathing the sod with flowers. Once the little girl asked permission to leave a portion of her flowers at the graves of other soldiers who lay sleeping near her father. This request suggested to Mrs. Williams the plan of setting apart one day in every year to lay a tribute of love upon each Confederate grave throughout the South.

Her appeal to the ladies was made through the columns of the *Columbus Times*, in which she said: "We beg the assistance of the press and the ladies throughout the South to aid us in the effort to set apart a certain day to be observed, from the Potomac to the Rio Grande, and to be handed down through time as a religious custom of the South, to wreath the graves of our martyred dead with flowers; and we propose the 26th day of April as the day."

The Soldiers' Aid Societies had not then disbanded, and the members readily responded and re-formed under the name of Memorial Societies. The object of their new work was to make the necessary preparations for the observance of Decoration Day. The work of love which thus had its beginning is now an established custom North and South.

**8. Nebraska** was admitted as the thirty-seventh State in 1867.

**9. Alaska.**—The new Territory of Alaska, embracing five hundred thousand square miles, was purchased 1867. by the United States, the same year, from Russia for seven million two hundred thousand dollars.

## CHAPTER II.

## GRANT'S ADMINISTRATION—1869-1877.

**1. Inauguration.**—

General Ulysses S. Grant, of Illinois, was inaugurated the eighteenth president, March 4, 1869. Schuyler Colfax, of Indiana, had been elected vice-president.

**2. The Principal Events** that marked this administration

were: 1. The completion of the Pacific Railroad. 2. The adoption of the Fifteenth Amend-

ment. 3. The death of General Lee. 4. The Credit Mobilier. 5. The settlement of the Alabama Claims. 6. The Modoc War. 7. Difficulties in Louisiana. 8. The admission of Colorado. 9. The Centennial Exposition. 10. Indian War. 11. The presidential election.

**3. The Pacific Railroad.**—During the first year of this administration, the Pacific Railroad, upon 1869. which had been expended three years of work, was finished. It is one thousand seven hundred and seventy-seven miles in length, and connects with other railroads which bring the Atlantic and Pacific Oceans into communication. It cost about seventy-five million dollars.

**4. The Fifteenth Amendment.**—The first year of



U. S. GRANT.

Jan., 1870. President Grant's term, Virginia, Mississippi and Texas were allowed to seat their representatives in Congress, and the "reconstruction of the Union" was completed. These States adopted the constitution with its Fifteenth Amendment, which gave the right of voting to all "the citizens of the United States without regard to race, color, or previous condition of servitude."

**5. Death of General Lee.**—After the close of the war, General Lee accepted the office of president of Washington College, at Lexington, Virginia, and there his last years were spent. His noble and eventful life ended October 12, 1870, in his 64th year. The news of General Lee's death brought sorrow everywhere. In the cities and towns, "the tolling of bells, flags at half mast, and public meetings of citizens, wearing mourning, marked, in every portion of the South, a great public calamity." Those who knew him best, loved him best, and the chief mourners were the soldiers, who had followed him through so many campaigns, and who had joined in the cheers to "Uncle Robert" (their pet name for him) as, in his gray uniform, he rode down the lines on his old war horse, "Traveller." He left them a noble example. His life was one grand illustration of fidelity to duty. His fame as a military commander has gone out to the world, and he is honored in Europe and America—at the North as well as the South—as "the great General, the true Christian, and the valiant soldier."<sup>a</sup>

<sup>a</sup>In a letter to his son at school, General Lee wrote: "Never do a wrong thing to make a friend or keep one; the man who requires you to do so is dearly purchased at a sacrifice. Deal kindly, but firmly, with all your class-mates; you will find it the policy which wears best. Above all, do not appear to others what you are not. If you have any fault to find with any one, tell him, not others, of what you complain; there is no more dangerous experiment than that of undertaking to be one thing



**6. The Alabama Claims.**—The damage done to the commerce of the United States, during the war, by the Alabama and other Confederate vessels that had been prepared in British ports, caused bitter feelings between the governments of the two countries, and after some correspondence between them, it was decided that the trouble should be settled by treaty. Commissioners from England and the United States met in Washington, and formed a treaty to settle "all causes of difference between the two countries." They also asked for a meeting of delegates from the United States, Great Britain, Switzerland, Italy and Brazil, at Geneva, Switzerland, to make a settlement of the claims against England. They decided that England should pay fifteen and a half million dollars to the United States for the injuries done.

**7. Grant Re-elected.**—General Grant was re-elected 1872. president at the close of his first term.

**8. The Modoc War.**—The Modoc Indians in Oregon 1873. made a treaty with the United States, promising to move to lands that had been set apart for them; but as others of their race had done before them, instead of leaving the State, they hid among the "lava-beds." When commissioners were sent under a flag of truce to treat with

before a man's face and another behind his back. We should live, act and say nothing to the injury of anyone." \* \* \*

\* \* \* "Duty, then, is the sublimest word in our language. Do your duty in all things. \* \* \* You cannot do more; you should never wish to do less."

**Fires at the North.**—In October, 1871, a terrible fire swept over the city of Chicago. It destroyed about eighteen thousand houses, and left nearly one hundred thousand persons without homes.

Immense tracts of forests were burned during the same month in Minnesota, Wisconsin, and Michigan.

The next year, the city of Boston was visited by fire, and a space of sixty-five acres was left in ashes. The loss was estimated at seventy-five million dollars.

them, the Indians fired and killed two white men. War then began against the Modocs, and was carried on until all their warriors were killed or captured.

**9. The Credit Mobilier.**—For the purpose of building the Pacific railroad, a company had been formed called the Credit Mobilier. The railroad was a grand success, and paid a large interest on the money invested. Suspicion had been aroused in regard to the votes of some of the members of Congress. Investigation revealed the fact that some of them had accepted as gifts shares of this railroad stock, and that their votes had been influenced by the gifts. Two members of the House of Representatives were censured, and one Senator was in great danger of losing his seat in disgrace.

**10. Political Troubles.**—About this time, political troubles of a serious nature were disturbing the people of Louisiana. Each party, the Democratic and the Republican, claimed that its candidate for governor had been elected. The president was in favor of Kellogg, the Republican candidate, but the Democrats thought he had not been fairly elected, and that he had no right to the office. By the next year, the excitement had become so great that a fight between several members of the two parties occurred in the streets of New Orleans. Twenty-two men were killed; Kellogg fled to the Custom-house for safety.

The next election brought the same trouble again. Louisiana had two governors and two Legislatures. A committee sent from Congress decided in favor of the Democrats.

Troubles of a similar kind occurred also in South Carolina.

**11. A Panic** in money matters was followed by many failures in business at this time. Its effects were felt throughout the country for several years. The chief cause was speculation in railroads, but it was also one of the results of the war.

**12. Colorado** came into the Union, the thirty-eighth State, in 1876. It has been called the "Centennial State."

**13. The Centennial Exposition.**—This republic celebrated its one hundredth anniversary while General Grant was president. The great International Exhibition or World's Fair was also held at Philadelphia. Large buildings were erected in Fairmount Park for the use of the exhibitors. The six principal houses covered about sixty acres. Products, manufactures and works of art were sent from all parts of the world. Nearly ten millions of visitors attended the exhibition, which was kept open from May to November.

**14. Indian War.**—When the Sioux (soo) Indians agreed to sell to the United States a part of the land lying in Dakota Territory, they reserved, for their own hunting grounds, the country along the Black Hills. After it was reported that gold had been found in the Black Hills, the white men flocked there without any regard for the rights of the Indians. The Sioux sought revenge by attacking the settlers in Montana and Dakota. General Custer was sent with a regiment against them. At Little Big Horn river, his troops were routed. He was killed in the battle. Other Federal forces afterward succeeded in defeating these Indians, and they surrendered. Their chiefs, Sitting Bull and Crazy Horse, with a few companions, fled to British America.

**15. The Presidential Election.**—Another presidential election occurred this year. The Republican candidates were Rutherford B. Hayes, for president, and William A. Wheeler, for vice-president. The Democrats voted for Samuel J. Tilden, of New York, for president, and for Thomas A. Hendricks, of Indiana, for vice-president. Both parties claimed the votes of South Carolina, Florida and Louisiana, and each accused the other of fraud. The matter was finally settled by a commission

of five senators, five representatives and five judges of the Supreme Court. According to their decision, Hayes and Wheeler had received one electoral vote more than the other candidates. The Democrats thought this was unjust, but they made no further opposition.

---

### CHAPTER III.

#### HAYES' ADMINISTRATION—1877-1881.

**1. Inauguration.**—Rutherford B. Hayes, of Ohio, was inaugurated the nineteenth president, Monday, March 5, 1877. He had taken the oath at the "White House" the day before.

**2. Railroad Strikes.**—The depressed state of business 1877. which had been caused by the panic of 1873 made it necessary to reduce the wages of workmen on the railroads. The men were so indignant at this, that they stopped work on different roads and threatened the lives of any men who should be employed in their places. The number of the strikers increased rapidly. They gathered together in mobs, tearing up the railroad tracks and stopping the movements of the trains and mails. The trouble, which began in Maryland, soon spread through other States, and became so unmanageable that the militia could not resist it. A request was then sent to the president for help. In the mining regions, the miners joined in the strike and the riots. At Petersburg, the State troops attempted to arrest the leading rioters, but the crowd fought with rocks and bricks. Many persons were killed. Freight cars were robbed, depots and machine shops were burned, and cars and engines destroyed, amounting to six million dollars' worth of property. Riots also occurred at St. Louis,

Chicago and other cities. The United States forces were sent to quell these disturbances, but it was three weeks before peace was restored and the railroads were in working order again.

**3. Fisheries.**—By the terms of the Treaty of Washington with Great Britain, the fishermen of both nations were allowed to fish in the waters near the eastern coast of Canada and of the United States, But fish were more abundant along the Canadian shores, and, for this reason, these waters were preferred by the fishing boats. The commissioners decided that the United States should pay Great Britain five million five hundred thousand dollars for the fishing that had been done in English waters during the past twelve years. This amount was paid.

**4. The Silver Dollar.**—Up to this time, paper money had been in general use. It was called “greenbacks” from the color of the paper upon which it was printed. In February, Congress voted in favor of coining silver dollars and making them legal tender, that is, giving the silver dollar a standard value for the payment of taxes and revenue duties, although it was not really worth so much as gold in market value. After the banks resumed specie payment, gold began to circulate more freely than it had formerly done.

**5. The Yellow Fever.**—This year, a fearful scourge of the yellow fever epidemic desolated the Mississippi valley from New Orleans to Memphis, and the country along the Gulf coast. People fled from their homes until whole cities were almost deserted. But there were everywhere persons who nobly remained with the sick and the dying. Liberal contributions were sent to the fever districts from people North and South. The disease increased and spread with the heat of the summer sun. Re-



lief came with the frost. The sick were counted by thousands. About seven thousand deaths were reported.

**6. The Ute Indians** on White river, in Colorado, had 1879. been compelled, by the United States agent, to work as farm laborers. This, together with the constant advancement of the white settlements westward, had aroused the hatred of these red men, and they began to show signs of resistance. When a small body of Federal troops was sent out, they began murdering the white people at the agent's station. Several of the soldiers and their commanding officer were killed. A friendly chief, who had done much for the protection of the women and children of the white families, succeeded in quieting the excited and discontented members of the tribe. After reinforcements arrived, peace was restored without further bloodshed.

**7. Prosperity.**—This administration was marked by great prosperity throughout the country. The crops of wheat, corn and cotton, were unusually large, and when sold brought wealth in return. Railroads were built through the South and West—these opened to the world rich belts of country. Every branch of trade and industry became active and profitable. Hundreds and thousands of emigrants from Europe came to our ports.

**8. A New Treaty with China.**—The immense number of immigrants from China, who flocked to the 1880. Pacific States, became a subject for serious thought. The workingmen began to complain of the competition, because the Chinaman was willing to do his work for unreasonably low wages. The question came before Congress, and arrangements were at once begun for a treaty with the Chinese government, which would give to the United States the entire management of emigration from China.

**9. The Election.**—The presidential election in this year also turned in favor of the Republicans. That party voted

for General James A. Garfield, of Ohio, for president, and for Chester A. Arthur, of New York, as vice-president. The Democratic candidates were Winfield S. Hancock, of Pennsylvania, and William H. English, of Indiana.

---

## CHAPTER IV.

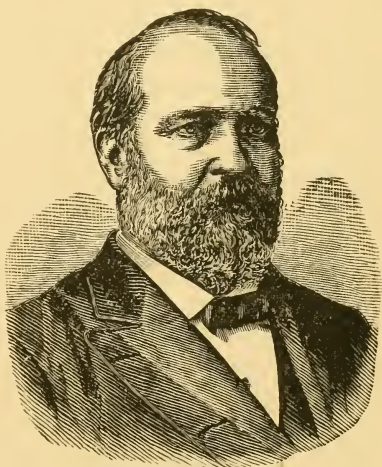
ADMINISTRATIONS OF GARFIELD AND ARTHUR—1881-1885.

### 1. Inauguration.—

James A. Garfield, of Ohio, was inaugurated the twentieth president, March 4, 1881. Chester A. Arthur had been elected vice-president.

### 2. The most Important Events of this term

were: 1. The assassination of President Garfield. 2. Arctic explorations. 3. The execution of Guiteau. 4. The passage of the Civil Service Reform Bill. 5. The establishment of a new standard of time.



JAMES A. GARFIELD.

### 3. Death of President Garfield.—

While President Garfield and his party were waiting at the Baltimore and Potomac depot in Washington City, on July 2, 1881, their way to New England, the president was shot. Two balls struck him, one in the arm, another in the back. The pistol was fired by Charles J. Guiteau, a man

who had been disappointed about receiving the appointment to an office, for which he had applied. The wounded president, accompanied by his physicians, was taken back to the White House. During nine weeks, he remained there suffering intensely from his wounds; he was then removed to Elberon, on the coast of New Jersey. His physicians and friends hoped that he would be benefited by the change, but he continued to grow weaker until September 19, 1881, the day of his death.

**4. President Arthur.**—After the death of General Sept. 20. Garfield, the oath of office was administered to the vice-president, Chester A. Arthur, and he became the twenty-first president. David Davis, of Illinois, was elected by the Senate to succeed him as vice president.

**5. Arctic Explorations.**—The steamer "Jeannette," Aug., owned by Mr. James Gordon Bennett, of New, York, had sailed from San Francisco (July 8 1881. 1879) to the Arctic Ocean. Months and years went by, and nothing was heard of the Jeannette. Captain Hooper was given the command of a ship, which had been made ready to go in search of the missing steamer. He reached Wrangell Island two years later (August 12, 1881). Captain Hooper believed that he was the first white man who had set foot upon this icy coast. He unfurled the "stars and stripes" to the Arctic breeze and claimed the island for the United States. Explorations proved it to be sixty miles long and forty miles wide. Fossil ivory and other curiosities were found among the hills and along the coast.

He found that the commander of the "Jeannette" had been compelled to leave his vessel, and with his crew had perished near the mouth of the Lena river, off the bleak coast of northern Siberia.

**6. The New Apportionment Bill,** which limits the

Feb., number of representatives in Congress to three  
1882. hundred and twenty-five, was passed by both  
houses this year.

**7. Chinese Emigration.**—The Chinese question came before Congress for discussion again during this session. It was urged that a suspension of Chinese emigration was necessary to protect the American laboring men of our country. It was also thought that the introduction among our western people of one hundred thousand laborers, working at low rates of wages, would be a restraint upon inventions, as there would be no need for labor-saving machines, when labor had become so cheap. A bill was passed to suspend Chinese emigration twenty years. President Arthur vetoed this bill, because he thought it was a violation of the treaty with China. A month later, a second bill passed both houses in which the time for the suspension of immigration was made ten years, and to go into effect sixty days after the passage of the bill. It forbade Chinamen from becoming citizens of the United States, and imposed "fines and penalties upon all masters of vessels" who should without authority land Chinese emigrants upon the Pacific shores.

**8. Execution of Guiteau.**—After a long and tedious  
June 30, trial, Guiteau, who had been in prison since  
1882. the assassination of the president, was found  
guilty of murder and sentenced to be hanged.  
He paid the penalty of his crime on the gallows, at the  
United States jail, in Washington City.

**9. River and Harbor Bill.**—In April, Congress re-  
1882. ceived a message from the president, in which he  
recommended that an appropriation of ten mil-  
lions of dollars be made, in addition to that already esti-  
mated, for improving the navigation of the Mississippi  
river, and for protecting the people of the valley from floods.

He said the matter was "of concern to all sections of the country, but to the Northwest, with its immense harvests needing transportation, and to the inhabitants of the river valley, whose lives and property depend upon the construction of the safeguards which protect them from floods, it is of vital importance." Bills had already been presented, asking the attention of Congress to the necessity of improvements in the rivers and harbors of different States. The subject was discussed at considerable length, and, after several additions, the original bill, which had been introduced at the suggestion of the president, was passed by both houses, under the name of the River and Harbor Bill, and sent to the president for his signature. The sense of the bill differed somewhat from the recommendation he had made. It now asked for eighteen millions to be devoted, not only to the Mississippi, but to other local improvements.

The president refused to sign his name to the bill, and stated his objections. He said: "It contains appropriations for purposes not for the common defense or general welfare, and which do not promote commerce among the States, but 'are entirely for the benefit of particular localities.'" He felt that the constitution had not given to Congress or to the president the right to make such use of the public money. The next day, both houses of Congress passed the bill, by a two-thirds vote, over the veto of the president. The majority of the people thought the president was right.

**10. Improvements Proposed.**—In his message to Congress, at its next session, the president advised that all revenue taxes should be abolished except those on distilled liquors; that the rate of import duties, and of letter postage should be reduced; that permanent homes should be secured to the Indians, and provisions made for their education; and that some improved method should be devised for the appointment of persons in public office.



**11. Civil Service Reform Bill.**—Investigation had been made which proved that there were employed Jan., in some of the government departments twice, and 1883. even three times as many persons as the work required. Clerks in these offices often received their appointment through the political influence of Congressmen. A bill was introduced in the Senate called the Pendleton Civil Service Reform Bill, which was intended to correct the evils in the civil service of the United States, and to fill the offices with those who would perform the duties of the office with "fidelity, capacity and honesty." It authorized the president to appoint a commission of "five persons of different political parties, of whom three shall hold no official place, and two shall be experienced in public service." This commission was to aid the president in all necessary arrangements for competitive examinations which applicants would be required to pass, who wished positions in the executive departments of the government in Washington, and in those offices throughout the country, post-offices and custom houses, which employ more than fifty persons. It also provided that no person should receive permanent employment until, upon trial, a sufficient capacity for the work had been proven. After much discussion, this bill was passed by Congress.

**12. Reduction of Postage.**—The rate of postage for an ordinary letter was reduced, this year, from three cents to two cents.

**13. New Standard of Time.**—Much annoyance and confusion had been caused by the various stand- Oct. 11, ards of time adopted by people in different parts 1883. of the country, and by different railroads. Of those living in the same place, some were governed by local time, others by railroad time. The Railway Time Convention met in Chicago and adopted an improved system.

The United States was divided into four sections, each of which embraced fifteen degrees of longitude. In each section, the local time of the central meridian was to be observed as the standard. The first, reaching seven and one-half degrees on each side of the 75th meridian west from Greenwich, was called "Eastern Time." The second, extending seven and one-half degrees on each side of the 90th meridian, was to have its standard one hour later than "Eastern Time," and it was to be known as "Central Time." The third division was measured by the 105th meridian; it was called "Mountain Time," and was two hours slower than "Eastern Time." The 120th meridian passed through the central part of the fourth division, which reached the Pacific Ocean. It was to be three hours behind the first section and called "Pacific Time." The clocks and watches were set by this new standard time, November 18, 1883.

The questions of tariff and free trade were debated in Congress and discussed among the people with greater interest during this year.

**14. The Presidential Election** occupied the attention of parties during the fall of this year. The Republican candidates were, James G. Blaine, of Maine, and John A. Logan, of Illinois. The Democrats had nominated Stephen Grover Cleveland, of New York, and Thomas A. Hendricks, of Indiana. A new party had been formed by the temperance reformers who were called the Prohibitionists. They were using every effort to banish from the country the use of intoxicating liquors. Delegates from this party met in Pittsburgh, and nominated John P. St. John, of Kansas, for president, and William Daniel, of Maryland, for vice-president. Benjamin F. Butler, of Massachusetts, represented the independent Republicans, who were unwilling to vote for Mr. Blaine. After ruling during a term of nearly twenty-five years, the Republican party retired from office. The vote of the people had turned in favor of the Democrats.

**15. Democratic Platform.**—The Democratic party at its last convention had stated the principles which would govern its action. This statement was called its platform. It promised to make “the preservation of personal rights, the equality of citizens before the law, the reserved rights of the States, and the supremacy of the Federal government within the limits of the constitution, the basis of our liberties.” The party also pledged itself “to revise the tariff, in a spirit of fairness to all interests,” and to “limit all taxation to the requirement of economical government.”

**16. Stephen Grover Cleveland,** the son of a Presbyterian minister, was born in the little town of Caldwell, New Jersey, in 1837. He was only three years old when his father removed to Fayetteville, in the State of New York. His time was spent in school, until he reached the age of fourteen. He then began work as clerk in one of the stores of the town. There his industry and faithful attention to his duties soon won for him the confidence and respect of his employers.



PRESIDENT CLEVELAND.

After his father's death, he went to try his fortunes in the city of Buffalo. There he had some hard struggles with poverty. At length, he decided to begin the study of law.

He took the position of office boy for a prominent law firm in Buffalo, and obtained the privilege of using the library belonging to the firm. By industry and study, he finally gained the preparation necessary for admission to the bar, to which his ambition had all along pointed him. His first advent into public life was as assistant-district attorney, then as sheriff. Afterward, at a time when his services were greatly needed, he was elected mayor of the city of Buffalo. The next step was to the governor's office in the capital of New York. While he filled that honored position, he was nominated by the Democratic convention as a candidate for the presidency. In November, 1884, he was elected, and March 4, 1885, he was inaugurated the twenty-second president.

**17. The Death of General Grant.**—General Ulysses

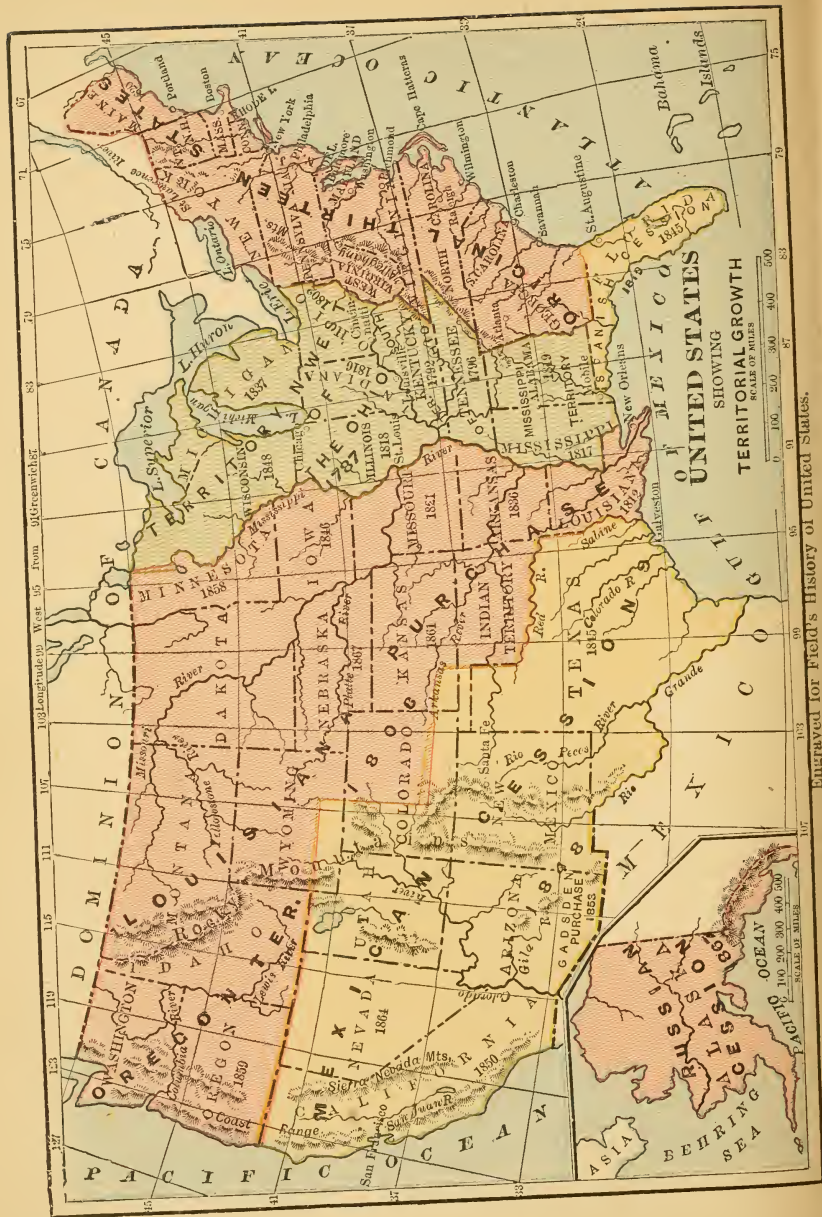
July 23, S. Grant was a native of Ohio; he was born  
April 27, 1822. At the age of seventeen, he  
1885. entered the Military Academy at West Point.

After his graduation, he served in the Mexican War, under General Taylor's command. The official reports of military movements and battles during that war, contain honorable mention of his gallantry on several occasions. In the early part of the Civil War, he commanded a regiment from Illinois. He rose gradually from rank to rank, until after the battle of Shiloh, when he succeeded General Halleck in the command of all the western land forces. His genius for the management of large numbers of men showed itself in his campaigns in Virginia. His success there won for him many honors as a great soldier.

His two terms as president of the United States just after the days of reconstruction, were full of important and difficult work for the country. After his retirement from office, he made a tour around the world, which occupied a little more than two years. Grand receptions were prepared for







him in the principal cities of Europe through which he passed, and in India, China and Japan he met with many evidences of kind feeling and respect for the country which he represented.

After the failures on Wall Street, in 1884, Congress voted to place General Grant upon the retired list "with the rank and full pay of a general in the army." His health had failed; month after month he suffered from a painful disease of the throat, which, in spite of the best medical skill, ended his life, July 23, 1885. His death occurred at Mount McGregor, New York, whither he had been removed with the hope that his life might be prolonged.

At the announcement of his death, the flags in Washington were hoisted at half mast, and the White House draped in mourning. By a proclamation of the president, all places of business in the capitol city were ordered to be closed on the day of his funeral.

---

## CONCLUSION.

**Territorial Growth.**—The first century of our existence as an independent government has shown wonderful growth and progress. From a few towns and scattered settlements along the Atlantic coast, it had reached out to the Mississippi, and extended from Florida to the Great Lakes. Nearly fifteen years passed before the Louisiana Territory was purchased from France. This changed the western boundary to the Rocky Mountains and made its southern limits reach the Gulf of Mexico. The southern borders were widened by the purchase of Florida from Spain, and the addition of Oregon extended the breadth of the Union from ocean to ocean, while the Mexican cession of Texas, California and the southern territories, reached on still westward

and farther toward the South. Alaska has extended our possessions into the frigid zone.

**Population.**—These wide tracts of territory have not lain idle. Emigrants from Europe have crowded to our ports until we now number fifty millions of people, and every year adds thousands to those already here.

**Emigrants.**—Soon after independence was established, the rich lands beyond the mountains began to attract farmers. Settlements were made farther and farther westward. Parties, consisting of several families, generally went out together. They travelled in heavy, covered wagons; the men and the boys drove the cattle. Those were brave hearts that peopled the West in those days. At night, they slept around a camp-fire, their dreams broken by the howling of wild beasts, and many times by attacks from Indians. Friends wept as they parted from those who were going. The journey was long and difficult and it was barely possible that the travellers would return. The Erie canal led emigrants westward because it afforded transportation for their produce back to market. Later, the discovery of gold, in California, led farther onward those whose restless spirits wished for change, and those who saw fortunes within easy reach.

**Inventions.**—Broad fields were cleared by those emigrants from the eastern States. The farmer found that he and his sons could not do all the work necessary for cultivating and harvesting the crops grown on his wide acres. His neighbors too had their hands full of work, and there were no laborers that could be hired to help. This made men think, and look for some plan to meet the difficulty. The result was that machines were invented, to be drawn by horses, and which could prepare the ground, sow the seed, and reap the grain faster and better than hired hands.

Wherever the water-power of streams could be applied to

machinery, mills and factories have been built. Horses have been harnessed to the work, where water could not be made available. Each invention has led to another, and now a mightier helper has been taught to do the labor. Steam turns the wheels where human strength was once needed. It manufactures for us every article we use, prints our books and papers, warms our houses, and does the heaviest work of the laundry. The old cotton cards and spinning-wheels have been put aside, and steam is doing their work in the mills, steadily and rapidly. In this and in a hundred other ways, the old has given place to the new. Steam is working everywhere, threshing the grain, bringing it to market, lifting it by the elevator to its place in the warehouse, and carrying it across the sea to the nations who buy their bread from us.

**Railroads** have spread out from one end of the land to the other, and they are crossing in every direction. Wherever the railroad has pushed its way, the wild forest and prairie have been brought under the influences of civilization. At every step, villages have sprung up, farms have been planted, and churches and school-houses have followed. The principal railroad centres have grown into large cities. Along these extended routes of travel, every arrangement has been made for the comfort of the journey. The sleeping car gives to the traveller sufficient rest and ease to enable him to go long distances without suffering from fatigue.

**Improvements.**—The streets of cities, once dimly lighted by the whale oil lamp, but now bright with gas or electric lights, have almost forgotten the darkness of night. The sewing machine has its place in every home, where it does its part to lighten the burdens of household work. The printing press from the clumsy beginnings which were worked by hand to the steam-power press, which issues thousands of sheets every hour.



**Education.**—Nowhere has the advancement of the age been so much felt as in the school-room. Large sums of the public money have been devoted to the support of common schools, so that the means of education may be placed within the reach of all. Teachers now spend years of study in preparation for their work; and neither time nor money are spared in making the best text-books, maps, charts, furniture, anything that can be made helpful in the proper training of the young.

**Literature.**—Academies, high schools, and colleges have multiplied everywhere. American authors already rival in fame those of Europe. Irving, Bancroft, Prescott, Jones, Stephens; Longfellow, Bryant, Whittier, Lowell, Hayne, Lanier; Cooper, Hawthorne, Holland and Sims, are acknowledged as equals among their contemporaries beyond the sea.

---

#### REVIEW OF IMPORTANT EVENTS FROM 1865.

##### JOHNSON'S ADMINISTRATION.

- 1865|Slavery was abolished in the United States.
- 1867|Alaska was purchased by the United States.
- 1868|President Johnson was impeached.

##### GRANT'S ADMINISTRATION.

- 1869|The Pacific Railroad was completed.
- "|The Fifteenth Amendment was added to the Constitution.
- 1870|General Robert E. Lee died.
- 1873|The Modoc War began.
- "|The Credit Mobilier was investigated.
- "|A financial panic began.
- 1876|Colorado was admitted.
- "|The Centennial Exposition was held.
- "|Indian War began.

##### HAYES' ADMINISTRATION.

- 1877|Railroad strikes gave trouble in the North and West.
- "|The question of fisheries was settled.
- 1878|The Silver Bill was passed.
- "|The yellow fever epidemic prevailed.
- 1879|The Ute Indians caused trouble.
- 1880|A new treaty was made with China.



## ADMINISTRATIONS OF GARFIELD AND ARTHUR.

- 1881 The death of President Garfield.  
 " Arctic explorations were made.  
 1882 The Chinese Immigration Bill was passed.  
 " Guiteau was executed.  
 " The River and Harbor Bill was passed.  
 1883 The Civil Service Reform Bill was passed.  
 " A reduction was made in postage.  
 " A new standard of time was established.

## TOPICS FOR REVIEW.

1. What were the principal events of Johnson's administration?
2. What were the reconstruction measures adopted by Congress?
3. How was slavery abolished?
4. State the cause of the president's impeachment.
5. Name the principal events of Grant's administration.
6. What caused the Alabama claims, and how was the matter settled?
7. What was the Fifteenth Amendment?
8. Give the history of the Modoc War.
9. Explain the evils of the "Credit Mobilier."
10. Give an account of the political troubles in Louisiana and South Carolina.
11. Give an account of the Centennial Exposition.
12. State the circumstances connected with the presidential election in 1876.
13. Give an account of the railroad strikes.
14. How was the question of fisheries settled?
15. What was the Silver Bill?
16. Give the history of the Chinese Immigration Bill.
17. Explain the objects of the River and Harbor Bills.
18. State the objects of the Civil Service Reform Bill.
19. Explain the new standard of time.

## TOPICS FOR GENERAL REVIEW.

1. Trace the beginning and progress of slavery in the United States, also its influence, and the results of that influence.
2. In what way did cotton become a great staple? Trace the changes which its cultivation produced. Tell how it became profitable.
3. Trace the advancement in education and literature.
4. What influence followed from the discovery of gold in California?
5. What effects were produced by the discovery of coal and iron mines in America?
6. What have railroads and steam done for us?

## PRESIDENTS OF THE UNITED STATES.

	<i>Presidents.</i>	<i>Residence.</i>	<i>Time in office.</i>	<i>Date.</i>
1	George Washington....	Virginia.....	Two terms.....	1789-1797.
2	John Adams.....	Massachusetts.	One term.....	1797-1801.
3	Thomas Jefferson.....	Virginia.....	Two terms.....	1801-1809.
4	James Madison.....	Virginia.....	Two terms.....	1809-1817.
5	James Monroe.....	Virginia.....	Two terms.....	1817-1825.
6	John Q. Adams .....	Massachusetts.	One term.....	1825-1829.
7	Gen. Andrew Jackson..	Tennessee.....	Two terms.....	1829-1837.
8	Martin Van Buren.....	New York.....	One term.....	1837-1841.
9	William H. Harrison..	Ohio.....	One month.....	1841.
10	John Tyler.....	Virginia.....	One term.....	1841-1845.
11	James K. Polk.....	Tennessee.....	One term.....	1845-1849.
12	Gen. Zachary Taylor..	Louisiana .....	Sixteen months.	1849-1850.
13	Millard Fillmore.....	New York.....	Part of term.....	1850-1853.
14	Franklin Pierce.....	N'w Ham'shire	One term.....	1853-1857.
15	James Buchanan.....	Pennsylvania..	One term.....	1857-1861.
16	Abraham Lincoln.....	Illinois.....	One term.....	1861-1865.
17	Andrew Johnson.....	Tennessee.....	One term.....	1865-1869.
18	Gen. U. S. Grant.....	Illinois.....	Two terms.....	1869-1877.
19	Rutherford B. Hayes..	Ohio.....	One term.....	1877-1881.
20	James A. Garfield.....	Ohio.....	Six months.....	1881.
21	Chester A. Arthur.....	New York.....	Part of term.....	1881-1885.
22	Grover Cleveland.....	New York.....	.....	1885.

## DATE OF ADMISSION OF STATES.

14	Vermont.....	1791	27	Florida.....	1845
15	Kentucky .....	1792	28	Texas.....	1845
16	Tennessee.....	1796	29	Iowa .....	1846
17	Ohio .....	1802	30	Wisconsin.....	1848
18	Louisiana .....	1812	31	California .....	1850
19	Indiana .....	1816	32	Minnesota.....	1858
20	Mississippi.....	1817	33	Oregon .....	1859
21	Illinois .....	1818	34	Kansas.....	1861
22	Alabama.....	1819	35	West Virginia.....	1863
23	Maine.....	1820	36	Nevada.....	1864
24	Missouri.....	1821	37	Nebraska .....	1867
25	Arkansas .....	1836	38	Colorado.....	1876
26	Michigan .....	1837			

# THE DECLARATION OF INDEPENDENCE.

JULY 4, 1776.

---

DECLARATION BY THE REPRESENTATIVES OF THE THIRTEEN UNITED STATES OF  
AMERICA, ASSEMBLED IN CONGRESS.

WHEN, in the course of human events, it becomes necessary for one people to dissolve the political bands which have connected them with another, and to assume, among the powers of the earth, the separate and equal station to which the laws of nature and nature's God entitle them, a decent respect to the opinions of mankind requires that they should declare the causes which impel them to the separation.

We hold these truths to be self-evident: that all men are created equal; that they are endowed by their Creator with certain unalienable rights; that among these, are life, liberty, and the pursuit of happiness. That, to secure these rights, governments are instituted among men, deriving their just powers from the consent of the governed; that, whenever any form of government becomes destructive of these ends, it is the right of the people to alter or to abolish it, and to institute a new government, laying its foundation on such principles, and organizing its powers in such form, as to them shall seem most likely to effect their safety and happiness. Prudence, indeed, will dictate that governments long established, should not be changed for light and transient causes; and, accordingly, all experience hath shown, that mankind are more disposed to suffer, while evils are sufferable, than to right themselves by abolishing the forms to which they are accustomed. But, when a long train of abuses and usurpations, pursuing invariably the same object, evinces a design to reduce them under absolute despotism, it is their right, it is their duty, to throw off such government, and to provide new guards for their future security. Such has been the patient sufferance of these colonies, and such is now the necessity which constrains them to alter their former systems of government. The history of the present king of Great Britain is a history of repeated injuries and usurpations, all having, in direct object the establishment of an absolute tyranny over these States. To prove this, let facts be submitted to a candid world:

He has refused his assent to laws the most wholesome and necessary for the public good.

He has forbidden his governors to pass laws of immediate and pressing importance, unless suspended in their operation till his assent should be obtained; and, when so suspended, he has utterly neglected to attend to them.

He has refused to pass other laws for the accommodation of large districts of people, unless those people would relinquish the right of representation in the legislature; a right inestimable to them and formidable to tyrants only.

He has called together legislative bodies at places unusual, uncomfortable, and distant from the depository of their public records, for the sole purpose of fatiguing them into compliance with his measures.

He has dissolved representative houses repeatedly, for opposing, with manly firmness, his invasions on the rights of the people.

He has refused, for a long time after such dissolutions, to cause others to be elected; whereby the legislative powers, incapable of annihilation, have returned to the people at large for their exercise; the State remaining, in the meantime, exposed to all the danger of invasion from without, and convulsions within.

He has endeavored to prevent the population of these States, for that purpose, obstructing the laws for naturalization of foreigners; refusing to pass others to encourage their migration hither, and raising the conditions of new appropriations of lands.

He has obstructed the administration of justice, by refusing his assent to laws for establishing judiciary powers.

He has made judges dependent on his will alone, for the tenure of their offices, and the amount and payment of their salaries.

He has erected a multitude of new offices, and sent hither swarms of officers to harass our people, and eat out their substance.

He has kept among us, in times of peace, standing armies, without the consent of our legislatures.

He has affected to render the military independent of, and superior to, the civil power.

He has combined, with others, to subject us to a jurisdiction foreign to our constitution, and unacknowledged by our laws; giving his assent to their acts of pretended legislation:

For quartering large bodies of armed troops among us:

For protecting them, by a mock trial, from punishment for any murders which they should commit on the inhabitants of these States:

For cutting off our trade with all parts of the world:

For imposing taxes on us without our consent:

For depriving us, in many cases, of the benefits of trial by jury:

For transporting us beyond seas to be tried for pretended offences:

For abolishing the free system of English laws in a neighboring province, establishing therein an arbitrary government and enlarging its boundaries, so as to render it at once an example and fit instrument for introducing the same absolute rule into these colonies :

For taking away our charters, abolishing our most valuable laws, and altering, fundamentally, the powers of our government :

For suspending our own legislatures, and declaring themselves invested with power to legislate for us in all cases whatsoever.

He has abdicated government here, by declaring us out of his protection, and waging war against us.

He has plundered our seas, ravaged our coasts, burnt our towns, and destroyed the lives of our people.

He is, at this time, transporting large armies of foreign mercenaries to complete the works of death, desolation, and tyranny, already begun, with circumstances of cruelty and perfidy scarcely paralleled in the most barbarous ages, and totally unworthy the head of a civilized nation.

He has constrained our fellow-citizens, taken captive on the high seas, to bear arms against their country, to become the executioners of their friends and brethren, or to fall themselves by their hands.

He has excited domestic insurrection amongst us, and has endeavored to bring on the inhabitants of our frontiers, the merciless Indian savages, whose known rule of warfare is an undistinguished destruction of all ages, sexes, and conditions.

In every stage of these oppressions, we have petitioned for redress, in the most humble terms ; our repeated petitions have been answered only by repeated injury. A prince, whose character is thus marked by every act which may define a tyrant, is unfit to be the ruler of a free people.

Nor have we been wanting in attention to our British brethren.

We have warned them, from time to time, of attempts made by their legislature to extend an unwarrantable jurisdiction over us. We have reminded them of the circumstances of our emigration and settlement here. We have appealed to their native justice and magnanimity, and we have conjured them, by the ties of our common kindred, to disavow these usurpations, which would inevitably interrupt our connections and correspondence. They, too, have been deaf to the voice of justice and consanguinity. We must, therefore, acquiesce in the necessity, which denounces our separation, and hold them as we hold the rest of mankind — enemies in war, in peace, friends.

We, therefore, the representatives of the UNITED STATES OF AMERICA, in GENERAL CONGRESS assembled, appealing to the Supreme Judge of the world for the rectitude of our intentions, do, in the name, and by the authority of the good people of these colonies, solemnly publish and declare, That these United Colonies are, and of right ought to be, *free and*



*independent States*; that they are absolved from all allegiance to the British crown, and that all political connection between them and the state of Great Britain is, and ought to be, totally dissolved; and that, as FREE AND INDEPENDENT STATES, they have full power to levy war, conclude peace, contract alliances, establish commerce, and do all other acts and things which INDEPENDENT STATES may of right do. And for the support of this declaration, with a firm reliance on the protection of DIVINE PROVIDENCE, we mutually pledge to each other, our lives, our fortunes and our sacred honor.

(Signed)

JOHN HANCOCK.

NEW HAMPSHIRE.	NEW JERSEY.	Charles Carroll, of Carrollton.
Josiah Bartlett, William Whipple, Matthew Thornton.	Richard Stockton, John Witherspoon, Francis Hopkinson, John Hart, Abraham Clark.	VIRGINIA.  George Wythe, Richard Henry Lee, Thomas Jefferson, Benjamin Harrison, Thomas Nelson, jr., Francis Lightfoot Lee, Carter Braxton.
MASSACHUSETTS BAY.	PENNSYLVANIA.	NORTH CAROLINA.
Samuel Adams, John Adams, Robert Treat Paine, Elbridge Gerry.	Robert Morris, Benjamin Rush, Benjamin Franklin, John Morton, George Clymer, James Smith, George Taylor, James Wilson, George Ross.	William Hooper, Joseph Hewes, John Penn.
RHODE ISLAND.	DELAWARE.	SOUTH CAROLINA.
Stephen Hopkins, William Ellery.	Cæsar Rodney, George Read, Thomas McKean.	Edward Rutledge, Thomas Heyward, Thomas Lynch, jr. Arthur Middleton.
CONNECTICUT.	MARYLAND.	GEORGIA.
Roger Sherman, Samuel Huntington, William Williams, Oliver Wilcott.	Samuel Chase, William Paca, Thomas Stone,	Button Gwinnett, Lyman Hall, George Walton.
NEW YORK.		
William Floyd, Philip Livingston, Francis Lewis, Lewis Morris.		

After the Constitution had been adopted by the Convention, Sept. 17, 1787, it was ratified by conventions held in each of the States.

# CONSTITUTION

## OF THE

# UNITED STATES OF AMERICA.\*

---

WE, the people of the United States, in order to form a more perfect union, establish justice, insure domestic tranquillity, provide for the common defence, promote the general welfare, and secure the blessings of liberty to ourselves and our posterity, do ordain and establish this Constitution for the United States of America.

### ARTICLE I--SECTION 1.

1. All legislative powers herein granted shall be vested in a Congress of the United States, which shall consist of a Senate and House of Representatives.

#### SECTION 2.

1. The House of Representatives shall be composed of members chosen every second year by the people of the several States; and the electors in each State shall have the qualifications requisite for electors of the most numerous branch of the State Legislature.

2. No person shall be a representative who shall not have attained to the age of twenty-five years, and been seven years a citizen of the United States, and who shall not, when elected, be an inhabitant of that State in which he shall be chosen.

3. Representatives and direct taxes shall be apportioned among the several States which may be included within the Union, according to their respective numbers, which shall be determined by adding to the whole number of free persons, including those bound to service for a term of years, and excluding the Indians not taxed, three-fifths of all other persons. The actual enumeration shall be made within three years after the first meeting of the Congress of the United States, and within every subsequent term of ten years, in such manner as they shall by law direct. The number of representatives shall not exceed one for every

\*The paragraphs, into which each section is divided, are called clauses of the articles and sections of the Constitution.

thirty thousand, but each State shall have at least one representative ; and until such enumeration shall be made, the State of New Hampshire shall be entitled to choose three; Massachusetts, eight ; Rhode-Island and Providence Plantations, one; Connecticut, five; New York, six; New Jersey, four; Pennsylvania, eight; Delaware, one ; Maryland, six ; Virginia, ten; North Carolina, five; South Carolina, five ; and Georgia, three.

4. When vacancies happen in the representation from any State, the executive authority thereof shall issue writs of election to fill such vacancies.

5. The House of Representatives shall choose their speaker and other officers, and shall have the sole power of impeachment.

### SECTION 3.

1. The Senate of the United States shall be composed of two senators from each State, chosen by the legislature thereof, for six years ; and each senator shall have one vote.

2. Immediately after they shall be assembled in consequence of the first election, they shall be divided as equally as may be into three classes. The seats of the senators of the first class shall be vacated at the expiration of the second year, of the second class at the expiration of the fourth year, and of the third class at the expiration of the sixth year, so that one-third may be chosen every second year ; and if vacancies happen, by resignation or otherwise, during the recess of the legislature of any State, the executive thereof may make temporary appointments until the next meeting of the Legislature, which shall then fill such vacancies.

3. No person shall be a senator who shall not have attained to the age of thirty years, and been nine years a citizen of the United States, and who shall not, when elected, be an inhabitant of that State for which he shall be chosen.

4. The vice-president of the United States shall be president of the Senate, but shall have no vote, unless they be equally divided.

5. The Senate shall choose their other officers, and also a president *pro tempore*, in the absence of the vice-president, or when he shall exercise the office of president of the United States.

6. The Senate shall have the sole power to try all impeachments. When sitting for that purpose, they shall be on oath or affirmation. When the president of the United States is tried, the chief-justice shall preside ; and no person shall be convicted without the concurrence of two-thirds of the members present.

7. Judgment in cases of impeachment shall not extend further than to removal from office, and disqualification to hold and enjoy any office

of honor, trust, or profit, under the United States; but the party convicted shall nevertheless be liable and subject to indictment, trial, judgment and punishment, according to law.

#### SECTION 4.

1. The times, places, and manner of holding elections for senators and representatives, shall be prescribed in each State by the Legislature thereof; but the Congress may at, any time, by law, make or alter such regulations, except as to the places of choosing senators.

2. The Congress shall assemble at least once in every year, and such meeting shall be on the first Monday in December, unless they shall by law appoint a different day.

#### SECTION 5.

1. Each House shall be the judge of the elections, returns, and qualifications of its own members, and a majority of each shall constitute a quorum to do business; but a smaller number may adjourn from day to day, and may be authorized to compel the attendance of absent members, in such manner, and under such penalties as each house may provide.

2. Each House may determine the rules of its proceedings, punish its members for disorderly behaviour, and, with the concurrence of two-thirds, expel a member.

3. Each House shall keep a journal of its proceedings, and from time to time publish the same, excepting such parts as may, in their judgment, require secrecy; and the yeas and nays of the members of either House, on any question shall, at the desire of one-fifth of those present, be entered on the journal.

4. Neither House, during the session of Congress, shall, without the consent of the other, adjourn for more than three days, nor to any other place than that in which the two Houses shall be sitting.

#### SECTION 6.

1. The senators and representatives shall receive a compensation for their services, to be ascertained by law, and paid out of the Treasury of the United States. They shall, in all cases, except treason, felony, and breach of the peace, be privileged from arrest during their attendance at the session of their respective Houses, and in going to and returning from the same; and for any speech or debate in either House, they shall not be questioned at any other place.

2. No senator or representative shall, during the time for which he was elected, be appointed to any civil office under the authority of the United States, which shall have been created, or the emoluments whereof

shall have been increased during such time; and no person holding any office under the United States, shall be a member of either House during his continuance in office.

#### SECTION 7.

1. All bills for raising revenue shall originate in the House of Representatives, but the Senate may propose or concur with amendments as on other bills.

2. Every bill which shall have passed the House of Representatives and the Senate, shall, before it become a law, be presented to the president of the United States; if he approve he shall sign it, but if not he shall return it, with his objections to the House in which it shall have originated, who shall enter the objections at large on their journal, and proceed to reconsider it. If, after such reconsideration, two-thirds of that House shall agree to pass the bill, it shall be sent, together with the objections, to the other House, by which it shall likewise be reconsidered, and if approved by two-thirds of that House it shall become a law. But in all such cases the votes of both Houses shall be determined by yeas and nays, and the names of the persons voting for and against the bill shall be entered on the journal of each House respectively. If any bill shall not be returned by the president within ten days (Sundays excepted) after it shall have been presented to him, the same shall be a law, in like manner as if he had signed it, unless the Congress by their adjournment prevent its return, in which case it shall not be a law.

3. Every order, resolution, or vote to which the concurrence of the Senate and House of Representatives may be necessary (except on a question of adjournment) shall be presented to the president of the United States; and before the same shall take effect, shall be approved by him, or being disapproved by him, shall be repassed by two-thirds of the Senate and House of Representatives, according to the rules and limitations prescribed in the case of a bill.

#### SECTION 8.

The Congress shall have power—

1. To lay and collect taxes, duties, imposts and excises, to pay the debts and provide for the common defense and general welfare of the United States; but all duties, imposts, and excises shall be uniform throughout the United States;

2. To borrow money on the credit of the United States;

3. To regulate commerce with foreign nations, and among the several States, and with the Indian tribes;

4. To establish an uniform rule of naturalization, and uniform laws on the subject of bankruptcies throughout the United States;



5. To coin money, regulate the value thereof, and of foreign coin, and fix the standard of weights and measures;

6. To provide for the punishment of counterfeiting the securities and current coin of the United States;

7. To establish post-offices and post-roads;

8. To promote the progress of science and useful arts, by securing for limited times to authors and inventors the exclusive right to their respective writings and discoveries:

9. To constitute tribunals inferior to the Supreme Court;

10. To define and punish piracies and felonies committed on the high seas, and offences against the law of nations;

11. To declare war, grant letters of marque and reprisal, and make rules concerning captures on land and water;

12. To raise and support armies, but no appropriation of money to that use shall be for a longer term than two years;

13. To provide and maintain a navy;

14. To make rules for the government and regulation of the land and naval forces;

15. To provide for calling forth the militia to execute the laws of the Union, suppress insurrections, and repel invasions;

16. To provide for organizing, arming, and disciplining the militia, and for governing such part of them as may be employed in the service of the United States, reserving to the States respectively the appointment of the officers, and the authority of training the militia according to the discipline prescribed by Congress;

17. To exercise exclusive legislation in all cases whatsoever over such District (not exceeding ten miles square) as may, by cession of particular States and the acceptance of Congress, become the seat of the government of the United States, and to exercise like authority over all places purchased by the consent of the Legislature of the State in which the same shall be, for the erection of forts, magazines, arsenals, dock-yards, and other needful buildings; and,

18. To make all laws which shall be necessary and proper for carrying into execution the foregoing powers, and all other powers vested by this Constitution in the government of the United States, or any department or officer thereof.

#### SECTION 9.

1. The migration or importation of such persons as any of the States now existing shall think proper to admit, shall not be prohibited by the Congress prior to the year one thousand eight hundred and eight, but a tax or duty may be imposed on such importation, not exceeding ten dollars for each person.

2. The privilege of the writ of *habeas corpus* shall not be suspended unless when in cases of rebellion or invasion the public safety may require it.

3. No bill of attainder or *ex post facto* law shall be passed.

4. No capitation or other direct tax shall be laid, unless in proportion to the census or enumeration herein before directed to be taken.

5. No tax or duty shall be laid on articles exported from any State. No preference shall be given by any regulation of commerce or revenue to the ports of one State over those of another: nor shall vessels bound to or from one State be obliged to enter, clear, or pay duties in another.

6. No money shall be drawn from the treasury, but in consequence of appropriations made by law; and a regular statement and account of the receipts and expenditures of all public money shall be published from time to time.

7. No title of nobility shall be granted by the United States; and no person holding any office of profit or trust under them, shall, without the consent of the Congress, accept of any present, emolument, office, or title, of any kind whatever, from any king, prince, or foreign State.

#### SECTION 10.

1. No State shall enter into any treaty, alliance, or confederation; grant letters of marque and reprisal; coin money; emit bills of credit; make anything but gold and silver coin a tender in payment of debts; pass any bill of attainder, *ex post facto* law, or law impairing the obligation of contracts, or grant any title of nobility.

2. No State shall, without the consent of the Congress, lay any imposts or duties on imports or exports, except what may be absolutely necessary for executing its inspection laws; and the net produce of all duties and imposts laid by any State on imports or exports shall be for the use of the treasury of the United States; and all such laws shall be subject to the revision and control of the Congress. No State shall, without the consent of Congress, lay any duty of tonnage, keep troops or ships of war in time of peace, enter into any agreement or compact with another State, or with a foreign power, or engage in war, unless actually invaded or in such imminent danger as will not admit of delay.

#### ARTICLE II.—SECTION 1.

1. The executive power shall be vested in a president of the United States of America. He shall hold his office during the term of four years and, together with the vice-president, chosen for the same term, be elected, as follows:

2. Each State shall appoint, in such manner as the Legislature thereof may direct, a number of electors, equal to the whole number of senators and representatives to which the State may be entitled in the Congress; but no senator or representative, or person holding an office of trust or profit under the United States, shall be appointed an elector.

*The 12th Article of Amendments has been adopted instead of Clause 3.*

4. The Congress may determine the time of choosing the electors, and the day on which they shall give their votes; which day shall be the same throughout the United States.

5. No person except a natural born citizen, or a citizen of the United States, at the time of the adoption of this Constitution, shall be eligible to the office of president; neither shall any person be eligible to that office who shall not have attained to the age of thirty-five years, and been fourteen years a resident within the United States.

6. In case of the removal of the president from office, or of his death, resignation, or inability to discharge the powers and duties of the said office, the same shall devolve on the vice-president, and the Congress may by law provide for the case of removal, death, resignation, or inability, both of the president and vice-president, declaring what officer shall then act as president, and such officer shall act accordingly, until the disability be removed, or a president shall be elected.

7. The president shall, at stated times, receive for his services a compensation, which shall neither be increased nor diminished during the period for which he shall have been elected, and he shall not receive within this period any other emolument from the United States or any of them.

8. Before he enter on the execution of his office, he shall take the following oath or affirmation:

"I do solemnly swear (or affirm) that I will faithfully execute the office of president of the United States, and will to the best of my ability, preserve, protect, and defend the Constitution of the United States."

## SECTION 2.

1. The president shall be commander-in-chief of the army and navy of the United States, and of the militia of the several States, when called into the actual service of the United States; he may require the opinion, in writing, of the principal officer in each of the executive departments, upon any subject relating to the duties of their respective offices, and he shall have power to grant reprieves and pardons for offences against the United States, except in cases of impeachment.

2. He shall have power, by and with the advice and consent of the Senate, to make treaties, provided two-thirds of the senators present con-

cur; and he shall nominate, and by and with the advice and consent of the Senate, shall appoint ambassadors, other public ministers and consuls, judges of the Supreme Court, and all other officers of the United States, whose appointments are not herein otherwise provided for, and which shall be established by law; but the Congress may by law vest the appointment of such inferior officers, as they think proper, in the president alone, in the courts of law, or in the heads of departments.

3. The president shall have power to fill up all vacancies that may happen during the recess of the Senate, by granting commissions which shall expire at the end of their next session.

#### SECTION 3.

1. He shall, from time to time, give to the Congress information of the state of the Union, and recommend to their consideration such measures as he shall judge necessary and expedient; he may, on extraordinary occasions, convene both Houses, or either of them, and in case of disagreement between them with respect to the time of adjournment, he may adjourn them to such time as he shall think proper; he shall receive ambassadors and other public ministers; he shall take care that the laws be faithfully executed, and shall commission all the officers of the United States.

#### SECTION 4.

1. The president, vice-president and all civil officers of the United States shall be removed from office on impeachment for, and conviction of treason, bribery, or other high crimes and misdemeanors.

### ARTICLE III.—SECTION 1.

1. The judicial power of the United States shall be vested in one Supreme Court, and in such inferior courts as the Congress may from time to time ordain and establish. The judges, both of the Supreme and inferior courts, shall hold their offices during good behavior, and shall, at stated times, receive for their services a compensation which shall not be diminished during their continuance in office.

#### SECTION 2.

1. The judicial power shall extend to all cases, in law and equity arising under this Constitution, the laws of the United States, and treaties made, or which shall be made, under their authority; to all cases affecting ambassadors, or other public ministers and consuls; to all cases of admiralty and maritime jurisdiction; to controversies to which the United States shall be a party; to controversies between two or more States; between a State and citizens of another State; between citizens of

different States; between citizens of the same State claiming lands under grants of different States; and between a State, or the citizens thereof, and foreign States, citizens or subjects.

2. In all cases affecting ambassadors, other public ministers, and consuls, and those in which a State shall be party, the Supreme Court shall have original jurisdiction. In all the other cases before mentioned, the Supreme Court shall have appellate jurisdiction, both as to law and fact, with such exceptions and under such regulations as the Congress shall make.

3. The trial of all crimes, except in cases of impeachment, shall be by jury; and such trial shall be held in the State where the said crimes shall have been committed; but when not committed within any State, the trial shall be at such place or places as the Congress may by law have directed.

#### SECTION 3.

1. Treason against the United States shall consist only in levying war against them, or in adhering to their enemies, giving them aid or comfort. No person shall be convicted of treason unless on the testimony of two witnesses to the same overt act, or on confession in open court.

2. The Congress shall have power to declare the punishment of treason, but no attainder of treason shall work corruption of blood, or forfeiture except during the life of the person attainted.

#### ARTICLE IV.—SECTION 1.

1. Full faith and credit shall be given in each State to the public acts, records, and judicial proceedings of every other State. And the Congress may, by general laws, prescribe the manner in which such acts, records, and proceedings shall be proved, and the effect thereof.

#### SECTION 2.

1. The citizens of each State shall be entitled to all the privileges and immunities of citizens in the several States.

2. A person charged in any State with treason, felony, or other crime, who shall flee from justice, and be found in another State, shall, on demand of the executive authority of the State from which he fled, be delivered up, to be removed to the State having jurisdiction of the crime.

3. No person held to service or labor in one State, under the laws thereof, escaping into another, shall, in consequence of any law or regulation therein, be discharged from such service or labor, but shall be delivered up on claim of the party to whom such service or labor may be due.



## SECTION 3.

1. New States may be admitted by the Congress into the Union; but no new State shall be formed or erected within the jurisdiction of any other State; nor any State be formed by the junction of two or more States, or parts of States, without the consent of the Legislature of the States concerned as well as of the Congress.

2. The Congress shall have power to dispose of and make all needful rules and regulations respecting the territory or other property belonging to the United States; and nothing in this Constitution shall be so construed as to prejudice any claims of the United States, or of any particular State.

## SECTION 4.

1. The United States shall guarantee to every State in the Union a republican form of government, and shall protect each of them against invasion; and, on application of the Legislature, or of the executive (when the Legislature cannot be convened) against domestic violence.

## ARTICLE V.

The Congress, whenever two-thirds of both Houses shall deem it necessary, shall propose amendments to this Constitution, or, on the application of the Legislatures of two-thirds of the several States, shall call a convention for proposing amendments, which, in either case, shall be valid to all intents and purposes, as part of the Constitution, when ratified by the Legislatures of three-fourths of the several States, or by conventions in three-fourths thereof, as the one or the other mode of ratification may be proposed by the Congress: provided, that no amendment which may be made prior to the year one thousand eight hundred and eight shall in any manner affect the first and fourth clauses in the ninth section of the first article; and that no State, without its consent, shall be deprived of its equal suffrage in the Senate.

## ARTICLE VI.

1. All debts contracted and engagements entered into, before the adoption of this Constitution, shall be as valid against the United States under this Constitution as under the Confederation.

2. This Constitution, and the laws of the United States which shall be made in pursuance thereof, and all treaties made, or which shall be made, under the authority of the United States, shall be the supreme law of the land; and the judges in every State shall be bound thereby, anything in the Constitution or laws of any State to the contrary notwithstanding.

3. The senators and representatives before mentioned, and the mem-

bers of the several State Legislatures, and all executive and judicial officers, both of the United States and of the several States, shall be bound by oath or affirmation to support this Constitution ; but no religious test shall ever be required as a qualification to any office or public trust under the United States.

#### ARTICLE VII.

The ratification of the conventions of nine States, shall be sufficient for the establishment of this Constitution between the States so ratifying the same.

---

### AMENDMENTS TO THE CONSTITUTION.

#### ARTICLE I.

Congress shall make no law respecting an establishment of religion, or prohibiting the free exercise thereof ; or abridging the freedom of speech, or of the press ; or of the right of the people peaceably to assemble, and to petition the government for a redress of grievances.

#### ARTICLE II.

A well regulated militia being necessary to the security of a free State, the right of the people to keep and bear arms, shall not be infringed.

#### ARTICLE III.

No soldier shall, in time of peace, be quartered in any house without the consent of the owner, nor in time of war, but in a manner to be prescribed by law.

#### ARTICLE IV.

The right of the people to be secure in their persons, houses, papers, and effects, against unreasonable searches and seizures, shall not be violated, and no warrants shall issue, but upon probable cause, supported by oath or affirmation, and particularly describing the place to be searched, and the person or things to be seized.

#### ARTICLE V.

No person shall be held to answer for a capital, or otherwise infamous crime, unless on a presentment or indictment of a grand jury, except in cases arising in the land or naval forces, or in the militia, when in actual service in time of war or public danger ; nor shall any person be subject for the same offence to be twice put in jeopardy of life or limb ; nor shall be compelled in any criminal case to be a witness against himself ; nor be deprived of life, liberty, or property, without due process of law ; nor

shall private property be taken for public use without just compensation.

#### ARTICLE VI.

In all criminal prosecutions, the accused shall enjoy the right to a speedy and public trial, by an impartial jury of the State and district wherein the crime shall have been committed, which district shall have been previously ascertained by law, and to be informed of the nature and cause of the accusation; to be confronted with the witnesses against him; to have compulsory process for obtaining witnesses in his favor, and to have the assistance of counsel for his defence.

#### ARTICLE VII.

In suits at common law, where the value in controversy shall exceed twenty dollars, the right of trial by jury shall be preserved, and no fact tried by a jury shall be otherwise re-examined in any court of the United States, than according to the rules of the common law.

#### ARTICLE VIII.

Excessive bail shall not be required, nor excessive fines imposed, nor cruel and unusual punishments inflicted.

#### ARTICLE IX.

The enumeration in the Constitution of certain rights shall not be construed to deny or disparage others retained by the people.

#### ARTICLE X.

The powers not delegated to the United States by the Constitution, nor prohibited by it to the States, are reserved to the States respectively, or to the people.

#### ARTICLE XI.

The judicial power of the United States shall not be construed to extend to any suit in law or equity, commenced or prosecuted against one of the United States by citizens of another State, or by citizens or subjects of any foreign State.

#### ARTICLE XII.

The electors shall meet in their respective states, and vote by ballot for president and vice president, one of whom at least shall not be an inhabitant of the same state with themselves; they shall name in their ballots the person voted for as president, and in distinct ballots the person voted for as vice-president, and they shall make distinct lists of all persons voted for as president and of all persons voted for as vice-president, and of the number of votes for each, which lists they shall sign and certify, and transmit sealed to the seat of the government of the

United States directed to the president of the Senate. The president of the Senate shall, in presence of the Senate and House of Representatives, open all the certificates, and the votes shall then be counted; the person having the greatest number of votes for president, shall be the president, if such number be a majority of the whole number of electors appointed; and if no person have such majority, then from the persons having the highest numbers, not exceeding three, on the list of those voted for as president, the House of Representatives shall choose immediately, by ballot, the president. But in choosing the president, the votes shall be taken by States, the representation from each State having one vote; a quorum for this purpose shall consist of a member or members from two-thirds of the States, and a majority of all the States shall be necessary to a choice. And if the House of Representatives shall not choose a president whenever the right of choice shall devolve upon them, before the fourth day of March next following, then the vice-president shall act as president, as in the case of the death or other constitutional disability of the president. The person having the greatest number of votes as vice-president, shall be the vice-president, if such number be a majority of the whole number of electors appointed, and if no person have a majority, then from the two highest numbers on the list, the Senate shall choose the vice-president; a quorum for the purpose shall consist of two-thirds of the whole number of senators, and a majority of the whole number shall be necessary to a choice. But no person constitutionally ineligible to the office of president shall be eligible to that of vice-president of the United States.

#### ARTICLE XIII.—SEC. 1.

1. Neither slavery nor involuntary servitude, except as punishment for crime, whereof the party shall have been duly convicted, shall exist within the United States, or any place subject to their jurisdiction.

2. Congress shall have power to enforce this article by appropriate legislation.

#### ARTICLE XIV.

1. All persons born or naturalized in the United States, and subject to the jurisdiction thereof, are citizens of the United States and of the State wherein they reside. No State shall make or enforce any law which shall abridge the privileges or immunities of citizens of the United States; nor shall any State deprive any person of life, liberty, or property, without due process of law, nor deny any person within its jurisdiction the equal protection of the laws.

2. Representatives shall be apportioned among the several States according to their respective numbers, counting the whole number of persons in each state, excluding Indians not taxed. But when the right

to vote at any election for the choice of electors for president and vice-president of the United States, representatives in Congress, the executive and judicial officers of a State, or the members of the Legislature thereof, is denied to any of the male inhabitants of such State, being 21 years of age, and citizens of the United States, or in any way abridged, except for participation in rebellion or other crime, the basis of representation therein shall be reduced in the proportion which the number of such male citizens shall bear to the whole number of male citizens twenty-one years of age in such State.

2. No person shall be a senator or representative in Congress, or elector of president and vice-president, or hold any office, civil or military, under the United States, or under any State, who, having previously taken an oath, as a member of Congress, or as an officer of the United States, or as a member of any State Legislature, or as an executive or judicial officer of any State, to support the Constitution of the United States, shall have engaged in insurrection or rebellion against the same or given aid or comfort to the enemies thereof. But Congress may, by a vote of two thirds of each house, remove such disability.

4. The validity of the public debt of the United States, authorized by law, including debts incurred for payments of pensions and bounties for services in suppressing insurrection or rebellion, shall not be questioned. But neither the United States nor any state shall assume or pay any debt or obligation incurred in aid of insurrection or rebellion against the United States, or any claim for the loss or emancipation of any slave; but all such debts, obligations, and claims shall be held illegal and void.

5. The Congress shall have power to enforce by appropriate legislation, the provisions of this article.

#### ARTICLE XV.

1. The right of citizens of the United States to vote shall not be denied or abridged by the United States, or by any State, on account of race, color or previous condition of servitude.

2. The Congress shall have power to enforce this article by appropriate legislation.



# INDEX.

- Acadia, 16; inhabitants scattered, 84  
 Adams, John, 159; death, 185.  
 Adams, John Quincy, 184.  
 Alabama admitted, 182.  
 Alabama Claims 277.  
 Alabama sunk, 261.  
 Alaska, 274.  
 Albemarle, 64.  
 Algiers, War with, 180.  
 Amendment, fourteenth, 373.  
 Amendment, fifteenth, 275.  
 America discovered, 5; naming, 11.  
 America, South, 8.  
 American army, 105; 114.  
 Amherst, Gen., 89.  
 Amsterdam, New, 51.  
 Andre captured, 135.  
 Andros, Sir E., 49.  
 Anna, North, 252.  
 Apportionment Bill, 284.  
 Arctic explorations, 284.  
 Arnold's march to Quebec, 107; his  
 treason, 135; reward, 136; in Vir-  
 ginia, 138.  
 Argus, 176.  
 Arkansas admitted, 191.  
 Army disbanded, 143.  
 Articles of Confederation, 121.  
 Arthur, President, 284.  
 Atlanta, 257; battles of, 258; fall of,  
 258; burned, 259.  
 Atlantic cable, 208.  
 Augusta, 74; 140.  
 Augustine, St., 16.  
 Bacon's rebellion, 30.  
 Baltimore, Lord, 61.  
 Baltimore, 178; riot in, 220.  
 Beauregard, 217; 253.  
 Bennington, 118.  
 Buena Vista, 199.  
 Big Bethel, 222.  
 Black Hawk war, 188.  
 Bleeding wounds, 202.  
 Blockade, 163.  
 Boone, Daniel, 157.  
 Boston, 35; troops in, 97; massacre,  
 97; tea-party, 99; port-bill, 99;  
 sympathy for, 99; evacuation of,  
 108  
 Braddock's advance, 84.  
 Bragg, 230; in Kentucky, 239.  
 Bragg and Rosecrans, 247.  
 Breckinridge, 253.  
 Breed's Hill, fortified, 104.  
 Briar Creek, 126.  
 British goods, 96; peace commis-  
 sioners, 122; traders, 181.  
 Brown's (John) raid, 208.  
 Brown, Joseph E., 257.  
 Buffalo, 177.  
 Bunker Hill, 104.  
 Burgoyne's advance, 117; surren-  
 der, 119.  
 Burnside, 238.  
 Cabots, The, 11.  
 Cabinet, 155.  
 Canada invaded, 107; 169; 170;  
 campaign in, 177.  
 Canadian rebellion, 193.  
 California, 198; 202; gold, 201; ad-  
 mitted, 204.  
 Calhoun, 189; death, 204.  
 Capitol changed, 160; 220.  
 Carolina, 65; cavaliers in, 69.  
 Carolina, North, 66.  
 Carolina, South, 129; 130.  
 Cartier, 15.  
 Causes of the war, 219.  
 Cedar Run, 237.  
 Cerro Gordo, 200.  
 Chad's Ford, 117.  
 Chambersburg, 254.  
 Champlain, 16.  
 Chancellorsville, 242.  
 Charleston, 67; 109; 130; attacked,  
 109.  
 Chattonooga, 248.  
 Cherokee, War with, 91; 110.

- "Chesapeake," 164.  
 Chesapeake Bay, 176.  
 Chickamauga, 247.  
 China, 195; new treaty with, 282.  
 Chinese emigration, 285.  
 Civil Service, 287.  
 Clarendon, 65.  
 Clay, Henry, 189; death, 204; compromise bill, 188; 204.  
 Clayborne, William, 62.  
 Cleveland, Prest., 289.  
 Close of the war, 142.  
 Coal discovered, 152.  
 Cold Harbor, 253.  
 Cold Saturday, 120.  
 Colonies, differences, 147.  
 Colorado, 279.  
 Columbus, 3; voyage, 4; discovery, 5; return, 6; second voyage, 7.  
 Columbia river explored, 161.  
 Concord, 102.  
 Confederates, 266; troops, 220; in Virginia, 222; navy, 225.  
 Congress, 96; 154; Continental Congress, 100; 104.  
 Constitution of U. S., 154.  
 "Constitution," 171; 172.  
 Conway Cabal, 120.  
 Cornwallis, Retreat of, 115; proclamation, 133; movements, 134; in Virginia, 141; surrender, 137.  
 Cotton Mather, 50.  
 Cotton gin invented, 152.  
 Cowpens, 137.  
 Credit Mobilier, 278.  
 Creek Indians, 175; 185.  
 Cross and lilies, 78.  
 Crown Point, 85, 103.  
 Culpepper, 30.  
  
 Dade, Maj., 191.  
 Dalton, 256.  
 Danes, The, 56.  
 Davis, Jefferson, 210; inaugurated, 227; captured, 266.  
 Debts, 266.  
 Declaration of Independence, 111; of war, 169.  
 Delaware, Lord, 27.  
 Democratic platform, 289.  
 D'Estaing's fleet, 123.  
 DeSoto, 170.  
 Detroit, 170.  
 Dress, 150.  
 Drewry's Bluff, 232.  
  
 Dutch, The, 61; traders, 51; customs, 52; homes, 53; habits, 53; dress, 53; government, 54; Dutch and English, 55.  
 Duke of York, 54.  
 Du Quesne, Fort, 83; 88.  
  
 Early, Gen., 253; invasion, 254.  
 Education, 57.  
 Elizabeth, 57.  
 Election, 279; 282; 288.  
 Electoral College, 154.  
 Emancipation, 241.  
 Embargo act, 165.  
 Emigrants, 292; aid societies, 206.  
 England, 167; condition, 134.  
 English, The, 61; rule, 54; claims, 80.  
 "Enterprise," The, 176.  
 Erie, Fort, 177; canal, 185.  
 "Essex," The, 171.  
 Eutaw Springs, 140.  
 Federals in Virginia, 220; fleet, 251.  
 Federalists and anti-federalists, 156.  
 Fisher, Fort, 262.  
 Fisheries, 281.  
 Fishdam Ferry, 135.  
 Five Forks, 264.  
 Fires at the North, 277.  
 Four parties, 209.  
 Florida, 183; 195; war in, 190; 193.  
 France and England, 78.  
 France, Assistance from, 116; trouble with, 158.  
 Franklin, 259.  
 Fredericksburg, 238.  
 French settlers, 70; alliance, 111; forts, 81; fleet, 135.  
 French and Indian war, 81.  
 Frenchtown, 172.  
 Frontenac, 88.  
 Fugitive slave law, 205.  
 Furniture, 149.  
  
 Gadsden purchase, 205.  
 Garfield, President, inaugurated, 283; death, 283.  
 Gates, Gen., 132.  
 Georgia, 72; 100; 103; invaded, 144.  
 George, Fort, 173.  
 George, Lake, 85.  
 Genet, Citizen, 158.  
 Germantown, 119.  
 Gettysburg, 245.  
 Gilbert, Sir Humphrey, 17.

- Gorges, 41.  
 Government of U. S., 155.  
 Grand Model, 65.  
 Grant, 252; 290.  
 Green, Gen., 136; in Carolina, 137; retreat, 138; among the hills, 140.  
 Growth, 60; 148; 291.  
 Guadaloupe Hidalgo, 200.  
 Guilford C. H., 138.  
 Guiteau, 383.  
 Harper's Ferry, 238.  
 Harrison, President, 194; death, 194.  
 Hart, Nancy, 125.  
 Hartford convention, 179.  
 Harvard University, 44.  
 Henry and Donaldson, Forts, 227.  
 Hobkirk's Hill, 139.  
 Home of the settler, 68.  
 Hood in Tennessee, 258.  
 Hooker, Gen., 241.  
 Hudson, Henry, 21.  
 Hudson, Port, 247.  
 Huguenots, 15.  
 Iowa admitted, 195.  
 Illinois admitted, 185.  
 Impeachment, 373.  
 Improvements, 286; 293.  
 Indians, 8; 34; 66; 73; 155; massacre, 28; war, 29; 52; 279; corn, 34; treaty, 55; subdued, 158; removed, 190; Ute, The, 282.  
 Indians with the French, 80.  
 Indiana admitted, 180.  
 Indigo, 75.  
 Industries, 147.  
 Inventions, 292.  
 Jamestown, 23.  
 Jackson inaugurated, 187.  
 Jackson, T. J., 234; joins Lee, 235; campaign in the valley, 234; wounded, 242; death, 243.  
 Japan, Negotiations with, 347.  
 Jerseys united, 57.  
 Jasper, Sergeant, 110.  
 Jefferson, 161; death, 185.  
 Jones, Paul, 128.  
 Johnson, 86.  
 Johnston's retreat, 228; 248; in North Carolina, 263; surrender, 265.  
 Kansas, 205; 206; 211.  
 Kearney, Gen., 198.  
 Kennesaw, 257.  
 Kentucky, 157.  
 Kettle Creek, 126.  
 Kidd, Capt. 56.  
 King's Mountain, 133.  
 Know-nothings, 206.  
 Knoxville, 248.  
 LaFayette, 116; 184.  
 LaSalle, 79.  
 Laws, 36.  
 Lawrence, Capt., 174.  
 Lee, Gen. Chas., 113; 122.  
 Lee, Gen. R. E., 233; 245; 264.  
 Lexington, 101.  
 Lincoln, Gen., 125.  
 Lincoln, President, 217; proclamation, 220; death, 265; 276.  
 Literature, 294.  
 London and Plymouth Co., 20.  
 Loudon, Fort, 91.  
 Long Island, 112.  
 Louisburg, 87.  
 Louisiana, 79; purchase, 161; admitted, 167.  
 Losses, 266.  
 Lundy's Lane, 177.  
 Madison, Jas., 166.  
 Mail line, 64.  
 Maine, 43.  
 Manhattan Is., 21.  
 Manassas, 233; 237.  
 Mansfield, 200.  
 Marion, 131; 139.  
 Marquette, 79.  
 Maryland, 237.  
 Mason and Dixon's Line, 64.  
 Mason's grant, 42.  
 Mass. Bay Co., 35.  
 Mayflower, The, 33.  
 Meade, Gen., 245.  
 Mecklenburg declaration, 103.  
 Melendez, 16.  
 Meig's, Fort, 173.  
 Memorial day, 373.  
 Meridian campaign, 249.  
 Mexico, city of, 200.  
 Mexican war, 197.  
 Mifflin and Mercer, Forts, 120.  
 Minuit, Peter, 51.  
 Minnesota admitted, 181.  
 Mississippi, The, 78; west of, 227.

Mississippi admitted, 181.  
 Missionary Ridge, 248.  
 Missouri admitted, 183; compromise, 183.  
 Mobile, 261.  
 Modoc war, 277.  
 Monitor and Virginia, 228.  
 Monmouth, 122.  
 Monroe inaugurated, 181; doctrine, 184.  
 Montreal, 90.  
 Morris, Robt., 137.  
 Morristown, 29.  
 Mormons, 208.  
 Moultrie, Fort, 110.  
 McClellan, Gen., 233.

National bank, 190.  
 Nevada, 262.  
 Naval operations, 248; 261.  
 Navigation Acts, 94.  
 Navy, 169; 179.  
 Nashville, 227; 259.  
 Nebraska, 274.  
 Necessity, Fort, 83.  
 Negroes, 68; 74; 373.  
 New England, 45; house in, 37.  
 New Haven, 41.  
 New Hope Church, 257.  
 New Jersey, 56.  
 New Netherlands, 51.  
 New Orleans, 179; fall of, 230.  
 Newport, 39.  
 New Sweden, 60.  
 Niagara, Fort, 85.  
 Ninety-Six, Fort, 139.  
 Northeastern boundary, 194.  
 Northmen, The, 2.  
 Northwestern boundary, 196.  
 Northwest Territory, 143.

Ohio Co., The, 82.  
 Ohio admitted, 161.  
 Okolona, 250.  
 Okechobee, 193.  
 Olustee, 249.  
 Omnibus bill, 203.  
 Ontario, Fort, 86.  
 Oregon, 183.  
 Oswego, Fort, 86.

Pacific Ocean, 12.  
 Panic, 191; 278.  
 Paris, Treaty of, 92.

Poulus Hook, 127.  
 Peace, 180; Congress, 211; commissioners, 212.  
 Penn, William, 58; 60; treaty with Indians 59.  
 Pennsylvania, 58; campaign, 244.  
 Peninsular campaign, 232.  
 Pequod war, The, 43.  
 Perry's victory, 174.  
 Perryville, 240.  
 Petersburg, Siege of, 253.  
 Philadelphia, 58; 116; 117; 122; "Philadelphia," The, 163.  
 Pierce, Franklin, 204.  
 Pilgrim fathers, 32.  
 Plattsburg, 177.  
 Pleasant Hill, 250.  
 Plymouth, 33.  
 Pocahontas, 25.  
 Political troubles, 278.  
 Polk, Jas. K., inaugurated, 196.  
 Ponce de Leon, 12.  
 Pontiac war, 91.  
 Pope, Gen., 236.  
 Population, 292.  
 Porter, Com., 176.  
 Postage, 287.  
 "President," The, 169.  
 Princeton, 115; college, 57.  
 Printing press, The, 45.  
 Progress, 165.  
 Prosperity, 282.  
 Providence, 39.  
 Pulaski, Count, 117.

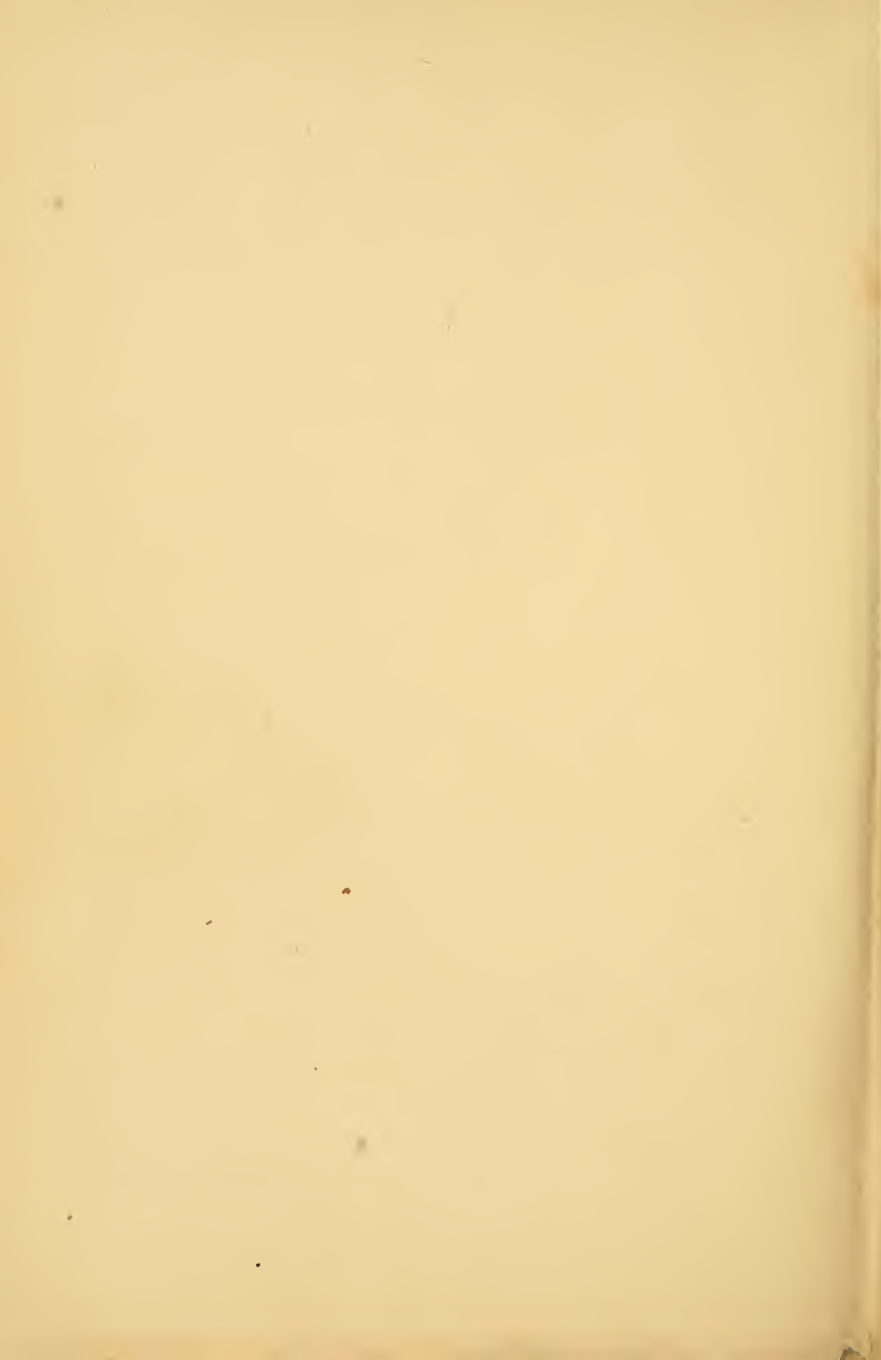
Quakers, 45; 46.  
 Quaker Hill, 123.  
 Quebec, 89; 90; 107.  
 Quiet, 246.  
 Quit rents, 69.

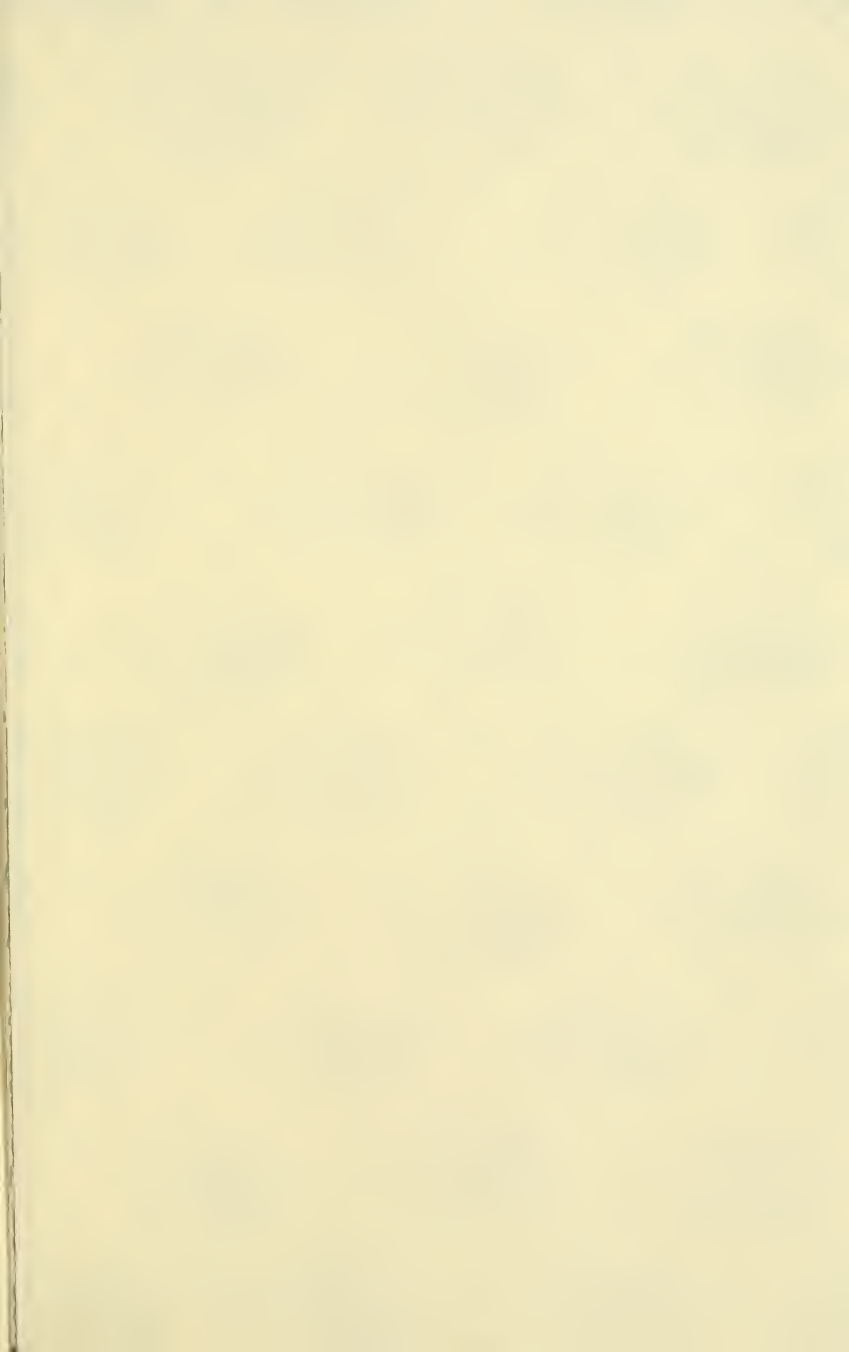
Raleigh, Sir Walter, 18.  
 Railroads, 186; 293; Pacific, The 275; strikes, 280.  
 Reconstruction, 272.  
 Red river campaign, 250.  
 Rents, 74.  
 Resaca, 197; 256.  
 Revenues, 98.  
 Rice, 70.  
 Richmond, 240.  
 Right of Search, 164.  
 Sackett's Harbor, 173.

Salzbergers, The, 73.  
 San Salvador, 5.  
 Santa Fe, 16.  
 Sanders' Creek, 165.  
 Saratoga, 118.  
 Savannah, 73; 125; 127; 261.  
 Saybrook, 40.  
 Schools, 38; 64.  
 Schuyler, 107.  
 Schuyler, Fort, 118.  
 Secession, 205.  
 Seminole war, 181.  
 Seth Sothel, 70.  
 Seven Pines, 233.  
 Sharpsburg, 238.  
 Sheridan, Gen., 254; 264; 265.  
 Sherman, Gen., 256; 260; 263.  
 Shiloh, 229.  
 Ships, 241.  
 Slavery, 28; 59; 153; 157; 193; 372.  
 Slave trade, The, 44.  
 Slave States, 182.  
 Smith, Kirby, 240.  
 Soldiers' Aid Societies, 241.  
 South Mountain, 237.  
 Southern Confederacy, 210.  
 Spanish colonies, 75.  
 Spottsylvania, 259.  
 Stamp Act, The, 95; 96.  
 Starving time, 26.  
 Steamer, 182; steamboat, 165.  
 Stephens, A. H., 211.  
 Stillwater, 118.  
 St. Mary's, 62.  
 Stony Point, 127.  
 Sub-Treasury bill, 192.  
 Sumter, Col., 131; 133.  
 Sumter, Fort, 217; 218.  
 Sunbury, 125.  
 Surrender, The, 264.  
 Tariff, The, 186.  
 Taxes, 30; 97; 98.  
 Taxation, 94.  
 Taylor, Gen., 197; inaugurated, 202;  
 death, 204.  
 Taylor, Gen. Richard, 259.

Telegraph, 195.  
 Tennessee admitted, 159.  
 Texas, 195; 196.  
 Thames, Battle of the, 175.  
 Ticonderoga, Fort, 88; 103.  
 Tippecanoe, Battle of, 166.  
 Tobacco, 27.  
 Tories, 108; 125.  
 Travelling, 148.  
 Trent affair, 225.  
 Trenton, 114.  
 Tripoli, War with, 163.  
 "United States," The, 171.  
 Undermining Confederate works,  
 265.  
 Valley campaign, 234.  
 Valley Forge, 120.  
 Van Buren, inaugurated, 191.  
 Vera Cruz, 199.  
 Vermont, 42.  
 Verrazanni, 15.  
 Vicksburg, 243; 246.  
 Vinland, 2.  
 Virginia, 263; northwestern, 222.  
 War, Preparations for, 100.  
 War of 1812, 167.  
 "Wasp," The, 171.  
 Washington, Geo., 82; crossing the  
 Delaware, 114; inauguration, 155;  
 whisky, insurrection, 158; re-  
 tired, 159.  
 Washington city burned, 178.  
 Webster, Daniel, 189; death, 204.  
 Wesleys, The, 74.  
 West, The, 224; 243.  
 Wilderness, Battle of the, 252.  
 William and Mary College, 31.  
 Williams, Roger, 38.  
 Williams' plantation, 131.  
 Wilkinson, Gen., 174.  
 Wilmington, 261.  
 Yemassee, The, 71.  
 Yorktown, 141.











JAN 13 1989



